

The Project Gutenberg eBook of Latin for Beginners, by Benjamin L. D'Ooge

This ebook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this ebook or online at [www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org). If you are not located in the United States, you'll have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

Title: Latin for Beginners

Author: Benjamin L. D'Ooge

Release date: April 25, 2006 [EBook #18251]

Most recently updated: June 12, 2022

Language: English

\*\*\* START OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK LATIN FOR BEGINNERS \*\*\*

# LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

BY

BENJAMIN L. D'OUGE, PH.D.

PROFESSOR IN THE MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL COLLEGE

GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON · NEW YORK · CHICAGO · LONDON

---

COPYRIGHT, 1909, 1911 BY BENJAMIN L. D'OUGE

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL  
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED  
013.4

The Athenæum Press  
GINN AND COMPANY · PROPRIETORS ·  
BOSTON · U.S.A.

---

## CONTENTS

LESSON		PAGE
	<a href="#">Preface</a>	
	TO THE STUDENT—By way of Introduction	1-4
PART I. THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN		
	ALPHABET, SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS, SYLLABLES, QUANTITY, ACCENT, HOW TO READ LATIN	5-11
PART II. WORDS AND FORMS		
I-VI.	FIRST PRINCIPLES— <i>Subject and Predicate, Inflection, Number, Nominative Subject, Possessive Genitive, Agreement of Verb, Direct Object, Indirect Object, etc.</i> —DIALOGUE	12- 24
VII-VIII.	FIRST OR <i>Ā</i> -DECLENSION— <i>Gender, Agreement of Adjectives, Word Order</i>	25- 30
IX-X.	SECOND OR <i>O</i> -DECLENSION—GENERAL RULES FOR DECLENSION— <i>Predicate Noun, Apposition</i> —DIALOGUE	31- 35

XI.	ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS	36- 37
XII.	NOUNS IN <b>-ius</b> AND <b>-ium</b> —GERMĀNIA	38- 39
XIII.	SECOND DECLENSION ( <i>Continued</i> )—Nouns in <b>-er</b> and <b>-ir</b> —ITALIA—DIALOGUE	39- 41
XIV.	POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS	42- 43
XV.	ABLATIVE DENOTING WITH— <i>Cause, Means, Accompaniment, Manner</i> —THE ROMANS PREPARE FOR WAR	44- 46
XVI.	THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES	46- 47
XVII.	THE DEMONSTRATIVE <b>is, ea, id</b> —DIALOGUE	48- 50
XVIII.	CONJUGATION—Present, Imperfect, and Future of <b>sum</b> —DIALOGUE	51- 53
XIX.	PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF <b>amō</b> AND <b>moneō</b>	54- 56
XX.	IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF <b>amō</b> AND <b>moneō</b> — <i>Meaning of the Imperfect</i> —NIOBE AND HER CHILDREN	56- 57
XXI.	FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF <b>amō</b> AND <b>moneō</b> —NIOBE AND HER CHILDREN ( <i>Concluded</i> )	58- 59
XXII.	REVIEW OF VERBS— <i>The Dative with Adjectives</i> —CORNELIA AND HER JEWELS	59- 61
XXIII.	PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF <b>regō</b> AND <b>audiō</b> —CORNELIA AND HER JEWELS ( <i>Concluded</i> )	61- 63
XXIV.	IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF <b>regō</b> AND <b>audiō</b> — <i>The Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs</i>	63- 65
XXV.	FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF <b>regō</b> AND <b>audiō</b>	65- 66
XXVI.	VERBS IN <b>-iō</b> —Present, Imperfect, and Future Active Indicative of <b>capiō</b> — <i>The Imperative</i>	66- 68
XXVII.	PASSIVE VOICE—Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative of <b>amō</b> and <b>moneō</b> —PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA	68- 71
XXVIII.	PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF <b>regō</b> AND <b>audiō</b> —PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA ( <i>Continued</i> )	72- 73
XXIX.	PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF <b>-iō</b> VERBS—PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE AND IMPERATIVE	73- 75
XXX.	SYNOPSIS IN THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS—THE ABLATIVE DENOTING FROM— <i>Place from Which, Separation, Personal Agent</i>	75- 78
XXXI.	PERFECT, PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT OF <b>sum</b> —DIALOGUE	79- 81
XXXII.	PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS— <i>Meanings of the Perfect</i> —PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA ( <i>Continued</i> )	81- 83
XXXIII.	PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE—PERFECT ACTIVE INFINITIVE	84- 85
XXXIV.	REVIEW OF THE ACTIVE VOICE—PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA ( <i>Concluded</i> )	86- 87
XXXV.	PASSIVE PERFECTS OF THE INDICATIVE—PERFECT PASSIVE AND FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE	88- 90
XXXVI.	REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS— <i>Prepositions, Yes-or-No Questions</i>	90- 93
XXXVII.	CONJUGATION OF <b>possum</b> — <i>The Infinitive used as in English—Accusative Subject of an Infinitive</i> —THE FAITHLESS TARPEIA	93- 96
XXXVIII.	THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AND THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN— <i>Agreement of the Relative</i> —THE FAITHLESS TARPEIA ( <i>Concluded</i> )	97- 101
XXXIX- XLI.	THE THIRD DECLENSION—Consonant Stems	101- 106
XLII.	REVIEW LESSON—TERROR CIMBRICUS	107
XLIII.	THIRD DECLENSION— <i>I</i> -Stems	108- 110
XLIV.	IRREGULAR NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION—GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION—THE FIRST BRIDGE OVER THE RHINE	111- 112
XLV.	ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION—THE ROMANS INVADE THE ENEMY'S COUNTRY	113- 115
XLVI.	THE FOURTH OR <i>U</i> -DECLENSION	116-

XLVII.	EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE— <i>Place to Which, Place from Which, Place at or in Which, the Locative</i> —Declension of <b>domus</b> —DÆDALUS AND ICARUS	117- 121
XLVIII.	THE FIFTH OR <i>Ē</i> -DECLENSION— <i>Ablative of Time</i> —DÆDALUS AND ICARUS ( <i>Continued</i> )	121- 123
XLIX.	PRONOUNS—Personal and Reflexive Pronouns—DÆDALUS AND ICARUS ( <i>Concluded</i> )	123- 126
L.	THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN <b>ipse</b> AND THE DEMONSTRATIVE <b>idem</b> —HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE	126- 127
LI.	THE DEMONSTRATIVES <b>hic, iste, ille</b> —A GERMAN CHIEFTAIN ADDRESSES HIS FOLLOWERS—HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE ( <i>Continued</i> )	128- 130
LII.	THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS—HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE ( <i>Concluded</i> )	130- 132
LIII.	REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	133- 135
LIV.	IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES— <i>Ablative with Comparatives</i>	135- 136
LV.	IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES ( <i>Continued</i> )—Declension of <b>plūs</b>	137- 138
LVI.	IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES ( <i>Concluded</i> )— <i>Ablative of the Measure of Difference</i>	138- 139
LVII.	FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS	140- 142
LVIII.	NUMERALS— <i>Partitive Genitive</i>	142- 144
LIX.	NUMERALS ( <i>Continued</i> )— <i>Accusative of Extent</i> —CÆSAR IN GAUL	144- 146
LX.	DEPONENT VERBS— <i>Prepositions with the Accusative</i>	146- 147

### PART III. CONSTRUCTIONS

LXI.	THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—Inflection of the Present— <i>Indicative and Subjunctive Compared</i>	148- 152
LXII.	THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE	152- 153
LXIII.	INFLECTION OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE— <i>Sequence of Tenses</i>	153- 155
LXIV.	INFLECTION OF THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE— <i>Substantive Clauses of Purpose</i>	156- 159
LXV.	SUBJUNCTIVE OF <b>possum</b> — <i>Verbs of Fearing</i>	160- 161
LXVI.	THE PARTICIPLES—Tenses and Declension	161- 164
LXVII.	THE IRREGULAR VERBS <b>volō, nōlō, mālō</b> — <i>Ablative Absolute</i>	164- 166
LXVIII.	THE IRREGULAR VERB <b>fiō</b> — <i>Subjunctive of Result</i>	167- 168
LXIX.	SUBJUNCTIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC— <i>Predicate Accusative</i>	169- 171
LXX.	CONSTRUCTIONS WITH <b>cum</b> — <i>Ablative of Specification</i>	171- 173
LXXI.	VOCABULARY REVIEW— <i>Gerund and Gerundive—Predicate Genitive</i>	173- 177
LXXII.	THE IRREGULAR VERB <b>eō</b> — <i>Indirect Statements</i>	177- 180
LXXIII.	VOCABULARY REVIEW—THE IRREGULAR VERB <b>ferō</b> — <i>Dative with Compounds</i>	181- 183
LXXIV.	VOCABULARY REVIEW— <i>Subjunctive in Indirect Questions</i>	183- 185
LXXV.	VOCABULARY REVIEW— <i>Dative of Purpose or End for Which</i>	185- 186
LXXVI.	VOCABULARY REVIEW— <i>Genitive and Ablative of Quality or Description</i>	186- 188
LXXVII.	REVIEW OF AGREEMENT— <i>Review of the Genitive, Dative, and Accusative</i>	189-

LXXVIII.	REVIEW OF THE ABLATIVE	190-191-192
LXXIX.	REVIEW OF THE SYNTAX OF VERBS	192-193

## READING MATTER

INTRODUCTORY SUGGESTIONS	194-195
THE LABORS OF HERCULES	196-203
P. CORNELIUS LENTULUS: THE STORY OF A ROMAN BOY	204-215

## APPENDIXES AND VOCABULARIES

APPENDIX I. TABLES OF DECLENSIONS, CONJUGATIONS, NUMERALS, ETC.	226-260
APPENDIX II. RULES OF SYNTAX	261-264
APPENDIX III. REVIEWS	265-282
SPECIAL VOCABULARIES	283-298
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	299-331
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	332-343
INDEX	344-348

[Display Problems](#)

## PREFACE

To make the course preparatory to Cæsar at the same time systematic, thorough, clear, and interesting is the purpose of this series of lessons.

The first pages are devoted to a brief discussion of the Latin language, its history, and its educational value. The body of the book, consisting of seventy-nine lessons, is divided into three parts.

Part I is devoted to pronunciation, quantity, accent, and kindred introductory essentials.

Part II carries the work through the first sixty lessons, and is devoted to the study of forms and vocabulary, together with some elementary constructions, a knowledge of which is necessary for the translation of the exercises and reading matter. The first few lessons have been made unusually simple, to meet the wants of pupils not well grounded in English grammar.

Part III contains nineteen lessons, and is concerned primarily with the study of syntax and of subjunctive and irregular verb forms. The last three of these lessons constitute a review of all the constructions presented in the book. There is abundant easy reading matter; and, in order to secure proper concentration of effort upon syntax and translation, no new vocabularies are introduced, but the vocabularies in Part II are reviewed.

It is hoped that the following features will commend themselves to teachers:

The forms are presented in their natural sequence, and are given, for the most part, in the body of the book as well as in a grammatical appendix. The work on the verb is intensive in character, work in other directions being reduced to a minimum while this is going on. The forms of the subjunctive are studied in correlation with the subjunctive constructions.

The vocabulary has been selected with the greatest care, using Lodge's "Dictionary of Secondary Latin" and Browne's "Latin Word List" as a basis. There are about six hundred words, exclusive of proper names, in the special vocabularies, and these are among the simplest and commonest words in the language. More than ninety-five per cent of those chosen are Cæsarian, and of these more than ninety per cent are used in Cæsar five or more times. The few words not Cæsarian are of such frequent occurrence in Cicero, Vergil, and other authors as to justify their appearance here. But teachers desiring to confine word study to Cæsar can easily do so, as the Cæsarian words are printed in the vocabularies in distinctive type. Concrete nouns have been preferred to

abstract, root words to compounds and derivatives, even when the latter were of more frequent occurrence in Cæsar. To assist the memory, related English words are added in each special vocabulary. To insure more careful preparation, the special vocabularies have been removed from their respective lessons and placed by themselves. The general vocabulary contains about twelve hundred words, and of these above eighty-five per cent are found in Cæsar.

The syntax has been limited to those essentials which recent investigations, such as those of Dr. Lee Byrne and his collaborators, have shown to belong properly to the work of the first year. The constructions are presented, as far as possible, from the standpoint of English, the English usage being given first and the Latin compared or contrasted with it. Special attention has been given to the constructions of participles, the gerund and gerundive, and the infinitive in indirect statements. Constructions having a logical connection are not separated but are treated together.

Exercises for translation occur throughout, those for translation into Latin being, as a rule, only half as long as those for translation into English. In Part III a few of the commoner idioms in Cæsar are introduced and the sentences are drawn mainly from that author. From first to last a consistent effort is made to instill a proper regard for Latin word order, the first principles of which are laid down early in the course.

Selections for reading are unusually abundant and are introduced from the earliest possible moment. These increase in number and length as the book progresses, and, for the most part, are made an integral part of the lessons instead of being massed at the end of the book. This arrangement insures a more constant and thorough drill in forms and vocabulary, promotes reading power, and affords a breathing spell between succeeding subjects. The material is drawn from historical and mythological sources, and the vocabulary employed includes but few words not already learned. The book closes with a continued story which recounts the chief incidents in the life of a Roman boy. The last chapters record his experiences in Cæsar's army, and contain much information that will facilitate the interpretation of the Commentaries. The early emphasis placed on word order and sentence structure, the simplicity of the syntax, and the familiarity of the vocabulary, make the reading selections especially useful for work in sight translation.

Reviews are called for at frequent intervals, and to facilitate this branch of the work an Appendix of Reviews has been prepared, covering both the vocabulary and the grammar.

The illustrations are numerous, and will, it is hoped, do much to stimulate interest in the ancient world and to create true and lasting impressions of Roman life and times.

A consistent effort has been made to use simple language and clear explanation throughout.

As an aid to teachers using this book a "Teacher's Manual" has been prepared, which contains, in addition to general suggestions, notes on each lesson.

The author wishes to express his gratitude to the numerous teachers who tested the advance pages in their classes, and, as a result of their experience, have given much valuable aid by criticism and suggestion. Particular acknowledgments are due to Miss A. Susan Jones of the Central High School, Grand Rapids, Michigan; to Miss Clara Allison of the High School at Hastings, Michigan; and to Miss Helen B. Muir and Mr. Orland O. Norris, teachers of Latin in this institution.

BENJAMIN L. D'OUGE

MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL COLLEGE

## LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

### TO THE STUDENT—BY WAY OF INTRODUCTION

**What is Latin?** If you will look at the map of Italy on the opposite page, you will find near the middle of the peninsula and facing the west coast a district called Latium,<sup>1</sup> and Rome its capital. The Latin language, meaning the language of Latium, was spoken by the ancient Romans and other inhabitants of Latium, and Latin was the name applied to it after the armies of Rome had carried the knowledge of her language far beyond its original boundaries. As the English of today is not quite the same as that spoken two or three hundred years ago, so Latin was not always the same at all times, but changed more or less in the course of centuries. The sort of Latin you are going to learn was in use about two thousand years ago. And that period has been selected because the language was then at its best and the greatest works of Roman literature were being produced. This period, because of its supreme excellence, is called the Golden Age of Roman letters.

1. Pronounce *Lā'shī-ŭm*.

**The Spread of Latin.** For some centuries after Rome was founded, the Romans were a feeble and insignificant people, their territory was limited to Latium, and their existence constantly threatened by warlike neighbors. But after the third century before Christ, Rome's power grew rapidly. She conquered all Italy, then reached out for the lands across the sea and beyond the Alps, and finally ruled over the whole ancient world. The empire thus established lasted for more than four hundred years. The importance of Latin increased with the growth of Roman power, and what had been a dialect spoken by a single tribe became the universal language. Gradually

the language changed somewhat, developing differently in different countries. In Italy it has become Italian, in Spain Spanish, and in France French. All these nations, therefore, are speaking a modernized form of Latin.

**The Romans and the Greeks.** In their career of conquest the Romans came into conflict with the Greeks. The Greeks were inferior to the Romans in military power, but far superior to them in culture. They excelled in art, literature, music, science, and philosophy. Of all these pursuits the Romans were ignorant until contact with Greece revealed to them the value of education and filled them with the thirst for knowledge. And so it came about that while Rome conquered Greece by force of arms, Greece conquered Rome by force of her intellectual superiority and became her schoolmaster. It was soon the established custom for young Romans to go to Athens and to other centers of Greek learning to finish their training, and the knowledge of the Greek language among the educated classes became universal. At the same time many cultured Greeks—poets, artists, orators, and philosophers—flocked to Rome, opened schools, and taught their arts. Indeed, the preëminence of Greek culture became so great that Rome almost lost her ambition to be original, and her writers vied with each other in their efforts to reproduce in Latin what was choicest in Greek literature. As a consequence of all this, the civilization and national life of Rome became largely Grecian, and to Greece she owed her literature and her art.

**Rome and the Modern World.** After conquering the world, Rome impressed her language, laws, customs of living, and modes of thinking upon the subject nations, and they became Roman; and the world has remained largely Roman ever since. Latin continued to live, and the knowledge of Latin was the only light of learning that burned steadily through the dark ages that followed the downfall of the Roman Empire. Latin was the common language of scholars and remained so even down to the days of Shakespeare. Even yet it is more nearly than any other tongue the universal language of the learned. The life of to-day is much nearer the life of ancient Rome than the lapse of centuries would lead one to suppose. You and I are Romans still in many ways, and if Cæsar and Cicero should appear among us, we should not find them, except for dress and language, much unlike men of to-day.

**Latin and English.** Do you know that more than half of the words in the English dictionary are Latin, and that you are speaking more or less Latin every day? How has this come about? In the year 1066 William the Conqueror invaded England with an army of Normans. The Normans spoke French—which, you remember, is descended from Latin—and spread their language to a considerable extent over England, and so Norman-French played an important part in the formation of English and forms a large proportion of our vocabulary. Furthermore, great numbers of almost pure Latin words have been brought into English through the writings of scholars, and every new scientific discovery is marked by the addition of new terms of Latin derivation. Hence, while the simpler and commoner words of our mother tongue are Anglo-Saxon, and Anglo-Saxon forms the staple of our colloquial language, yet in the realms of literature, and especially in poetry, words of Latin derivation are very abundant. Also in the learned professions, as in law, medicine, and engineering, a knowledge of Latin is necessary for the successful interpretation of technical and scientific terms.

**Why study Latin?** The foregoing paragraphs make it clear why Latin forms so important a part of modern education. We have seen that our civilization rests upon that of Greece and Rome, and that we must look to the past if we would understand the present. It is obvious, too, that the knowledge of Latin not only leads to a more exact and effective use of our own language, but that it is of vital importance and of great practical value to any one preparing for a literary or professional career. To this it may be added that the study of Latin throws a flood of light upon the structure of language in general and lays an excellent foundation for all grammatical study. Finally, it has been abundantly proved that there is no more effective means of strengthening the mind than by the earnest pursuit of this branch of learning.

**Review Questions.** Whence does Latin get its name? Where is Latium? Where is Rome? Was Latin always the same? What sort of Latin are we to study? Describe the growth of Rome's power and the spread of Latin. What can you say of the origin of Italian, French, and Spanish? How did the ancient Greeks and Romans compare? How did Greece influence Rome? How did Rome influence the world? In what sense are we Romans still? What did Latin have to do with the formation of English? What proportion of English words are of Latin origin, and what kind of words are they? Why should we study Latin?

---

## PART I

### THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN

#### THE ALPHABET

1. The Latin alphabet contains the same letters as the English except that it has no *w* and no *j*.
2. The vowels, as in English, are *a, e, i, o, u, y*. The other letters are consonants.
3. *i* is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. Before a vowel in the same syllable it has the value of a consonant and is called *i consonant*.

Thus in *Iū-li-us* the first *i* is a consonant, the second a vowel.

## SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS <sup>1</sup>

1. N.B. The sounds of the letters are best learned by hearing them correctly pronounced. The matter in this section is, therefore, intended for reference rather than for assignment as a lesson. As a first step it is suggested that the teacher pronounce the examples in class, the pupils following.

4. Latin was not pronounced like English. The Romans at the beginning of the Christian era pronounced their language substantially as described below.

5. The vowels have the following sounds:

VOWELS <sup>2</sup>	LATIN EXAMPLES
ā as in <i>father</i>	<b>hāc, stās</b>
ă like the first <i>a</i> in <i>aha</i> ´, never as in <i>hat</i>	<b>ă´-măt, cǎ-nās</b>
ē as in <i>they</i>	<b>tē´-lǎ, mē´-tǎ</b>
ĕ as in <i>met</i>	<b>tĕ´-nĕt, mĕr´-cĕs</b>
ī as in <i>machine</i>	<b>sĕr´-tĭ, prā´-tĭ</b>
ĭ as in <i>bit</i>	<b>sĭ´-tĭs, bĭ´-bĭ</b>
ō as in <i>holy</i>	<b>Rō´-mǎ, ō´-rĭs</b>
ŏ as in <i>wholly</i> , never as in <i>hot</i>	<b>mŏ´-dŏ, bŏ´-nŏs</b>
ū as in <i>rude</i> , or as <i>oo</i> in <i>boot</i>	<b>ū´-mŏr, tū´-bĕr</b>
ŭ as in <i>full</i> , or as <i>oo</i> in <i>foot</i>	<b>ŭt, tŭ´-tŭs</b>

2. Long vowels are marked ¯, short ones ˘.

NOTE. It is to be observed that there is a decided difference in sound, except in the case of *a*, between the long and the short vowels. It is not merely a matter of *quantity* but also of *quality*.

6. In **diphthongs** (two-vowel sounds) both vowels are heard in a single syllable.

DIPHTHONGS	LATIN EXAMPLES
<b>ae</b> as <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i>	<b>tae´-dae</b>
<b>au</b> as <i>ou</i> in <i>out</i>	<b>gau´-dĕt</b>
<b>ei</b> as <i>ei</i> in <i>eight</i>	<b>dein´-dĕ</b>
<b>eu</b> as <i>ē´oĕ</i> (a short <i>e</i> followed by a short <i>u</i> in one syllable)	<b>seu</b>
<b>oe</b> like <i>oi</i> in <i>toil</i>	<b>foe´-dŭs</b>
<b>ui</b> like <i>oĕ´i</i> (a short <i>u</i> followed by a short <i>i</i> in one syllable. Cf. English <i>we</i> )	<b>cui, huic</b>

NOTE. Give all the vowels and diphthongs their proper sounds and do not slur over them in unaccented syllables, as is done in English.

7. **Consonants** are pronounced as in English, except that

CONSONANTS	LATIN EXAMPLES
<b>c</b> is always like <i>c</i> in <i>cat</i> , never as in <i>cent</i>	<b>cǎ´-dŏ, cĭ´-bŭs, cĕ´-nǎ</b>
<b>g</b> is always like <i>g</i> in <i>get</i> , never as in <i>gem</i>	<b>gĕ´-mŏ, gĭg´-nŏ</b>
<b>i consonant</b> is always like <i>y</i> in <i>yes</i>	<b>iǎm, iŏ´-cŭs</b>
<b>n</b> before <i>c</i> , <i>qu</i> , or <i>g</i> is like <i>ng</i> in <i>sing</i> (compare the sound of <i>n</i> in <i>anchor</i> )	<b>ǎn´-cŏ-rǎ (ang´-ko-ra)</b>
<b>qu, gu,</b> and sometimes <b>su</b> before a vowel have the sound of <i>qw, gw,</i> and <i>sw</i> . Here <i>u</i> has the value of consonant <i>v</i> and is not counted a vowel	<b>ĭn´-quĭt, quĭ, lĭn´-guǎ, sǎn´-guĭs, suā´-dĕ-ŏ</b>
<b>s</b> is like <i>s</i> in <i>sea</i> , never as in <i>ease</i>	<b>rŏ´-sǎ, ĭs</b>
<b>t</b> is always like <i>t</i> in <i>native</i> , never as in <i>nation</i>	<b>rǎ´-tĭ-ŏ, nǎ´-tĭ-ŏ</b>
<b>v</b> is like <i>w</i> in <i>wine</i> , never as in <i>vine</i>	<b>vĭ´-nŭm, vĭr</b>
<b>x</b> has the value of two consonants ( <i>cs</i> or <i>gs</i> ) and is like <i>x</i> in <i>extract</i> , not as in <i>exact</i>	<b>ĕx´-trǎ, ĕx-ǎc´-tŭs</b>
<b>bs</b> is like <i>ps</i> and <b>bt</b> like <i>pt</i>	<b>ŭrbs, ŏb-tĭ´-nĕ-ŏ</b>
<b>ch, ph,</b> and <b>th</b> are like <i>c, p, t</i>	<b>pŭl´-chĕr, Phoe´-bĕ, thĕ-ǎ´-trŭm</b>

*a.* In combinations of consonants give each its distinct sound. Doubled consonants should be pronounced with a slight pause between the two sounds. Thus pronounce *tt* as in *rat-trap*, not as in *rattle*; *pp* as in *hop-pole*, not as in *upper*. Examples, **mĭt´-tŏ, Āp´pĭ-ŭs, bĕl´-lŭm.**

## SYLLABLES

8. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs. Thus **aes-tǎ´-tĕ** has three syllables, **au-dĭ-ĕn´-dŭs** has four.

*a.* Two vowels with a consonant between them never make one syllable, as is so often the case in English. Compare English *inside* with Latin *ĭn-sĭ´-dĕ.*

9. Words are divided into syllables as follows:

1. A single consonant between two vowels goes with the second. Thus **ǎ-mǎ´-bĭ-lĭs, mĕ-mŏ´-rĭ-**

### ǎ, ĩn-tě'-rě-ā, ǎ'-běst, pě-rě'-gīt.<sup>3</sup>

3. In writing and printing it is customary to divide the parts of a compound, as **inter-eā, ab-est, sub-actus, per-ēgit**, contrary to the correct phonetic rule.

### 2. Combinations of two or more consonants:

a. A consonant followed by *l* or *r* goes with the *l* or *r*. Thus **pū'-blī-cūs, ǎ'-grī**.

EXCEPTION. Prepositional compounds of this nature, as also *ll* and *rr*, follow rule *b*. Thus **ǎb'-lū-ō, ǎb-rūm'-pō, ĩl'-lē, fěr'-rūm**.

b. In all other combinations of consonants the first consonant goes with the preceding vowel.<sup>4</sup> Thus **mǎg'-nūs, ě-gēs'-tās, vĭc-tō'-rĭ-ǎ, hōs'-pēs, ǎn'-nūs, sŭ-bāc'-tŭs**.

4. The combination **nct** is divided **nc-t**, as **fŭnc-tŭs, sānc-tŭs**.

3. The last syllable of a word is called the *ul'-ti-ma*; the one next to the last, the *pe-nult*; the one before the penult, the *an'-te-pe-nult*.

### 10. EXERCISE

Divide the words in the following passage into syllables and pronounce them, placing the accent as indicated:

Vādē ād fōrmĭcām, Ō pĭgēr, ět cōnsĭdērā vĭās ěiūs ět dĭscĕ sǎpĭĕntĭām: quae cŭm nōn hǎbĕāt dŭcĕm nĕc praecĕptōrĕm nĕc prĭncĭpĕm, pǎrāt ĩn aestātĕ cĭbŭm sĭbĭ ět cōngrĕgāt ĩn mĕssĕ quōd cōmĕdāt.

[Go to the ant, thou sluggard; consider her ways, and be wise: which, having no guide, overseer, or ruler, provideth her meat in the summer and gathereth her food in the harvest.]

### QUANTITY

11. The quantity of a vowel or a syllable is the time it takes to pronounce it. Correct pronunciation and accent depend upon the proper observance of quantity.

12. **Quantity of Vowels.** Vowels are either long (ˉ) or short (˘). In this book the long vowels are marked. Unmarked vowels are to be considered short.

1. A vowel is short before another vowel or *h*; as **pō-ĕ'-ta, trǎ'-hō**.

2. A vowel is short before *nt* and *nd*, before final *m* or *t*, and, except in words of one syllable, before final *l* or *r*. Thus **a'-mǎnt, a-mǎn'-dus, a-mǎ'-bǎm, a-mǎ'-bǎt, a'-ni-mǎl, a'-mōr**.

3. A vowel is long before *nf*, *ns*, *nx*, and *nct*. Thus **ĭn'-fe-rō, re'-gĕns, sǎn'-xĭ, sānc'-tus**.

4. Diphthongs are always long, and are not marked.

13. **Quantity of Syllables.** Syllables are either long or short, and their quantity must be carefully distinguished from that of vowels.

#### 1. A syllable is short,

a. If it ends in a short vowel; as **ǎ'-mō, pĭ'-grĭ**.

NOTE. In final syllables the short vowel may be followed by a final consonant. Thus the word **mĕ-mō'-rĭ-ǎm** contains four short syllables. In the first three a short vowel ends the syllable, in the last the short vowel is followed by a final consonant.

#### 2. A syllable is long,

a. If it contains a long vowel or a diphthong, as **cŭ'-rō, poe'-nae, aes-tā'-te**.

b. If it ends in a consonant which is followed by another consonant, as **cor'-pus, mag'-nus**.

NOTE. The vowel in a long syllable may be either long or short, and should be pronounced accordingly. Thus in **ter'-ra, ĩn'-ter**, the first syllable is long, but the vowel in each case is short and should be given the short sound. In words like **saxum** the first syllable is long because *x* has the value of two consonants (*cs* or *gs*).

3. In determining quantity *h* is not counted a consonant.

NOTE. Give about twice as much time to the long syllables as to the short ones. It takes about as long to pronounce a short vowel plus a consonant as it does to pronounce a long vowel or a diphthong, and so these quantities are considered equally long. For example, it takes about as long to say **cŭr'-rō** as it does **cŭ'-rō**, and so each of these first syllables is long. Compare **mōl'-lis** and **mō'-lis, ǎ-mĭs'-sĭ** and **ǎ-mĭ'-sĭ**.

### ACCENT

14. Words of two syllables are accented on the first, as **mĕn'-sa, Cae'-sar**.

15. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if the penult is long. If the penult is short, accent the antepenult. Thus **mo-nĕ'-mus, re'-gi-tur, a-gri'-co-la, a-man'-dus**.

NOTE. Observe that the position of the accent is determined by the length of the *syllable* and not by the length of the vowel in the syllable. (Cf. § 13. 2, Note.)

16. Certain little words called *enclit'ics*<sup>5</sup> which have no separate existence, are added to and pronounced with a preceding word. The most common are **-que, and; -ve, or; and -ne**, the question sign. The syllable before an enclitic takes the accent, regardless of its quantity. Thus **populus'que, dea'que, rĕgna've, audit'ne**.



5. Enclitic means *leaning back*, and that is, as you see, just what these little words do. They cannot stand alone and so they lean back for support upon the preceding word.

## HOW TO READ LATIN

**17.** To read Latin well is not so difficult, if you begin right. Correct habits of reading should be formed now. Notice the quantities carefully, especially the quantity of the penult, to insure your getting the accent on the right syllable. (Cf. § 15.) Give every vowel its proper sound and every syllable its proper length. Then bear in mind that we should read Latin as we read English, in phrases rather than in separate words. Group together words that are closely connected in thought. No good reader halts at the end of each word.

**18.** Read the stanzas of the following poem by Longfellow, one at a time, first the English and then the Latin version. The syllables inclosed in parentheses are to be slurred or omitted to secure smoothness of meter.

### EXCELSIOR [HIGHER]! <sup>6</sup>

The shades of night were falling fast, As through an Alpine village passed A youth, who bore, 'mid snow and ice, A banner with the strange device, Excelsior!	Cadēbant noctis umbrae, dum Ibat per vīcum Alpicum Gelū nivequ(e) adolēscēns, Vēxillum cum signō ferēns, Excelsior!
His brow was sad; his eye beneath, Flashed like a falchion from its sheath, And like a silver clarion rung The accents of that unknown tongue, Excelsior!	Frōns trīstis, micat oculus Velut ē vāginā gladius; Sonantque similēs tubae Accentūs lingu(ae) incognitae, Excelsior!
In happy homes he saw the light Of household fires gleam warm and bright; Above, the spectral glaciers shone, And from his lips escaped a groan, Excelsior!	In domibus videt clārās Focōrum lūcēs calidās; Relucet glaciēs ācris, Et rumpit gemitūs labrīs, Excelsior!
"Try not the Pass!" the old man said; "Dark lowers the tempest overhead, The roaring torrent is deep and wide!" And loud that clarion voice replied, Excelsior!	Dīcit senex, "Nē trānseās! Suprā nigrēscit tempestās; Lātus et altus est torrēns." Clāra vēnit vōx respondēns, Excelsior!
At break of day, as heavenward The pious monks of Saint Bernard Uttered the oft-repeated prayer, A voice cried through the startled air, Excelsior!	Iam lūcēscēbat, et frātrēs Sāctī Bernardī vigilēs Ōrābant precēs solitās, Cum vōx clāmāvit per aurās, Excelsior!
A traveler, by the faithful hound, Half-buried in the snow was found, Still grasping in his hand of ice That banner with the strange device, Excelsior!	Sēmi-sepultus viātor Can(e) ā fidō reperitur, Comprēdēns pugnō gelidō Illud vēxillum cum signō, Excelsior!
There in the twilight cold and gray, Lifeless, but beautiful, he lay, And from the sky, serene and far, A voice fell, like a falling star, Excelsior!	Iacet corpus exanimum Sed lūce frīgidā pulchrum; Et caelō procul exiēns Cadit vōx, ut Stella cadēns, Excelsior!

6. Translation by C. W. Goodchild in *Praeco Latinus*, October, 1898.

---

## PART II

### WORDS AND FORMS

#### LESSON I

##### FIRST PRINCIPLES

**19. Subject and Predicate.** 1. Latin, like English, expresses thoughts by means of sentences. A sentence is a combination of words that expresses a thought, and in its simplest form is the statement of a single fact. Thus,

*Galba is a farmer*

*The sailor fights*

In each of these sentences there are two parts:

SUBJECT	<i>Galba</i> <b>Galba</b>	PREDICATE	<i>is a farmer</i> <b>est agricola</b>
SUBJECT	<i>The sailor</i> <b>Nauta</b>	PREDICATE	<i>fights</i> <b>pugnat</b>

2. The subject is that person, place, or thing about which something is said, and is therefore a *noun* or some word which can serve the same purpose.

a. Pronouns, as their name implies (*pro*, "instead of," and *noun*), often take the place of nouns, usually to save repeating the same noun, as, *Galba is a farmer*; **he** is a sturdy fellow.

3. The predicate is that which is said about the subject, and consists of a verb with or without modifiers.

a. A verb is a word which asserts something (usually an act) concerning a person, place, or thing.

**20. The Object.** In the two sentences, *The boy hit the ball* and *The ball hit the boy*, the same words are used, but the meaning is different, and depends upon the order of the words. The **doer** of the act, that about which something is said, is, as we have seen above, the **subject**. **That to which something is done** is the **direct object** of the verb. *The boy hit the ball* is therefore analyzed as follows:

SUBJECT	PREDICATE
<i>The boy</i>	<i>hit the ball</i>
	(verb) (direct object)

a. A verb whose action passes over to the object directly, as in the sentence above, is called a **transitive verb**. A verb which does not admit of a direct object is called **intransitive**, as, *I walk*, *he comes*.

**21. The Copula.** The verb *to be* in its different forms—*are*, *is*, *was*, etc.—does not tell us anything about the subject; neither does it govern an object. It simply connects the subject with the word or words in the predicate that possess a distinct meaning. Hence it is called the **copula**, that is, *the joiner* or *link*.

**22.** In the following sentences pronounce the Latin and name the *nouns*, *verbs*, *subjects*, *objects*, *predicates*, *copulas*:

1. **America est patria mea**  
*America is fatherland my*
2. **Agricola filiam amat**  
*(The) farmer (his) daughter loves*
3. **Filia est Iulia**  
*(His) daughter is Julia*
4. **Iulia et agricola sunt in insula**  
*Julia and (the) farmer are on (the) island*
5. **Iulia aquam portat**  
*Julia water carries*
6. **Rosam in comis habet**  
*(A) rose in (her) hair (she) has*
7. **Iulia est puella pulchra**  
*Julia is (a) girl pretty*
8. **Domina filiam pulchram habet**  
*(The) lady (a) daughter beautiful has*

a. The sentences above show that Latin does not express some words which are necessary in English. First of all, *Latin has no article the or a*; thus **agricola** may mean *the farmer*, *a farmer*, or simply *farmer*. Then, too, the personal pronouns, *I*, *you*, *he*, *she*, etc., and the possessive pronouns, *my*, *your*, *his*, *her*, etc., are not expressed if the meaning of the sentence is clear without them.

## LESSON II

### FIRST PRINCIPLES (*Continued*)

**23. Inflection.** Words may change their forms to indicate some change in sense or use, as, *is*, *are*; *was*, *were*; *who*, *whose*, *whom*; *farmer*, *farmer's*; *woman*, *women*. This is called **inflection**. The inflection of a noun, adjective, or pronoun is called its **declension**, that of a verb its **conjugation**.

**24. Number.** Latin, like English, has two numbers, singular and plural. In English we usually form the plural by adding *-s* or *-es* to the singular. So Latin changes the singular to the plural by changing the ending of the word. Compare

**Naut-a pugnat**  
*The sailor fights*

**Naut-ae pugnant**  
*The sailors fight*

25. RULE. Nouns that end in **-a** in the singular end in **-ae** in the plural.

26. Learn the following nouns so that you can give the English for the Latin or the Latin for the English. Write the plural of each.

**agri'cola**, farmer (agriculture)<sup>1</sup>  
**aqua**, water (aquarium)  
**causa**, cause, reason  
**do'mina**, lady of the house,  
mistress (dominate)  
**filia**, daughter (filial)  
**fortū'na**, fortune

**fuga**, flight (fugitive)  
**iniū'ria**, wrong, injury  
**lūna**, moon (lunar)  
**nauta**, sailor (nautical)  
**puel'la**, girl  
**silva**, forest (silvan)  
**terra**, land (terrace)

1. The words in parentheses are English words related to the Latin. When the words are practically identical, as **causa**, cause, no comparison is needed.

27. Compare again the sentences

**Nauta pugna-t**  
*The sailor fights*

**Nautae pugna-nt**  
*The sailors fight*

In the first sentence the verb **pugna-t** is in the third person singular, in the second sentence **pugna-nt** is in the third person plural.

28. RULE. **Agreement of Verb.** A finite verb must always be in the same person and number as its subject.

29. RULE. In the conjugation of the Latin verb the third person singular active ends in **-t**, the third person plural in **-nt**. The endings which show the person and number of the verb are called **personal endings**.

30. Learn the following verbs and write the plural of each. The personal pronouns *he, she, it*, etc., which are necessary in the inflection of the English verb, are not needed in the Latin, because the personal endings take their place. Of course, if the verb's subject is expressed we do not translate the personal ending by a pronoun; thus **nauta pugnat** is translated *the sailor fights*, not *the sailor he fights*.

<b>ama-t</b>	<i>he (she, it)</i>	<i>loves, is loving, does love</i>	(amity, amiable)
<b>labō'ra-t</b>	" " "	<i>labors, is laboring, does labor</i>	
<b>nūntia-t</b> <sup>2</sup>	" " "	<i>announces, is announcing, does announce</i>	
<b>porta-t</b>	" " "	<i>carries, is carrying, does carry</i>	(porter)
<b>pugna-t</b>	" " "	<i>fights, is fighting, does fight</i>	(pugnacious)

2. The *u* in **nūntiō** is long by exception. (Cf. § 12. 2.)

### 31. EXERCISES

I. 1. The daughter loves, the daughters love. 2. The sailor is carrying, the sailors carry. 3. The farmer does labor, the farmers labor. 4. The girl is announcing, the girls do announce. 5. The ladies are carrying, the lady carries.

II. 1. Nauta pugnat, nautae pugnant. 2. Puella amat, puellae amat. 3. Agricola portat, agricolae portant. 4. Filia labōrat, filiae labōrant. 5. Nauta nūntiat, nautae nūntiant. 6. Dominae amant, domina amat.



DOMINA

## LESSON III

### FIRST PRINCIPLES (*Continued*)

32. **Declension of Nouns.** We learned above (§§ 19, 20) the difference between the subject and object, and that in English they may be distinguished by the order of the words. Sometimes, however, the order is such that we are left in doubt. For example, the sentence *The lady her daughter loves* might mean either that the lady loves her daughter, or that the daughter loves the lady.

1. If the sentence were in Latin, no doubt could arise, because the subject and the object are distinguished, not by the order of the words, but by the endings of the words themselves. Compare the following sentences:

**Domina filiam amat**  
**Filiam domina amat**     *The lady loves her daughter*  
**Amat filiam domina**  
**Domina amat filiam**  
**Filia dominam amat**  
**Dominam filia amat**     *The daughter loves the lady*  
**Amat dominam filia**  
**Filia amat dominam**

a. Observe that in each case the subject of the sentence ends in **-a** and the object in **-am**. The *form* of the noun shows how it is used in the sentence, and the order of the words has no effect on the essential meaning.

2. As stated above (§ 23), this change of ending is called **declension**, and each different ending produces what is called a **case**. When we decline a noun, we give all its different cases, or changes of endings. In English we have three cases,—nominative, possessive, and objective; but, in nouns, the nominative and objective have the same form, and only the possessive case shows a change of ending, by adding 's or the apostrophe. The interrogative pronoun, however, has the fuller declension, *who? whose? whom?*

33. The following table shows a comparison between English and Latin declension forms, and should be thoroughly memorized:

ENGLISH CASES		LATIN CASES		
Declension of <i>who?</i>	Name of case and use	Declension of <b>domina</b> and translation	Name of case and use	
S I N G U L A R	Who?	Nominative— case of the subject	<b>do'min-a</b> <i>the lady</i>	Nominative— case of the subject
	Whose?	Possessive— case of the possessor	<b>domin-ae</b> <i>the lady's</i>	Genitive— case of the possessor
	Whom?	Objective— case of the object	<b>domin-am</b> <i>the lady</i>	Accusative— case of the direct object
P L U R A L	Who?	Nominative— case of the subject	<b>domin-ae</b> <i>the ladies</i>	Nominative— case of the subject
	Whose?	Possessive— case of the possessor	<b>domin-ā'rum</b> <i>the ladies'</i> <i>of the ladies</i>	Genitive— case of the possessor
	Whom?	Objective— case of the object	<b>domin-ās</b> <i>the ladies</i>	Accusative— case of the direct object

When the nominative singular of a noun ends in **-a**, observe that

- a. The nominative plural ends in **-ae**.
- b. The genitive singular ends in **-ae** and the genitive plural in **-ārum**.
- c. The accusative singular ends in **-am** and the accusative plural in **-ās**.
- d. The genitive singular and the nominative plural have the same ending.

**34. EXERCISE**

Pronounce the following words and give their general meaning. Then give the number and case, and the use of each form. Where the same form stands for more than one case, give all the possible cases and uses.

1. Silva, silvās, silvam. 2. Fugam, fugae, fuga. 3. Terrārum, terrae, terrās. 4. Aquās, causam, lūnās. 5. Filiae, fortūnae, lūnae. 6. Iniūriās, agricolārum, aquārum. 7. Iniūriārum, agricolae, puellās. 8. Nautam, agricolās, nautās. 9. Agricolam, puellam, silvārum.

## FIRST PRINCIPLES (*Continued*)

35. We learned from the table (§ 33) that the Latin nominative, genitive, and accusative correspond, in general, to the nominative, possessive, and objective in English, and that they are used in the same way. This will be made even clearer by the following sentence:

**Filia agricolae nautam amat,**  
*the farmer's daughter (or the daughter of the farmer) loves the sailor*

What is the subject? the direct object? What case is used for the subject? for the direct object? What word denotes the possessor? In what case is it?

36. **RULE. Nominative Subject.** *The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative and answers the question Who? or What?*

37. **RULE. Accusative Object.** *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the Accusative and answers the question Whom? or What?*

38. **RULE. Genitive of the Possessor.** *The word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the Genitive and answers the question Whose?*



DIANA SAGITTAS PORTAT ET FERAS NECAT

### 39. EXERCISES

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 283.

I. 1. Diāna est dea. 2. Lātōna est dea. 3. Diāna et Lātōna sunt deae. 4. Diāna est dea lūnae. 5. Diāna est filia Lātōnae. 6. Lātōna Diānam amat. 7. Diāna est dea silvārum. 8. Diāna silvam amat. 9. Diāna sagittās portat. 10. Diāna ferās silvae necat. 11. Ferae terrārum pugnant.

For the order of words imitate the Latin above.

II. 1. The daughter of Latona does love the forests. 2. Latona's daughter carries arrows. 3. The farmers' daughters do labor. 4. The farmer's daughter loves the waters of the forest. 5. The sailor is announcing the girls' flight. 6. The girls announce the sailors' wrongs. 7. The farmer's daughter labors. 8. Diana's arrows are killing the wild beasts of the land.

### 40. CONVERSATION

Translate the questions and answer them in Latin. The answers may be found in the exercises preceding.

1. Quis est Diāna?
2. Cuius filia est Diāna?
3. Quis Diānam amat?
4. Quis silvam amat?
5. Quis sagittās portat?
6. Cuius filiae labōrant?

## LESSON V

### FIRST PRINCIPLES (*Continued*)

41. **The Dative Case.** In addition to the relationships between words expressed by the nominative, genitive (possessive), and accusative (objective) cases, there are other relationships, to express which in English we use such words as *from, with, by, to, for, in, at*.<sup>1</sup>

1. Words like *to, for, by, from, in, etc.*, which define the relationship between words, are called **prepositions**.

Latin, too, makes frequent use of such prepositions; but often it expresses these relations without them by means of case forms which English does not possess. One of the cases found in the Latin declension and lacking in English is called the *dative*.

42. When the nominative singular ends in **-a**, the dative singular ends in **-ae** and the dative plural in **-is**.

NOTE. Observe that the *genitive singular*, the *dative singular*, and the *nominative plural* all have the

same ending, **-ae**; but the uses of the three cases are entirely different. The general meaning of the sentence usually makes clear which case is intended.

a. Form the dative singular and plural of the following nouns: **fuga, causa, fortūna, terra, aqua, puella, agricola, nauta, domina.**

**43. The Dative Relation.** The dative case is used to express the relations conveyed in English by the prepositions *to, towards, for*.

These prepositions are often used in English in expressions of motion, such as *She went to town, He ran towards the horse, Columbus sailed for America*. In such cases the dative is not used in Latin, as *motion through space* is foreign to the dative relation. But the dative is used to denote that *to or towards which* a benefit, injury, purpose, feeling, or quality is directed, or that *for which* something serves or exists.

a. What dative relations do you discover in the following?

The teacher gave a prize to John because he replied so promptly to all her questions—a good example for the rest of us. It is a pleasure to us to hear him recite. Latin is easy for him, but it is very hard for me. Some are fitted for one thing and others for another.

**44. The Indirect Object.** Examine the sentence

**Nauta fugam nūntiat, the sailor announces the flight**

Here the verb, **nūntiat**, governs the direct object, **fugam**, in the accusative case. If, however, we wish to mention the persons **to whom** the sailor announces the flight, as, *The sailor announces the flight to the farmers*, the verb will have two objects:

1. Its direct object, *flight (fugam)*
2. Its indirect object, *farmers*

According to the preceding section, *to the farmers* is a relation covered by the dative case, and we are prepared for the following rule:

**45. RULE. Dative Indirect Object.** *The indirect object of a verb is in the Dative.*

a. The indirect object usually stands before the direct object.

**46.** We may now complete the translation of the sentence *The sailor announces the flight to the farmers*, and we have

**Nauta agricolis fugam nūntiat**

#### **47. EXERCISES**

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 283.

*Point out the direct and indirect objects and the genitive of the possessor.*

I. 1. Quis nautis pecūniam dat? 2. Filiae agricolae nautis pecūniam dant. 3. Quis fortūnam pugnae nūntiat? 4. Galba agricolis fortunam pugnae nūntiat. 5. Cui domina fābulam nārrat? 6. Filiae agricolae domina fābulam nārrat. 7. Quis Diānae corōnam dat? 8. Puella Diānae corōnam dat quia Diānam amat. 9. Dea lūnae sagittās portat et ferās silvārum necat. 10. Cuius victōriam Galba nūntiat? 11. Nautae victōriam Galba nūntiat.

Imitate the word order of the preceding exercise.

II. 1. To whom do the girls give a wreath? 2. The girls give a wreath to Julia, because Julia loves wreaths. 3. The sailors tell the ladies<sup>2</sup> a story, because the ladies love stories. 4. The farmer gives his (§ 22. a) daughter water. 5. Galba announces the cause of the battle to the sailor. 6. The goddess of the moon loves the waters of the forest. 7. Whose wreath is Latona carrying? Diana's.

2. Observe that in English the indirect object often stands without a preposition *to* to mark it, especially when it precedes the direct object.

## LESSON VI

### FIRST PRINCIPLES (*Continued*)

**48. The Ablative Case.** Another case, lacking in English but found in the fuller Latin declension, is the *ab la-tive*.

**49.** When the nominative singular ends in **-a**, the ablative singular ends in **-ā** and the ablative plural in **-īs**.

a. Observe that the final **-ā** of the nominative is short, while the final **-ā** of the ablative is long, as,

*Nom. filiā      Abl. filiā*

b. Observe that the ablative plural is like the dative plural.

c. Form the ablative singular and plural of the following nouns: **fuga, causa, fortūna, terra, aqua, puella, agricola, nauta, domina.**

**50. The Ablative Relation.** The ablative case is used to express the relations conveyed in English by the prepositions *from, with, by, at, in*. It denotes

1. That from which something is separated, from which it starts, or of which it is deprived—

generally translated by *from*.

2. That with which something is associated or by means of which it is done—translated by *with* or *by*.

3. The place where or the time when something happens—translated by *in* or *at*.

a. What ablative relations do you discover in the following?

In our class there are twenty boys and girls. Daily at eight o'clock they come from home with their books, and while they are at school they study Latin with great zeal. In a short time they will be able to read with ease the books written by the Romans. By patience and perseverance all things in this world can be overcome.

**51. Prepositions.** While, as stated above (§ 41), many relations expressed in English by prepositions are in Latin expressed by case forms, still prepositions are of frequent occurrence, but only with the accusative or ablative.

**52. RULE. Object of a Preposition.** *A noun governed by a preposition must be in the Accusative or Ablative case.*

**53.** Prepositions denoting the ablative relations *from*, *with*, *in*, *on*, are naturally followed by the ablative case. Among these are

**ā**<sup>1</sup> or **ab**, *from*, *away from*

**dē**, *from*, *down from*

**ē**<sup>1</sup> or **ex**, *from*, *out from*, *out of*

**cum**, *with*

**in**, *in*, *on*

1. **ā** and **ē** are used only before words beginning with a consonant; **ab** and **ex** are used before either vowels or consonants.

1. *Translate into Latin, using prepositions.* In the water, on the land, down from the forest, with the fortune, out of the forests, from the victory, out of the waters, with the sailors, down from the moon.

**54. Adjectives.** Examine the sentence

**Puella parva bonam deam amat**, *the little girl loves the good goddess*

In this sentence **parva** (*little*) and **bonam** (*good*) are not nouns, but are descriptive words expressing quality. Such words are called *adjectives*,<sup>2</sup> and they are said to belong to the noun which they describe.

2. *Pick out the adjectives in the following:* "When I was a little boy, I remember that one cold winter's morning I was accosted by a smiling man with an ax on his shoulder. 'My pretty boy,' said he, 'has your father a grindstone?' 'Yes, sir,' said I. 'You are a fine little fellow,' said he. 'Will you let me grind my ax on it?'"

You can tell by its ending to which noun an adjective belongs. The ending of **parva** shows that it belongs to **puella**, and the ending of **bonam** that it belongs to **deam**. Words that belong together are said to agree, and the belonging-together is called *agreement*. Observe that *the adjective and its noun agree in number and case*.

**55.** Examine the sentences

**Puella est parva**, *the girl is little*

**Puella parva bonam deam amat**, *the little girl loves the good goddess*

In the first sentence the adjective **parva** is separated from its noun by the verb and stands in the predicate. It is therefore called a *predicate adjective*. In the second sentence the adjectives **parva** and **bonam** are closely attached to the nouns **puella** and **deam** respectively, and are called *attributive adjectives*.

a. Pick out the attributive and the predicate adjectives in the following:

Do you think Latin is hard? Hard studies make strong brains. Lazy students dislike hard studies. We are not lazy.

**56. DIALOGUE**

JULIA AND GALBA

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 283.

I. Quis, Galba, est Diāna?

G. Diāna, Iūlia, est pulchra dea lūnae et silvārum.

I. Cuius filia, Galba, est Diāna?

G. Lātōnae filia, Iūlia, est Diāna.

I. Quid Diāna portat?

G. Sagittās Diāna portat.

I. Cūr Diāna sagittās portat?

G. Diāna sagittās portat, Iūlia, quod malās ferās silvae magnae necat.

I. Amatne Lātōna filiam?

G. Amat, et filia Lātōnam amat.

I. Quid filia tua parva portat?

- G. Corōnās pulchrās filia mea parva portat.  
 I. Cui filia tua corōnās pulchrās dat?  
 G. Diānae corōnās dat.  
 I. Quis est cum filiā tuā? Estne sōla?  
 G. Sōla nōn est; filia mea parva est cum ancillā meā.

a. When a person is called or addressed, the case used is called the *vocative* (Latin *vocāre*, “to call”). *In form the vocative is regularly like the nominative.* In English the name of the person addressed usually stands first in the sentence. *The Latin vocative rarely stands first.* Point out five examples of the vocative in this dialogue.

b. Observe that questions answered by *yes* or *no* in English are answered in Latin by repeating the verb. Thus, if you wished to answer in Latin the question *Is the sailor fighting?* **Pugnatne nauta?** you would say **Pugnat**, *he is fighting*, or **Nōn pugnat**, *he is not fighting*.

## LESSON VII

### THE FIRST OR *Ā*-DECLENSION

57. In the preceding lessons we have now gone over all the cases, singular and plural, of nouns whose nominative singular ends in **-a**. All Latin nouns whose nominative singular ends in **-a** belong to the First Declension. It is also called the *Ā*-Declension because of the prominent part which the vowel **a** plays in the formation of the cases. We have also learned what relations are expressed by each case. These results are summarized in the following table:

CASE	NOUN	TRANSLATION	USE AND GENERAL MEANING OF EACH CASE
		SINGULAR	
<i>Nom.</i>	do´min- <b>a</b>	<i>the lady</i>	The subject
<i>Gen.</i>	domin- <b>ae</b>	<i>of the lady, or the lady's</i>	The possessor of something
<i>Dat.</i>	domin- <b>ae</b>	<i>to or for the lady</i>	Expressing the relation <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> , especially the indirect object
<i>Acc.</i>	domin- <b>am</b>	<i>the lady</i>	The direct object
<i>Abl.</i>	domin- <b>ā</b>	<i>from, with, by, in, the lady</i>	Separation ( <i>from</i> ), association or means ( <i>with, by</i> ), place where or time when ( <i>in, at</i> )
		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	domin- <b>ae</b>	<i>the ladies</i>	The same as the singular
<i>Gen.</i>	domin- <b>ārum</b>	<i>of the ladies, or the ladies'</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	domin- <b>īs</b>	<i>to or for the ladies</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	domin- <b>ās</b>	<i>the ladies</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	domin- <b>īs</b>	<i>from, with, by, in, the ladies</i>	

58. **The Base.** That part of a word which remains unchanged in inflection and to which the terminations are added is called the **base**.

Thus, in the declension above, **domin-** is the base and **-a** is the termination of the nominative singular.

59. Write the declension of the following nouns, separating the base from the termination by a hyphen. Also give them orally.

**pugna, terra, lūna, ancil'la, corō'na, in'sula, silva**

60. **Gender.** In English, names of living beings are either masculine or feminine, and names of things without life are neuter. This is called **natural gender**. Yet in English there are some names of things to which we refer as if they were feminine; as, “Have you seen my yacht? *She* is a beauty.” And there are some names of living beings to which we refer as if they were neuter; as, “Is the baby here? No, the nurse has taken *it* home.” Some words, then, have a gender quite apart from sex or real gender, and this is called **grammatical gender**.



Latin, like English, has three genders. Names of males are usually masculine and of females feminine, but *names of things have grammatical gender and may be either masculine, feminine, or neuter*. Thus we have in Latin the three words, **lapis**, a stone; **rūpēs**, a cliff; and **saxum**, a rock. **Lapis** is masculine, **rūpēs** feminine, and **saxum** neuter. The gender can usually be determined by the ending of the word, and *must always be learned*, for without knowing the gender it is impossible to write correct Latin.

**61. Gender of First-Declension Nouns.** Nouns of the first declension are feminine unless they denote males. Thus **silva** is feminine, but **nauta**, sailor, and **agricola**, farmer, are masculine.

**62. EXERCISES**

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 284.

I. 1. Agricola cum filiā in casā habitat. 2. Bona filia agricolae cēnam parat. 3. Cēna est grāta agricolae<sup>1</sup> et agricola bonam filiam laudat. 4. Deinde filia agricolae gallinās ad cēnam vocat. 5. Gallinae filiam agricolae amant. 6. Malae filiae bonās cēnās nōn parant. 7. Filia agricolae est grāta dominae. 8. Domina in insulā magnā habitat. 9. Domina bonae puellae parvae pecūniam dat.

II. 1. Where does the farmer live? 2. The farmer lives in the small cottage. 3. Who lives with the farmer? 4. (His) little daughter lives with the farmer. 5. (His) daughter is getting (**parat**) a good dinner for the farmer. 6. The farmer praises the good dinner. 7. The daughter's good dinner is pleasing to the farmer.

1. Note that the relation expressed by the dative case covers that *to which a feeling is directed*. (Cf. § 43.)



What Latin words are suggested by this picture?

**63. CONVERSATION**

Answer the questions in Latin.

1. Quis cum agricolā in casā habitat?
2. Quid bona filia agricolae parat?
3. Quem agricola laudat?
4. Vocatne filia agricolae gallinās ad cēnam?
5. Cuius filia est grāta dominae?
6. Cui domina pecūniam dat?

LESSON VIII

**FIRST DECLENSION (Continued)**

**64.** We have for some time now been using adjectives and nouns together and you have noticed an agreement between them in *case* and in *number* (§ 54). They agree also in *gender*. In the phrase **silva magna**, we have a feminine adjective in **-a** agreeing with a feminine noun in **-a**.

**65. RULE. Agreement of Adjectives.** *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

**66.** Feminine adjectives in **-a** are declined like feminine nouns in **-a**, and you should learn to decline them together as follows:

	NOUN		ADJECTIVE
	<b>domina</b> (base <b>domin-</b> ), f., lady		<b>bona</b> (base <b>bon-</b> ), good
	SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS
Nom.	do'mina	bona	<b>-a</b>
Gen.	dominae	bonae	<b>-ae</b>

<i>Dat.</i>	dominae	bonae	-ae
<i>Acc.</i>	dominam	bonam	-am
<i>Abl.</i>	dominā	bonā	-ā
		PLURAL	TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	dominae	bonae	-ae
<i>Gen.</i>	dominā 'rum	bonā 'rum	-ārum
<i>Dat.</i>	dominīs	bonīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	dominās	bonās	-ās
<i>Abl.</i>	dominīs	bonīs	-īs

a. In the same way decline together **puella mala**, *the bad girl*; **ancil'la parva**, *the little maid*; **fortū'na magna**, *great fortune*.

67. The words **dea**, *goddess*, and **filia**, *daughter*, take the ending **-ābus** instead of **-īs** in the *dative and ablative plural*. Note the *dative and ablative plural* in the following declension:

	<b>dea bona</b> (bases <b>de- bon-</b> )	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	dea bona	deae bonae
<i>Gen.</i>	deae bonae	deā 'rum bonā 'rum
<i>Dat.</i>	deae bonae	deā 'bus bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	deam bonam	deās bonās
<i>Abl.</i>	deā bonā	dea 'bus bonīs

a. In the same way decline together **filia parva**.

68. **Latin Word Order.** The order of words in English and in Latin sentences is not the same.

In English we arrange words in a fairly fixed order. Thus, in the sentence *My daughter is getting dinner for the farmers*, we cannot alter the order of the words without spoiling the sentence. We can, however, throw emphasis on different words by speaking them with more force. Try the effect of reading the sentence by putting special force on *my, daughter, dinner, farmers*.

In Latin, where the office of the word in the sentence is shown by its *ending* (cf. § 32. 1), and not by its *position*, the order of words is more free, and position is used to secure the same effect that in English is secured by emphasis of voice. To a limited extent we can alter the order of words in English, too, for the same purpose. Compare the sentences

*I saw a game of football at Chicago last November* (normal order)  
**Last November** *I saw a game of football at Chicago*  
*At Chicago, last November, I saw a game of football*

1. In a Latin sentence the most emphatic place is the *first*; next in importance is the *last*; the weakest point is the *middle*. Generally the *subject* is the most important word, and is placed *first*; usually the *verb* is the next in importance, and is placed *last*. The other words of the sentence stand between these two in the order of their importance. Hence the normal order of words—that is, where no unusual emphasis is expressed—is as follows:

**subject—modifiers of the subject—indirect object—direct object—adverb—verb**

Changes from the normal order are frequent, and are due to the desire for throwing emphasis upon some word or phrase. *Notice the order of the Latin words when you are translating, and imitate it when you are turning English into Latin.*

2. Possessive pronouns and modifying genitives normally stand after their nouns. When placed before their nouns they are emphatic, as **filia mea**, *my daughter*; **mea filia**, *my daughter*; **casa Galbae**, *Galba's cottage*; **Galbae casa**, *Galba's cottage*.

Notice the variety of emphasis produced by writing the following sentence in different ways:

**Filia mea agricolis cēnam parat** (normal order)  
**Mea filia agricolis parat cēnam** (**mea** and **cēnam** emphatic)  
**Agricolis filia mea cēnam parat** (**agricolis** emphatic)

3. An adjective placed before its noun is more emphatic than when it follows. When great emphasis is desired, the adjective is separated from its noun by other words.

**Filia mea casam parvam nōn amat** (**parvam** not emphatic)  
**Filia mea parvam casam nōn amat** (**parvam** more emphatic)  
**Parvam filia mea casam nōn amat** (**parvam** very emphatic)

4. Interrogative words usually stand first, the same as in English.

5. The copula (as **est, sunt**) is of so little importance that it frequently does not stand last, but may be placed wherever it sounds well.

## 69. EXERCISE

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 284.

Note the order of the words in these sentences and pick out those that are emphatic.

1. Longae nōn sunt tuae viae. 2. Suntne tubae novae in meā casā? Nōn sunt. 3. Quis lātā in silvā habitat? Diāna, lūnae clārae pulchra dea, lātā in silvā habitat. 4. Nautae altās et lātās amant aquās. 5. Quid ancilla tua portat? Ancilla mea tubam novam portat. 6. Ubi sunt Lesbia et Iūlia? In tuā casa est Lesbia et Iūlia est in meā. 7. Estne Italia lāta terra? Longa est Italia, nōn lāta. 8. Cui Galba agricola fābulam novam nārrat? Filiābus dominae clārae fābulam novam nārrat. 9. Clāra est insula Sicilia. 10. Quem laudat Lātōna? Lātōna laudat filiam.

## First Review of Vocabulary and Grammar, §§ 502-505

### LESSON IX

#### THE SECOND OR O-DECLENSION

**70.** Latin nouns are divided into five declensions.

The declension to which a noun belongs is shown by the ending of the genitive singular. This should always be learned along with the nominative and the gender.

**71.** The nominative singular of nouns of the Second or O-Declension ends in **-us**, **-er**, **-ir**, or **-um**. The genitive singular ends in **-ī**.

**72. Gender.** Nouns in **-um** are neuter. The others are regularly masculine.

**73. Declension of nouns in -us and -um.** Masculines in **-us** and neuters in **-um** are declined as follows:

		SINGULAR			
		TERMINATIONS			TERMINATIONS
	<b>dominus</b> (base <b>domin-</b> ), m., <i>master</i>		<b>pīlum</b> (base <b>pīl-</b> ), n., <i>spear</i>		
<i>Nom.</i>	do' minus <sup>1</sup>	<b>-us</b>	pīlum	<b>-um</b>	
<i>Gen.</i>	dominī	<b>-ī</b>	pīlī	<b>-ī</b>	
<i>Dat.</i>	dominō	<b>-ō</b>	pīlō	<b>-ō</b>	
<i>Acc.</i>	dominum	<b>-um</b>	pīlum	<b>-um</b>	
<i>Abl.</i>	dominō	<b>-ō</b>	pīlō	<b>-ō</b>	
<i>Voc.</i>	domine	<b>-e</b>	pīlum	<b>-um</b>	
PLURAL					
<i>Nom.</i>	dominī	<b>-ī</b>	pīla	<b>-a</b>	
<i>Gen.</i>	dominō'rum	<b>-ōrum</b>	pīlō'rum	<b>-ōrum</b>	
<i>Dat.</i>	dominīs	<b>-īs</b>	pīlīs	<b>-īs</b>	
<i>Acc.</i>	dominōs	<b>-ōs</b>	pīla	<b>-a</b>	
<i>Abl.</i>	dominīs	<b>-īs</b>	pīlīs	<b>-īs</b>	

1. Compare the declension of **domina** and of **dominus**.

a. Observe that the masculines and the neuters have the same terminations excepting in the nominative singular and the nominative and accusative plural.

b. The vocative singular of words of the second declension in **-us** ends in **-ē**, as **domine**, *O master*; **serve**, *O slave*. This is the most important exception to the rule in § 56. a.

**74.** Write side by side the declension of **domina**, **dominus**, and **pīlum**. A comparison of the forms will lead to the following rules, which are of great importance because they apply to all five declensions:

a. The vocative, with a single exception (see § 73. b), is like the nominative. That is, the vocative singular is like the nominative singular, and the vocative plural is like the nominative plural.

b. The nominative, accusative, and vocative of neuter nouns are alike, and in the plural end in **-a**.

c. The accusative singular of masculines and feminines ends in **-m** and the accusative plural in **-s**.

d. The dative and ablative plural are always alike.

e. Final **-i** and **-o** are always *long*; final **-a** is *short*, except in the ablative singular of the first declension.

**75.** Observe the sentences

**Lesbia est bona**, *Lesbia is good*

**Lesbia est ancilla**, *Lesbia is a maidservant*

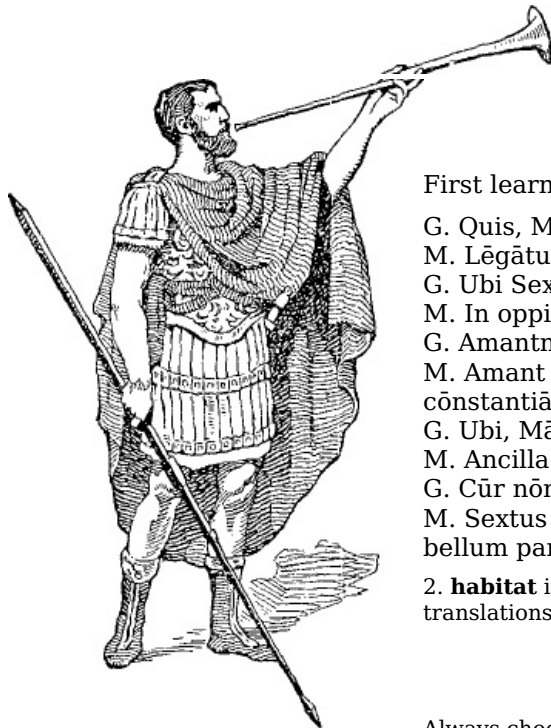
We have learned (§ 55) that **bona**, when used, as here, in the predicate to describe the subject, is called a *predicate adjective*. Similarly a *noun*, as **ancilla**, used in the *predicate* to define the subject is called a **predicate noun**.

76. RULE. **Predicate Noun.** A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb.



PILA

77. DIALOGUE



GALBA AND MARCUS

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 285.

G. Quis, Mārce, est lēgātus cum pīlō et tubā?  
 M. Lēgātus, Galba, est Sextus.  
 G. Ubi Sextus habitat?<sup>2</sup>  
 M. In oppidō Sextus cum filiābus habitat.  
 G. Amantne oppidānī Sextum?  
 M. Amant oppidānī Sextum et laudant, quod magnā cum cōstantiā pugnat.  
 G. Ubi, Mārce, est ancilla tua? Cūr nōn cēnam parat?  
 M. Ancilla mea, Galba, equō lēgātī aquam et frūmentum dat.  
 G. Cūr nōn servus Sextī equum dominī cūrat?  
 M. Sextus et servus ad mūrū oppidī properant. Oppidānī bellum parant.<sup>3</sup>

2. **habitat** is here translated *does live*. Note the *three* possible translations of the Latin present tense:

*he lives*  
**habitat** *he is living*  
*he does live*

Always choose the translation which makes the best sense.

3. Observe that the verb **parō** means not only *to prepare* but also *to prepare for*, and governs the accusative case.

LEGATUS CUM PILO ET TUBA

78. CONVERSATION

Translate the questions and answer them in Latin.

1. Ubi filiae Sextī habitant?
2. Quem oppidānī amant et laudant?
3. Quid ancilla equō lēgātī dat?
4. Cuius equum ancilla cūrat?
5. Quis ad mūrū cum Sextō properat?
6. Quid oppidānī parant?

LESSON X

SECOND DECLENSION (*Continued*)

79. We have been freely using feminine adjectives, like **bona**, in agreement with feminine nouns of the first declension and declined like them. *Masculine* adjectives of this class are declined like **dominus**, and *neuters* like **pīlum**. The adjective and noun, masculine and neuter, are therefore declined as follows:

MASCULINE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE		NEUTER NOUN AND ADJECTIVE	
<b>dominus bonus, the good master</b>		<b>pīlum bonum, the good spear</b>	
BASES <b>domin- bon-</b>		BASES <b>pīl- bon-</b>	
SINGULAR			
TERMINATIONS			
<i>Nom.</i>	do' minus bonus	<b>-us</b>	pīlum bonum <b>-um</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	dominī bonī	<b>-ī</b>	pīlī bonī <b>-ī</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	dominō bonō	<b>-ō</b>	pīlō bonō <b>-ō</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	dominum bonum	<b>-um</b>	pīlum bonum <b>-um</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	dominō bonō	<b>-ō</b>	pīlō bonō <b>-ō</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	domine bone	<b>-e</b>	pīlum bonum <b>-um</b>
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	dominī bonī	<b>-ī</b>	pīla bona <b>-a</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	dominō'rum bonō'rum	<b>-ōrum</b>	pīlō'rum bonō'rum <b>-ōrum</b>

<i>Dat.</i>	dominīs bonīs	-is	pīlis bonīs	-is
<i>Acc.</i>	dominōs bonōs	-ōs	pīla bona	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	dominīs bonīs	-īs	pīlis bonīs	-īs

Decline together **bellum longum, equus parvus, servus malus, mūrus altus, frūmentum novum.**

80. Observe the sentences

**Lesbia ancilla est bona,** *Lesbia, the maidservant, is good*

**Filia Lesbiae ancillae est bona,** *the daughter of Lesbia, the maidservant, is good*

**Servus Lesbiam ancillam amat,** *the slave loves Lesbia, the maidservant*

In these sentences **ancilla, ancillae,** and **ancillam** denote the class of persons to which *Lesbia* belongs and explain who she is. Nouns so related that the second is only another name for the first and explains it are said to be in apposition, and are always in the same case.

81. **RULE. Apposition.** *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains.*

## 82. EXERCISES

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 285.

I. 1. Patria servī bonī, vīcus servōrum bonōrum, bone popule. 2. Populus oppidī magnī, in oppidō magnō, in oppidīs magnīs. 3. Cum pīlis longīs, ad pīla longa, ad mūrōs lātōs. 4. Lēgāte male, amīcī legātī malī, cēna grāta dominō bonō. 5. Frūmentum equōrum parvōrum, domine bone, ad lēgātōs clārōs. 6. Rhēnus est in Germāniā, patriā meā. 7. Sextus lēgātus pīlum longum portat. 8. Oppidānī bonī Sextō lēgātō clārā pecūniam dant. 9. Malī servī equum bonum Mārcī domini necant. 10. Galba agricola et Iūlia filia bona labōrant. 11. Mārcus nauta in īnsulā Siciliā habitat.

II. 1. Wicked slave, who is your friend? Why does he not praise Galba, your master? 2. My friend is from (**ex**) a village of Germany, my fatherland. 3. My friend does not love the people of Italy. 4. Who is caring for<sup>1</sup> the good horse of Galba, the farmer? 5. Mark, where is Lesbia, the maidservant? 6. She is hastening<sup>1</sup> to the little cottage<sup>2</sup> of Julia, the farmer's daughter.

1. See [footnote](#) 1, p. 33. Remember that **cūrat** is transitive and governs a direct object.

2. Not the dative. (Cf. § 43.)

## LESSON XI

### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

83. Adjectives of the first and second declensions are declined in the three genders as follows:

	SINGULAR		
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō
<i>Voc.</i>	bone	bona	bonum
	PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

a. Write the declension and give it orally *across the page*, thus giving the three genders for each case.

b. Decline **grātus, -a, -um; malus, -a, -um; altus, -a, -um; parvus, -a, -um.**

84. Thus far the adjectives have had the same terminations as the nouns. However, the agreement between the adjective and its noun does *not* mean that they must have the same termination. If the adjective and the noun belong to different declensions, the terminations will, in many cases, not be the same. For example, **nauta, sailor**, is masculine and belongs to the first declension. The masculine form of the adjective **bonus** is of the second declension. Consequently, *a good sailor* is **nauta bonus**. So, *the wicked farmer* is **agricola malus**. Learn the following declensions:

85. **nauta bonus** (bases **naut- bon-**), m., *the good sailor*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	nauta	bonus	nautae	bonī

<i>Gen.</i>	nautae	bonī	nautārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	nautae	bonō	nautīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	nautam	bonum	nautās	bonōs
<i>Abl.</i>	nautā	bonō	nautīs	bonīs
<i>Voc.</i>	nauta	bone	nautae	bonī

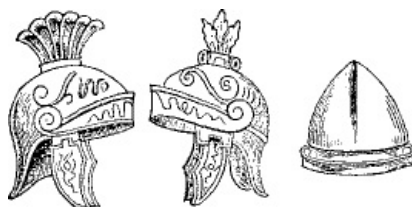
## 86. EXERCISES

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 285.

I. 1. Est<sup>1</sup> in vicō nauta bonus. 2. Sextus est amicus nautae bonī. 3. Sextus nautae bonō galeam dat. 4. Populus Rōmānus nautam bonum laudat. 5. Sextus cum nautā bonō praedam portat. 6. Ubi, nauta bone, sunt arma et tēla lēgātī Rōmānī? 7. Nautae bonī ad bellum properant. 8. Fāma nautārum bonōrum est clāra. 9. Pugnae sunt grātae nautīs bonīs. 10. Oppidānī nautās bonōs cūrant. 11. Cūr, nautae bonī, malī agricolae ad Rhēnum properant? 12. Malī agricolae cum bonīs nautīs pugnant.

II. 1. The wicked farmer is hastening to the village with (his) booty. 2. The reputation of the wicked farmer is not good. 3. Why does Galba's daughter give arms and weapons to the wicked farmer? 4. Lesbia invites the good sailor to dinner. 5. Why is Lesbia with the good sailor hastening from the cottage? 6. Sextus, where is my helmet? 7. The good sailors are hastening to the toilsome battle. 8. The horses of the wicked farmers are small. 9. The Roman people give money to the good sailors. 10. Friends care for the good sailors. 11. Whose friends are fighting with the wicked farmers?

1. **Est**, beginning a declarative sentence, *there is*.



GALEAE

## LESSON XII

### NOUNS IN *-IUS* AND *-IUM*

**87.** Nouns of the second declension in **-ius** and **-ium** end in **-ī** in the genitive singular, *not* in **-iī**, and the accent rests on the penult; as, **fili** from **filius** (*son*), **praesi'dī** from **praesi'dium** (*garrison*).

**88.** Proper names of persons in **-ius**, and **filius**, end in **-ī** in the vocative singular, *not* in **-ē**, and the accent rests on the penult; as, **Vergi'li**, *O Vergil*; **fili**, *O son*.

a. Observe that in these words the vocative and the genitive are alike.

**89.** **praesidium** (base **praesidi-**), n., *garrison* **filius** (base **fili-**), m., *son*

#### SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	praesidium	filius
<i>Gen.</i>	praesi'dī	fili
<i>Dat.</i>	praesidiō	filiō
<i>Acc.</i>	praesidium	filium
<i>Abl.</i>	praesidiō	filiō
<i>Voc.</i>	praesidium	fili

The plural is regular. Note that the **-i-** of the base is lost only in the genitive singular, and in the vocative of words like **filius**.

Decline together **praesidium parvum**; **filius bonus**; **fluvius longus**, *the long river*; **proelium clārum**, *the famous battle*.

## 90. EXERCISES

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 285.

I. 1. Frūmentum bonae terrae, gladī malī, bellī longī. 2. Cōstantia magna, praesidia magna, clāre Vergi'li. 3. Male serve, Ō clārum oppidum, male fili, filii malī, fili malī. 4. Fluvī longī, fluvii longī, fluviorū longōrum, fāma praesi'dī magnī. 5. Cum gladīis parvis, cum deābus clāris, ad nautās clārōs. 6. Multōrum proeliōrum, praedae magnae, ad proelia dūra.

II. Germānia, patria Germānōrum, est clāra terra. In Germāniā sunt fluvii multī. Rhēnus magnus et lātus fluvius Germāniae est. In silvīs lātīs Germāniae sunt ferae multae. Multi Germāni in oppidīs magnis et in vicīs parvīs habitant et multī sunt agricolae bonī. Bella Germānōrum sunt magna et clāra. Populus Germāniae bellum et proelia amat et saepe cum finitimīs pugnat. Fluvius Rhēnus est finitimus oppidīs<sup>1</sup> multīs et clārīs.

1. Dative with **finitimus**. (See § 43.)

## LESSON XIII

### SECOND DECLENSION (*Continued*)

**91. Declension of Nouns in -er and -ir.** In early Latin all the masculine nouns of the second declension ended in **-os**. This **-os** later became **-us** in words like **servus**, and was dropped entirely in words with bases ending in **-r**, like **puer**, *boy*; **ager**, *field*; and **vir**, *man*. These words are therefore declined as follows:

<b>92.</b>	<b>puer</b> , m., <i>boy</i>	<b>ager</b> , m., <i>field</i>	<b>vir</b> , m., <i>man</i>	
	BASE <b>puer-</b>	BASE <b>agr-</b>	BASE <b>vir-</b>	
		SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	puer	ager	vir	—
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō	<b>-ō</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	agrū	virū	<b>-um</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō	<b>-ō</b>
		PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	<b>-ōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	<b>-īs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	<b>-ōs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	<b>-īs</b>

a. The vocative case of these words is like the nominative, following the general rule (§ 74. a).

b. The declension differs from that of **servus** only in the nominative and vocative singular.

c. Note that in **puer** the **e** remains all the way through, while in **ager** it is present only in the nominative. In **puer** the **e** belongs to the base, but in **ager** (base **agr-**) it does not, and was inserted in the nominative to make it easier to pronounce. Most words in **-er** are declined like **ager**. *The genitive shows whether you are to follow puer or ager.*

**93.** Masculine adjectives in **-er** of the second declension are declined like nouns in **-er**. A few of them are declined like **puer**, but most of them like **ager**. The feminine and neuter nominatives show which form to follow, thus,

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.		
	<b>liber</b>	<b>libera</b>	<b>liberum</b>	( <i>free</i> )	is like <b>puer</b>
	<b>pulcher</b>	<b>pulchra</b>	<b>pulchrum</b>	( <i>pretty</i> )	is like <b>ager</b>

For the full declension in the three genders, see § 469. b. c.

**94.** Decline together the words **vir liber**, **terra libera**, **frūmentum liberum**, **puer pulcher**, **puella pulchra**, **oppidum pulchrum**

**95.** ITALIA<sup>1</sup>

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 286.

Magna est Italiae fāma, patriae Rōmānōrum, et clāra est Rōma, domina orbis terrārum.<sup>2</sup> Tiberim,<sup>3</sup> fluvium Rōmānum, quis nōn laudat et pulchrōs fluviō finitimōs agrōs? Altōs mūrōs, longa et dūra bella, clārās victōriās quis nōn laudat? Pulchra est terra Italia. Agrī bonī agricolīs praemia dant magna, et equī agricolārum cōpiam frūmentī ad oppida et vicōs portant. In agrīs populī Rōmānī labōrant multī servī. Viae Italiae sunt longae et lātae. Finitima Italiae est insula Sicilia.

1. In this selection note especially the emphasis as shown by the order of the words.

2. **orbis terrārum**, *of the world*.

3. **Tiberim**, *the Tiber*, accusative case.

**96.** DIALOGUE

MARCUS AND CORNELIUS

C. Ubi est, Mārce, filius tuus? Estne in pulchrā terrā Italiā?

M. Nōn est, Cornēlī, in Italiā. Ad fluvium Rhēnum



LEGIONARIUS

properat cum cōpiīs Rōmānīs quia est<sup>4</sup> fāma Novī bellī cum Germānīs. Liber Germāniae populus Rōmānōs Nōn amat.

C. Estne filius tuus copiārum Rōmānārum lēgātus?

M. Lēgātus nōn est, sed est apud legiōnāriōs.

C. Quae<sup>5</sup> arma portat<sup>6</sup>?

M. Scūtum magnum et lōricam dūram et galeam pulchram portat.

C. Quae tēla portat?

M. Gladium et pīlum longum portat.

C. Amatne lēgātus filium tuum?

M. Amat, et saepe filiō meō praemia pulchra et praedam multam dat.

C. Ubi est terra Germānōrum?

M. Terra Germānōrum, Cornēlī est finitima Rhēnō, fluviō magnō et altō.

4. **est**, before its subject, *there is*; so **sunt**, *there are*.

5. **Quae**, *what kind of*, an interrogative adjective pronoun.

6. What are the three possible translations of the present tense?

LESSON XIV

THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS

97. Observe the sentences

*This is my shield*

*This shield is mine*

In the first sentence *my* is a possessive adjective; in the second *mine* is a possessive pronoun, for it takes the place of a noun, *this shield is mine* being equivalent to *this shield is my shield*. Similarly, in Latin the possessives are sometimes *adjectives* and sometimes *pronouns*.

98. The possessives *my*, *mine*, *your*, *yours*, etc. are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions.

SINGULAR

1st Pers. **meus, mea, meum**

*my, mine*

2d Pers. **tuus, tua, tuum**

*your, yours*

3d Pers. **suus, sua, suum**

*his (own), her (own), its (own)*

PLURAL

1st Pers. **noster, nostra, nostrum**

*our, ours*

2d Pers. **vester, vestra, vestrum**

*your, yours*

3d Pers. **suus, sua, suum**

*their (own), theirs*

NOTE. **Meus** has the irregular vocative singular masculine **mī**, as **mī fili**, *O my son*.

a. The possessives agree with the name of the *thing possessed* in gender, number, and case. Compare the English and Latin in

*Sextus is calling his boy* **Sextus suum puerum vocat**  
*Julia is calling her boy* **Iūlia suum puerum vocat**

Observe that **suum** agrees with **puerum**, and is unaffected by the gender of Sextus or Julia.

b. When *your, yours*, refers to *one* person, use **tuus**; when to *more than one*, **vester**; as,

*Lesbia, your wreaths are pretty* **Corōnae tuae, Lesbia, sunt pulchrae**  
*Girls, your wreaths are pretty* **Corōnae vestrae, puellae, sunt pulchrae**

c. **Suus** is a *reflexive* possessive, that is, it usually stands in the predicate and regularly refers back to the *subject*. Thus, **Vir suōs servōs vocat** means *The man calls his (own) slaves*. Here *his (suōs)* refers to *man (vir)*, and could not refer to any one else.

d. Possessives are used much less frequently than in English, being omitted whenever the meaning is clear without them. (Cf. § 22. a.) This is especially true of **suus**, **-a**, **-um**, which, when inserted, is more or less emphatic, like our *his own, her own*, etc.

99. EXERCISES

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 286.

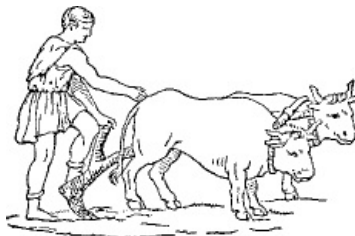
I. 1. Mārcus amīcō Sextō cōnsilium suum nūntiat 2. Est cōpia frūmentī in agrīs nostrīs. 3. Amīcī meī bonam cēnam ancillae vestrae laudant 4. Tua lōrica, mī fili, est dūra. 5. Scūta nostra et tēla, mī amīce, in castrīs Rōmānīs sunt. 6. Suntne virī patriae tuae liberī? Sunt. 7. Ubi, Cornēlī, est tua galea pulchra? 8. Mea galea, Sexte, est in casā meā. 9. Pīlum longum est tuum, sed gladius est



meus. 10. Iūlia gallinās suās pulchrās amat et gallinae dominam suam amat. 11. Nostra castra sunt vestra. 12. Est cōpia praedae in castris vestrīs. 13. Amīcī tuī miserīs et aegrīs cibum et pecūniam saepe dant.

II. 1. Our teacher praises Mark's industry. 2. My son Sextus is carrying his booty to the Roman camp.<sup>1</sup> 3. Your good girls are giving aid to the sick and wretched.<sup>2</sup> 4. There are<sup>3</sup> frequent battles in our villages. 5. My son, where is the lieutenant's food? 6. The camp is mine, but the weapons are yours.

1. Not the dative. Why?
2. Here the adjectives *sick* and *wretched* are used like nouns.
3. Where should **sunt** stand? Cf. I. 2 above.



AGRICOLA ARAT

## LESSON XV

### THE ABLATIVE DENOTING WITH

**100.** Of the various relations denoted by the ablative case (§ 50) there is none more important than that expressed in English by the preposition *with*. This little word is not so simple as it looks. It does not always convey the same meaning, nor is it always to be translated by **cum**. This will become clear from the following sentences:

- a. Mark is feeble *with* (for or because of) want of food
- b. Diana kills the beasts *with* (or by) her arrows
- c. Julia is *with* Sextus
- d. The men fight *with* great steadiness

a. In sentence *a*, *with* *want* (of food) gives the cause of Mark's feebleness. This idea is expressed in Latin by the ablative without a preposition, and the construction is called the **ablative of cause**:

**Mārcus est infirmus inopiā cibi**

b. In sentence *b*, *with* (or by) *her arrows* tells **by means of what** Diana kills the beasts. This idea is expressed in Latin by the ablative without a preposition, and the construction is called the **ablative of means**:

**Diāna sagittis suis ferās necat**

c. In sentence *c* we are told that Julia is not alone, but **in company with** Sextus. This idea is expressed in Latin by the ablative with the preposition **cum**, and the construction is called the **ablative of accompaniment**:

**Iūlia est cum Sextō**

d. In sentence *d* we are told how the men fight. The idea is one of **manner**. This is expressed in Latin by the ablative with **cum**, unless there is a modifying adjective present, in which case **cum** may be omitted. This construction is called the **ablative of manner**:

**Virī (cum) cōstantiā magnā pugnant**

**101.** You are now able to form four important rules for the ablative denoting *with*:

**102. RULE. Ablative of Cause.** Cause is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question *Because of what?*

**103. RULE. Ablative of Means.** Means is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question *By means of what? With what?*

N.B. **Cum** must never be used with the ablative expressing cause or means.

**104. RULE. Ablative of Accompaniment.** Accompaniment is denoted by the ablative with **cum**. This answers the question *With whom?*

**105. RULE. Ablative of Manner.** The ablative with **cum** is used to denote the manner of an action. **Cum** may be omitted, if an adjective is used with the ablative. This answers the question *How? In what manner?*

**106.** What uses of the ablative do you discover in the following passage, and what question does each answer?

The soldiers marched to the fort with great speed and broke down the gate with blows of their muskets. The inhabitants, terrified by the din, attempted to cross the river with their wives and

children, but the stream was swollen with (*or by*) the rain. Because of this many were swept away by the waters and only a few, almost overcome with fatigue, with great difficulty succeeded in gaining the farther shore.

### 107. EXERCISES

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 286.

I. *The Romans prepare for War.* Rōmānī, clārus Italiae populus, bellum parant. Ex agrīs suīs, vicīs, oppidisque magnō studiō virī validī ad arma properant. Iam lēgatī cum legiōnariīs ex Italiā ad Rhēnum, fluvium Germāniae altum et lātum, properant, et servī equīs et carrīs cibum frūmentumque ad castra Rōmāna portant. Inopiā bonōrum tēlōrum infirmī sunt Germānī, sed Rōmānī armāti galeīs, lōricīs, scūtīs, gladiīs, pīlisque sunt validī.

II. 1. The sturdy farmers of Italy labor in the fields with great diligence. 2. Sextus, the lieutenant, and (his) son Mark are fighting with the Germans. 3. The Roman legionaries are armed with long spears. 4. Where is Lesbia, your maid, Sextus? Lesbia is with my friends in Galba's cottage. 5. Many are sick because of bad water and for lack of food. 6. The Germans, with (their) sons and daughters, are hastening with horses and wagons.

## LESSON XVI

### THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

108. There are nine irregular adjectives of the first and second declensions which have a peculiar termination in the genitive and dative singular of all genders:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>-ius</b>	<b>-ius</b>	<b>-ius</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>-ī</b>	<b>-ī</b>	<b>-ī</b>

Otherwise they are declined like **bonus, -a, -um**. Learn the list and the meaning of each:

**alius, alia, aliud**, *other, another* (of several)  
**alter, altera, alterum**, *the one, the other* (of two)  
**ūnus, -a, -um**, *one, alone*; (in the plural) *only*  
**ūllus, -a, -um**, *any*  
**nūllus, -a, -um**, *none, no*  
**sōlus, -a, -um**, *alone*  
**tōtus, -a, -um**, *all, whole, entire*  
**uter, utra, utrum**, *which?* (of two)  
**neuter, neutra, neutrum**, *neither* (of two)

### 109. PARADIGMS

	SINGULAR					
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	nūllus	nūlla	nūllum	alius	alia	aliud
<i>Gen.</i>	nūllī'us	nūllī'us	nūllī'us	alī'us	alī'us	alī'us
<i>Dat.</i>	nūllī	nūllī	nūllī	alī	alī	alī
<i>Acc.</i>	nūllum	nūllam	nūllum	alium	aliam	aliud
<i>Abl.</i>	nūllō	nūllā	nūllō	aliō	aliā	aliō

THE PLURAL IS REGULAR

a. Note the peculiar neuter singular ending in **-d** of **alius**. The genitive **alīus** is rare. Instead of it use **alterius**, the genitive of **alter**.

b. These peculiar case endings are found also in the declension of pronouns (see § 114). For this reason these adjectives are sometimes called the **pronominal adjectives**.

110. Learn the following idioms:

**alter, -era, -erum ... alter, -era, -erum**, *the one ... the other* (of two)  
**alius, -a, -ud ... alius, -a, -ud**, *one ... another* (of any number)  
**aliī, -ae, -a ... aliī, -ae, -a**, *some ... others*

### EXAMPLES

1. **Alterum oppidum est magnum, alterum parvum**, *the one town is large, the other small* (of two towns).

2. **Aliud oppidum est validum, aliud infirmum**, *one town is strong, another weak* (of towns in general).

3. **Aliī gladiōs, aliī scūta portant**, *some carry swords, others shields*.

### 111. EXERCISES

I. 1. In utrā casā est Iūlia? Iūlia est in neutrā casā. 2. Nūllī malō puerō praemium dat magister.

3. Alter puer est nauta, alter agricola. 4. Alii viri aquam, alii terram amant. 5. Galba unus (or solus) cum studio laborat. 6. Estne ullus carrus in agro meo? 7. Lesbia est ancilla alterius domini, Tullia alterius. 8. Lesbia sola cenam parat. 9. Cena nullius alterius ancillae est bona. 10. Lesbia nulli alii viro cenam dat.

NOTE. The pronominal adjectives, as you observe, regularly stand before and not after their nouns.

II. 1. The men of all Germany are preparing for war. 2. Some towns are great and others are small. 3. One boy likes chickens, another horses. 4. Already the booty of one town is in our fort. 5. Our whole village is suffering for (i.e. *weak because of*) lack of food. 6. The people are already hastening to the other town. 7. Among the Romans (there) is no lack of grain.

## LESSON XVII

### THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS, EA, ID*

**112.** A demonstrative is a word that points out an object definitely, as *this, that, these, those*. Sometimes these words are pronouns, as, *Do you hear these?* and sometimes adjectives, as, *Do you hear these men?* In the former case they are called **demonstrative pronouns**, in the latter **demonstrative adjectives**.

**113.** Demonstratives are similarly used in Latin both as *pronouns* and as *adjectives*. The one used most is

**is**, masculine; **ea**, feminine; **id**, neuter

SINGULAR	<i>this</i> <i>that</i>	PLURAL	<i>these</i> <i>those</i>
----------	----------------------------	--------	------------------------------

**114.** **Is** is declined as follows. Compare its declension with that of **alius**, § 109.

	BASE <b>e-</b>					
	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	eī (or iī)	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	eīs (or iīs)	eīs (or iīs)	eīs (or iīs)
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	eīs (or iīs)	eīs (or iīs)	eīs (or iīs)

Note that the base **e-** changes to **i-** in a few cases. The genitive singular **eius** is pronounced *eh' yus*. In the plural the forms with two **i**'s are preferred and the two **i**'s are pronounced as one. Hence, pronounce **iī** as **i** and **iīs** as **īs**.

**115.** Besides being used as demonstrative pronouns and adjectives the Latin demonstratives are regularly used for the personal pronoun *he, she, it*. As a personal pronoun, then, **is** would have the following meanings:

SING.	<i>Nom.</i>	<b>is</b> , <i>he</i> ; <b>ea</b> , <i>she</i> ; <b>id</b> , <i>it</i>
	<i>Gen.</i>	<b>eius</b> , <i>of him or his</i> ; <b>eius</b> , <i>of her, her, or hers</i> ; <b>eius</b> , <i>of it or its</i>
	<i>Dat.</i>	<b>eī</b> , <i>to or for him</i> ; <b>eī</b> , <i>to or for her</i> ; <b>eī</b> , <i>to or for it</i>
	<i>Acc.</i>	<b>eum</b> , <i>him</i> ; <b>eam</b> , <i>her</i> ; <b>id</b> , <i>it</i>
	<i>Abl.</i>	<b>eō</b> , <i>with, from, etc., him</i> ; <b>eā</b> , <i>with, from, etc., her</i> ; <b>eō</b> , <i>with, from, etc., it</i>
PLUR.	<i>Nom.</i>	<b>eī</b> or <b>iī</b> , <b>eae</b> , <b>ea</b> , <i>they</i>
	<i>Gen.</i>	<b>eōrum</b> , <b>eārum</b> , <b>eōrum</b> , <i>of them, their</i>
	<i>Dat.</i>	<b>eīs</b> or <b>iīs</b> , <b>eīs</b> or <b>iīs</b> , <b>eīs</b> or <b>iīs</b> , <i>to or for them</i>
	<i>Acc.</i>	<b>eōs</b> , <b>eās</b> , <b>ea</b> , <i>them</i>
	<i>Abl.</i>	<b>eīs</b> or <b>iīs</b> , <b>eīs</b> or <b>iīs</b> , <b>eīs</b> or <b>iīs</b> , <i>with, from, etc., them</i>

**116. Comparison between *suus* and *is*.** We learned above (§ 98. c) that **suus** is a *reflexive* possessive. When *his, her* (poss.), *its, their*, do not refer to the subject of the sentence, we express *his, her, its* by **eius**, the genitive singular of **is, ea, id**; and *their* by the genitive plural, using **eōrum** to refer to a masculine or neuter antecedent noun and **eārum** to refer to a feminine one.

### EXAMPLES

*Galba calls his (own) son, Galba suum filium vocat*  
*Galba calls his son (not his own, but another's), Galba eius filium vocat*  
*Julia calls her (own) children, Iulia suos liberōs vocat*  
*Julia calls her children (not her own, but another's), Iulia eius liberōs vocat*  
*The men praise their (own) boys, viri suos puerōs laudant*  
*The men praise their boys (not their own, but others'), viri eōrum puerōs laudant*

## 117. EXERCISES

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 287.

1. He praises her, him, it, them. 2. This cart, that report, these teachers, those women, that abode, these abodes. 3. That strong garrison, among those weak and sick women, that want of firmness, those frequent plans.
4. The other woman is calling her chickens (*her own*). 5. Another woman is calling her chickens (*not her own*). 6. The Gaul praises his arms (*his own*). 7. The Gaul praises his arms (*not his own*). 8. This farmer often plows their fields. 9. Those wretched slaves long for their master (*their own*). 10. Those wretched slaves long for their master (*not their own*). 11. Free men love their own fatherland. 12. They love its villages and towns.

## 118. DIALOGUE <sup>1</sup>

### CORNELIUS AND MARCUS

- M. Quis est vir, Cornēli, cum puerō parvō? Estne Rōmānus et liber?  
C. Rōmānus nōn est, Mārce. Is vir est servus et eius domicilium est in silvīs Galliae.  
M. Estne puer filius eius servī an alterius?  
C. Neutrīus filius est puer. Is est filius lēgātī Sextī.  
M. Quō puer cum eō servō properat?  
C. Is cum servō properat ad lātōs Sextī agrōs.<sup>2</sup> Tōtūm frūmentum est iam mātūrum et magnus servōrum numerus in Italiae<sup>3</sup> agrīs labōrat.  
M. Agricolaene sunt Gallī et patriae suae agrōs arant?  
C. Nōn agricolae sunt. Bellum amant Gallī, nōn agrī cultūram. Apud eōs virī pugnant et fēminae auxiliō liberōrum agrōs arant parantque cibum.  
M. Magister noster puerīs puellisque grātās Gallōrum fābulās saepe nārrat et laudat eōs saepe.  
C. Mala est fortūna eōrum et saepe miserī servī multīs cum lacrimīs patriam suam dēsiderant.

1. There are a number of departures from the normal order in this dialogue. Find them, and give the reason.
2. When a noun is modified by both a genitive and an adjective, a favorite order of words is *adjective, genitive, noun*.
3. A modifying genitive often stands between a preposition and its object.

---

## Second Review, Lessons IX-XVII, §§ 506-509

---

## LESSON XVIII

### CONJUGATION

#### THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE TENSES OF **SUM**

**119.** The inflection of a verb is called its *conjugation* (cf. § 23). In English the verb has but few changes in form, the different meanings being expressed by the use of personal pronouns and auxiliaries, as, *I am carried, we have carried, they shall have carried*, etc. In Latin, on the other hand, instead of using personal pronouns and auxiliary verbs, the form changes with the meaning. In this way the Romans expressed differences in *tense, mood, voice, person, and number*.

**120. The Tenses.** The different forms of a verb referring to different times are called its *tenses*. The chief distinctions of time are present, past, and future:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <b>The present</b> , that is, <i>what is happening now, or what usually happens</i> , is expressed by                           | THE PRESENT TENSE                             |
| 2. <b>The past</b> , that is, <i>what was happening, used to happen, happened, has happened, or had happened</i> , is expressed by | THE IMPERFECT, PERFECT, AND PLUPERFECT TENSES |
| 3. <b>The future</b> , that is, <i>what is going to happen</i> , is expressed by   | THE FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES          |

**121. The Moods.** Verbs have inflection of *mood* to indicate the manner in which they express action. The moods of the Latin verb are the *indicative, subjunctive, imperative, and infinitive*.

a. A verb is in the *indicative* mood when it makes a statement or asks a question about something assumed as a fact. All the verbs we have used thus far are in the present indicative.

**122. The Persons.** There are three persons, as in English. The first person is the person speaking (*I sing*); the second person the person spoken to (*you sing*); the third person the person spoken of (*he sings*). Instead of using personal pronouns for the different persons in the two numbers, singular and plural, the Latin verb uses the personal endings (cf. § 22 a; 29). We have already learned that **-t** is the ending of the third person singular in the active voice and **-nt** of the

third person plural. The complete list of personal endings of the active voice is as follows:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
1st Pers.	<i>I</i>	<b>-m</b> or <b>-ō</b>	<i>we</i>	<b>-mus</b>
2d Pers.	<i>thou</i> or <i>you</i>	<b>-s</b>	<i>you</i>	<b>-tis</b>
3d Pers.	<i>he, she, it</i>	<b>-t</b>	<i>they</i>	<b>-nt</b>

**123.** Most verbs form their moods and tenses after a regular plan and are called *regular* verbs. Verbs that depart from this plan are called *irregular*. The verb *to be* is irregular in Latin as in English. The present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative are inflected as follows:

PRESENT INDICATIVE				
	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
1st Pers.	<i>su-</i>	<b>m</b> , <i>I am</i>	<i>su-</i>	<b>mus</b> , <i>we are</i>
2d Pers.	<i>e-</i>	<b>s</b> , <i>you<sup>1</sup> are</i>	<i>es-</i>	<b>tis</b> , <i>you<sup>1</sup> are</i>
3d Pers.	<i>es-</i>	<b>t</b> , <i>he, she, or it is</i>	<i>su-</i>	<b>nt</b> , <i>they are</i>
IMPERFECT INDICATIVE				
1st Pers.	<i>er-a-</i>	<b>m</b> , <i>I was</i>	<i>er-ā'</i>	<b>mus</b> , <i>we were</i>
2d Pers.	<i>er-ā-</i>	<b>s</b> , <i>you were</i>	<i>er-ā'</i>	<b>tis</b> , <i>you were</i>
3d Pers.	<i>er-a-</i>	<b>t</b> , <i>he, she, or it was</i>	<i>er-a-</i>	<b>nt</b> , <i>they were</i>
FUTURE INDICATIVE				
1st Pers.	<i>er-ō</i> ,	<i>I shall be</i>	<i>er'-i-</i>	<b>mus</b> , <i>we shall be</i>
2d Pers.	<i>er-i-</i>	<b>s</b> , <i>you will be</i>	<i>er'-i-</i>	<b>tis</b> , <i>you will be</i>
3d Pers.	<i>er-i-</i>	<b>t</b> , <i>he will be</i>	<i>er-u-</i>	<b>nt</b> , <i>they will be</i>

a. Be careful about vowel quantity and accent in these forms, and consult §§ 12.2; 14; 15.

1. Observe that in English *you are*, *you were*, etc. may be either singular or plural. In Latin the singular and plural forms are never the same.

#### 124. DIALOGUE

##### THE BOYS SEXTUS AND MARCUS

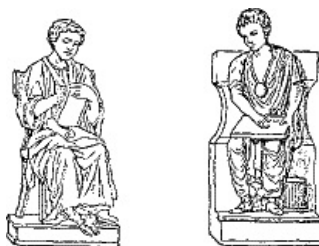
First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 287.

S. Ubi es, Mārce? Ubi est Quīntus? Ubi estis, amīcī?  
M. Cum Quīntō, Sexte, in silvā sum. Nōn sōlī sumus; sunt in silvā multī aliī puerī.  
S. Nunc laetus es, sed nūper nōn laetus erās. Cūr miser erās?  
M. Miser eram quia amīcī meī erant in aliō vicō et eram sōlus. Nunc sum apud sociōs meōs.  
Nunc laetī sumus et erimus.  
S. Erātisne in lūdo hodiē?  
M. Hodiē nōn erāmus in lūdō, quod magister erat aeger.  
S. Eritisne mox in lūdō?  
M. Amīcī meī ibi erunt, sed ego (*I*) nōn erō.  
S. Cūr nōn ibi eris? Magister, saepe irātus, inopiam tuam studī diligentiaeque nōn laudat.  
M. Nūper aeger eram et nunc infirmus sum.

#### 125. EXERCISE

1. You are, you were, you will be, (*sing. and plur.*). 2. I am, I was, I shall be. 3. He is, he was, he will be. 4. We are, we were, we shall be. 5. They are, they were, they will be.

6. Why were you not in school to-day? I was sick. 7. Lately he was a sailor, now he is a farmer, soon he will be a teacher. 8. To-day I am happy, but lately I was wretched. 9. The teachers were happy because of the boys' industry.



PUERI ROMANI IN LUDO

#### LESSON XIX

##### THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS · PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF *AMŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

**126.** There are four conjugations of the regular verbs. These conjugations are distinguished from

each other by the final vowel of the present conjugation-stem.<sup>1</sup> This vowel is called the *distinguishing vowel*, and is best seen in the present infinitive.

1. The *stem* is the body of a word to which the terminations are attached. It is often identical with the base (cf. § 58). If, however, the stem ends in a vowel, the latter does not appear in the base, but is variously combined with the inflectional terminations. This point is further explained in § 230.

Below is given the *present infinitive* of a verb of each conjugation, the *present stem*, and the *distinguishing vowel*.

CONJUGATION	PRES. INFIN.	PRES. STEM	DISTINGUISHING VOWEL
I.	<b>amā're</b> , <i>to love</i>	<b>amā-</b>	<b>ā</b>
II.	<b>monē're</b> , <i>to advise</i>	<b>monē-</b>	<b>ē</b>
III.	<b>re'gēre</b> , <i>to rule</i>	<b>regē-</b>	<b>ē</b>
IV.	<b>audi're</b> , <i>to hear</i>	<b>audi-</b>	<b>ī</b>

a. Note that the present stem of each conjugation is found by dropping **-re**, the ending of the present infinitive.

NOTE. The present infinitive of **sum** is **esse**, and **es-** is the present stem.

127. From the present stem are formed the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses.

128. The inflection of the Present Active Indicative of the first and of the second conjugation is as follows:

	<b>a'mō, amā're</b> ( <i>love</i> )	<b>mo'neō, monē're</b> ( <i>advise</i> )	PERSONAL ENDINGS
	PRES. STEM <b>amā-</b>	PRES. STEM <b>monē-</b>	
SING.	1. a'mō, <i>I love</i>	mo'neō, <i>I advise</i>	<b>-ō</b>
	2. a'mās, <i>you love</i>	mo'nēs, <i>you advise</i>	<b>-s</b>
	3. a'mat, <i>he (she, it) loves</i>	mo'net, <i>he (she, it) advises</i>	<b>-t</b>
PLUR.	1. amā'mus, <i>we love</i>	monē'mus, <i>we advise</i>	<b>-mus</b>
	2. amā'tis, <i>you love</i>	monē'tis, <i>you advise</i>	<b>-tis</b>
	3. a'mant, <i>they love</i>	mo'nent, <i>they advise</i>	<b>-nt</b>

1. The present tense is inflected by adding the personal endings to the present stem, and its first person uses **-o** and not **-m**. The form **amō** is for **amā-ō**, the two vowels **ā-ō** contracting to **ō**. In **moneō** there is no contraction. *Nearly all regular verbs ending in -eo belong to the second conjugation.*

2. Note that the long final vowel of the stem is shortened before another vowel (**monē-ō = mo'nēō**), and before final **-t** (**amat, monēt**) and **-nt** (**amant, monēnt**). Compare § 12. 2.

129. Like **amō** and **moneō** inflect the present active indicative of the following verbs<sup>2</sup>:

2. The only new verbs in this list are the five of the second conjugation which are starred. Learn their meanings.

INDICATIVE PRESENT	INFINITIVE PRESENT
<b>a'rō</b> , <i>I plow</i>	<b>arā're</b> , <i>to plow</i>
<b>cūrō</b> , <i>I care for</i>	<b>cūrā're</b> , <i>to care for</i>
* <b>dē'leō</b> , <i>I destroy</i>	<b>dēlē're</b> , <i>to destroy</i>
<b>dēsī'derō</b> , <i>I long for</i>	<b>dēsiderā're</b> , <i>to long for</i>
<b>dō</b> , <sup>3</sup> <i>I give</i>	<b>da're</b> , <i>to give</i>
* <b>ha'beō</b> , <i>I have</i>	<b>habē're</b> , <i>to have</i>
<b>ha'bitō</b> , <i>I live, I dwell</i>	<b>habitā're</b> , <i>to live, to dwell</i>
* <b>iu'beō</b> , <i>I order</i>	<b>iubē're</b> , <i>to order</i>
<b>labō'rō</b> , <i>I labor</i>	<b>labōrā're</b> , <i>to labor</i>
<b>lau'dō</b> , <i>I praise</i>	<b>laudā're</b> , <i>to praise</i>
<b>mātū'rō</b> , <i>I hasten</i>	<b>mātūrā're</b> , <i>to hasten</i>
* <b>mo'veō</b> , <i>I move</i>	<b>movē're</b> , <i>to move</i>
<b>nār'rō</b> , <i>I tell</i>	<b>nārrā're</b> , <i>to tell</i>
<b>ne'cō</b> , <i>I kill</i>	<b>necā're</b> , <i>to kill</i>
<b>nūn'tiō</b> , <i>I announce</i>	<b>nūntiā're</b> , <i>to announce</i>
<b>pa'rō</b> , <i>I prepare</i>	<b>parā're</b> , <i>to prepare</i>
<b>por'tō</b> , <i>I carry</i>	<b>portā're</b> , <i>to carry</i>
<b>pro'perō</b> , <i>I hasten</i>	<b>properā're</b> , <i>to hasten</i>
<b>pug'nō</b> , <i>I fight</i>	<b>pugnā're</b> , <i>to fight</i>
* <b>vi'deō</b> , <i>I see</i>	<b>vidē're</b> , <i>to see</i>

3. Observe that in **dō**, **dāre**, the **a** is *short*, and that the present stem is **dā-** and not **dā-**. The only forms of **dō** that have a long are **dās** (pres. indic.), **dā** (pres. imv.), and **dāns** (pres. part.).

**130. The Translation of the Present.** In English there are three ways of expressing present action. We may say, for example, *I live, I am living, or I do live*. In Latin the one expression **habitō** covers all three of these expressions.

### 131. EXERCISES

Give the *voice, mood, tense, person, and number* of each form.

I. 1. Vocāmus, properātis, iubent. 2. Movētis, laudās, vidēs. 3. Dēlētis, habētis, dant. 4. Mātūrās, dēsīderat, vidēmus. 5. Iubet, movent, necat. 6. Nārrāmus, movēs, vident. 7. Labōrātis, properant, portās, parant. 8. Dēlet, habētis, iubēmus, dās.

N.B. Observe that the personal ending is of prime importance in translating a Latin verb form. Give that your first attention.

II. 1. We plow, we are plowing, we do plow. 2. They care for, they are caring for, they do care for. 3. You give, you are having, you do have (*sing.*). 4. We destroy, I do long for, they are living. 5. He calls, they see, we are telling. 6. We do fight, we order, he is moving, he prepares. 7. They are laboring, we kill, you announce.

## LESSON XX

### IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF AMŌ AND MONEŌ

**132. Tense Signs.** Instead of using auxiliary verbs to express differences in tense, like *was, shall, will, etc.*, Latin adds to the verb stem certain elements that have the force of auxiliary verbs. These are called *tense signs*.

**133. Formation and Inflection of the Imperfect.** The tense sign of the imperfect is **-bā-**, which is added to the present stem. The imperfect consists, therefore, of three parts:

PRESENT STEM	TENSE SIGN	PERSONAL ENDING
<b>amā-</b>	<b>ba-</b>	<b>m</b>
<i>loving</i>	<i>was</i>	<i>I</i>

The inflection is as follows:

CONJUGATION I	CONJUGATION II	PERSONAL ENDINGS
SINGULAR		
1. amā'bam, I was loving	monē'bam, I was advising	<b>-m</b>
2. amā'bās, you were loving	monē'bās, you were advising	<b>-s</b>
3. amā'bat, he was loving	monē'bat, he was advising	<b>-t</b>
PLURAL		
1. amābā'mus, we were loving	monēbā'mus, we were advising	<b>-mus</b>
2. amābā'tis, you were loving	monēbā'tis, you were advising	<b>-tis</b>
3. amā'bant, they were loving	monē'bant, they were advising	<b>-nt</b>

a. Note that the **ā** of the tense sign **-bā-** is shortened before **-nt**, and before **m** and **t** when final. (Cf. § 12. 2.)

In a similar manner inflect the verbs given in § 129.

**134. Meaning of the Imperfect.** The Latin imperfect describes an act as *going on or progressing in past time*, like the English past-progressive tense (as, *I was walking*). It is the regular tense used to describe a past situation or condition of affairs.

### 135. EXERCISES

I. 1. Vidēbāmus, dēsīderābat, mātūrābās. 2. Dabant, vocābātis, dēlēbāmus. 3. Pugnant, laudābās, movēbātis. 4. Iubēbant, properābātis, portābāmus. 5. Dabās, nārrābant, labōrābātis. 6. Vidēbant, movēbās, nūntiābāmus. 7. Necābat, movēbam, habēbat, parābātis.

II. 1. You were having (*sing. and plur.*), we were killing, they were laboring. 2. He was moving, we were ordering, we were fighting. 3. We were telling, they were seeing, he was calling. 4. They were living, I was longing for, we were destroying. 5. You were giving, you were moving, you were announcing, (*sing. and plur.*). 6. They were caring for, he was plowing, we were praising.

### 136. NÍ' OBE AND HER CHILDREN

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 287.

Niobē, rēgina Thēbānōrum, erat pulchra fēmina sed superba. Erat superba nōn solum fōrmā<sup>1</sup> suā marītique potentiā<sup>1</sup> sed etiam magnō liberōrum numerō.<sup>1</sup> Nam habēbat<sup>2</sup> septem filiōs et septem filiās. Sed ea superbia erat rēgīnae<sup>3</sup> causa magnae trīstītiaē et liberīs<sup>3</sup> causa dūrae poenae.

NOTE. The words **Niobē**, **Thēbānōrum**, and **maritī** will be found in the general vocabulary. Translate the selection without looking up any other words.

1. Ablative of cause.
2. Translate *had*; it denotes a past situation. (See § 134.)
3. Dative, cf. § 43.

## LESSON XXI

### FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF *AMŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

**137.** The tense sign of the Future Indicative in the first and second conjugations is **-bi-**. This is joined to the present stem of the verb and followed by the personal ending, as follows:

PRESENT STEM	TENSE SIGN	PERSONAL ENDING
<b>amā-</b>	<b>bi-</b>	<b>s</b>
<i>love</i>	<i>will</i>	<i>you</i>

**138.** The Future Active Indicative is inflected as follows.

CONJUGATION I	CONJUGATION II
SINGULAR	
1. amā' <b>bō</b> , <i>I shall love</i>	monē' <b>bō</b> , <i>I shall advise</i>
2. amā' <b>bis</b> , <i>you will love</i>	monē' <b>bis</b> , <i>you will advise</i>
3. amā' <b>bit</b> , <i>he will love</i>	monē' <b>bit</b> , <i>he will advise</i>
PLURAL	
1. amā' <b>bimus</b> , <i>we shall love</i>	monē' <b>bimus</b> , <i>we shall advise</i>
2. amā' <b>bitis</b> , <i>you will love</i>	monē' <b>bitis</b> , <i>you will advise</i>
3. amā' <b>bunt</b> , <i>they will love</i>	monē' <b>bunt</b> , <i>they will advise</i>

a. The personal endings are as in the present. The ending **-bō** in the first person singular is contracted from **-bi-ō**. The **-bi-** appears as **-bu-** in the third person plural. Note that the inflection is like that of **erō**, the future of **sum**. *Pay especial attention to the accent.*

In a similar manner inflect the verbs given in § 129.

### 139. EXERCISES

I. 1. Movēbitis, laudābis, arābō. 2. Dēlēbitis, vocābitis, dabunt. 3. Mātūrābis, dēsiderābit, vidēbimus. 4. Habēbit, movēbunt, necābit. 5. Nārrābimus, monēbis, vidēbunt. 6. Labōrābitis, cūrābunt, dabis. 7. Habitābimus, properābitis, iubēbunt, parābit. 8. Nūntiābō, portābimus, iubēbō.

II. 1. We shall announce, we shall see, I shall hasten. 2. I shall carry, he will plow, they will care for. 3. You will announce, you will move, you will give, (*sing. and plur.*). 4. We shall fight, we shall destroy, I shall long for. 5. He will call, they will see, you will tell (*plur.*). 6. They will dwell, we shall order, he will praise. 7. They will labor, we shall kill, you will have (*sing. and plur.*), he will destroy.

### 140. NIOBE AND HER CHILDREN (*Concluded*)

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 288.

Apollō et Diāna erant liberī Lātōnae. Iīs Thēbānī sacra crēbra parābant. <sup>1</sup> Oppidānī amābant Lātōnam et liberōs eius. Id superbae rēgīnae erat molestum. "Cūr," inquit, "Lātōnae et liberīs sacra parātis? Duōs liberōs habet Lātōna; quattuordecim habeō ego. Ubi sunt mea sacra?" Lātōna iīs verbīs <sup>2</sup> irāta liberōs suōs vocat. Ad eam volant Apollō Diānaque et sagittīs <sup>3</sup> suīs miserōs liberōs rēgīnae superbae dēlent. Niobē, nūper laeta, nunc misera, sedet apud liberōs interfectōs et cum perpetuīs lacrimīs <sup>4</sup> eōs dēsiderat.

NOTE. Consult the general vocabulary for **Apollō**, **inquit**, **duōs**, and **quattuordecim**. Try to remember the meaning of all the other words.

1. Observe the force of the imperfect here, *used to prepare, were in the habit of preparing*; so **amābant** denotes a past situation of affairs. (See § 134.)
2. Ablative of cause.
3. Ablative of means.
4. This may be either manner or accompaniment. It is often impossible to draw a sharp line between means, manner, and accompaniment. The Romans themselves drew no sharp distinction. It was enough for them if the general idea demanded the ablative case.

## LESSON XXII

### REVIEW OF VERBS · THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES



141. Review the present, imperfect, and future active indicative, both orally and in writing, of **sum** and the verbs in § 129.

142. We learned in § 43 for what sort of expressions we may expect the dative, and in § 44 that one of its commonest uses is with *verbs* to express the indirect object. It is also very common with *adjectives* to express the object toward which the quality denoted by the adjective is directed. We have already had a number of cases where **grātus**, *agreeable to*, was so followed by a dative; and in the last lesson we had **molestus**, *annoying to*, followed by that case. The usage may be more explicitly stated by the following rule:

143. **RULE. Dative with Adjectives.** *The dative is used with adjectives to denote the object toward which the given quality is directed. Such are, especially, those meaning near, also fit, friendly, pleasing, like, and their opposites.*

144. Among such adjectives memorize the following:

**idōneus, -a, -um**, *fit, suitable* (for)  
**amicus, -a, -um**, *friendly* (to)  
**inimicus, -a, -um**, *hostile* (to)  
**grātus, -a, -um**, *pleasing* (to), *agreeable* (to)  
**molestus, -a, -um**, *annoying* (to), *troublesome* (to)  
**finitimus, -a, -um**, *neighboring* (to)  
**proximus, -a, -um**, *nearest, next* (to)

#### 145. EXERCISES

I. 1. Rōmānī terram idōneam agrī cultūrae habent. 2. Gallī cōpiīs Rōmānīs inimīcī erant. 3. Cui dea Lātōna amīca non erat? 4. Dea Lātōna superbae rēgīnae amīca nōn erat. 5. Cibus noster, Mārce, erit armātīs virīs grātus. 6. Quid erat molestum populīs Italiae? 7. Bella longa cum Gallīs erant molesta populīs Italiae. 8. Agrī Germānōrum fluvīō Rhēnō finitimī erant. 9. Rōmānī ad silvam oppidō proximam castra movēbant. 10. Nōn solum fōrma sed etiam superbia rēgīnae erat magna. 11. Mox rēgīna pulchra erit aegra trīstitiā. 12. Cūr erat Niobē, rēgīna Thēbānōrum, laeta? Laeta erat Niobē multīs filiīs et filiābus.

II. 1. The sacrifices of the people will be annoying to the haughty queen. 2. The sacrifices were pleasing not only to Latona but also to Diana. 3. Diana will destroy those hostile to Latona. 4. The punishment of the haughty queen was pleasing to the goddess Diana. 5. The Romans will move their forces to a large field<sup>1</sup> suitable for a camp. 6. Some of the allies were friendly to the Romans, others to the Gauls.

1. Why not the dative?

#### 146. CORNELIA AND HER JEWELS

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 288.

Apud antiqūas dominās, Cornēlia, Āfricānī filia, erat<sup>2</sup> maximē clāra. Filiī eius erant Tiberius Gracchus et Gāius Gracchus. Iī puerī cum Cornēliā in oppidō Rōmā, clārō Italiae oppidō, habitābant. Ibi eōs cūrābat Cornēlia et ibi magnō cum studiō eōs docēbat. Bona fēmina erat Cornēlia et bonam disciplinam maximē amābat.

NOTE. Can you translate the paragraph above? There are no new words.

2. Observe that all the imperfects denote continued or progressive action, or describe a state of affairs. (Cf. § 134.)

### LESSON XXIII

#### PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF *REGŌ* AND *AUDIŌ*

147. As we learned in § 126, the present stem of the third conjugation ends in **-ĕ**, and of the fourth in **-ī**. The inflection of the Present Indicative is as follows:

CONJUGATION III	CONJUGATION IV
re'gō, re'gere (rule)	au'diō, audi're (hear)
PRES. STEM <b>regĕ-</b>	PRES. STEM <b>audi-</b>
SINGULAR	
1. re'gō, I rule	au'diō, I hear
2. re'gis, you rule	au'dīs, you hear
3. re'git, he (she, it) rules	au'dit, he (she, it) hears
PLURAL	
1. re'gimus, we rule	audi'mus, we hear
2. re'gitis, you rule	audi'tis, you hear
3. re'gunt, they rule	audi'unt, they hear

1. The personal endings are the same as before.

2. The final short **-e-** of the stem **regĕ-** combines with the **-ō** in the first person, becomes **-u-** in the third person plural, and becomes **-ī-** elsewhere. The inflection is like that of **erō**, the future of

sum.

3. In **audiō** the personal endings are added regularly to the stem **audi-**. In the third person plural **-u-** is inserted between the stem and the personal ending, as **audi-u-nt**. Note that the long vowel of the stem is shortened before final **-t** just as in **amō** and **moneō**. (Cf. § 12. 2.)

Note that **-i-** is always short in the third conjugation and long in the fourth, excepting where long vowels are regularly shortened. (Cf. § 12. 1, 2.)

148. Like **regō** and **audiō** inflect the present active indicative of the following verbs:

INDICATIVE PRESENT	INFINITIVE PRESENT
<b>agō</b> , <i>I drive</i>	<b>agere</b> , <i>to drive</i>
<b>dīcō</b> , <i>I say</i>	<b>dīcere</b> , <i>to say</i>
<b>dūcō</b> , <i>I lead</i>	<b>dūcere</b> , <i>to lead</i>
<b>mittō</b> , <i>I send</i>	<b>mittere</b> , <i>to send</i>
<b>mūniō</b> , <i>I fortify</i>	<b>mūnīre</b> , <i>to fortify</i>
<b>reperiō</b> , <i>I find</i>	<b>reperīre</b> , <i>to find</i>
<b>veniō</b> , <i>I come</i>	<b>venīre</b> , <i>to come</i>

#### 149. EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis agit? Cūr venit? Quem mittit? Quem dūcis? 2. Quid mittunt? Ad quem veniunt? Cuius castra mūniunt? 3. Quem agunt? Venīmus. Quid puer reperit? 4. Quem mittimus? Cuius equum dūcitis? Quid dīcunt? 5. Mūnīmus, venītis, dīcit. 6. Agimus, reperītis, mūnīs. 7. Reperis, ducitis, dīcis. 8. Agitis, audimus, regimus.

II. 1. What do they find? Whom do they hear? Why does he come? 2. Whose camp are we fortifying? To whom does he say? What are we saying? 3. I am driving, you are leading, they are hearing. 4. You send, he says, you fortify (*sing. and plur.*). 5. I am coming, we find, they send. 6. They lead, you drive, he does fortify. 7. You lead, you find, you rule, (*all plur.*).

#### 150. CORNELIA AND HER JEWELS (*Concluded*)

Proximum domicīliō Cornēliae erat pulchrae Campānae domicilium. Campāna erat superba nōn solum fōrmā suā sed maximē ōrnāmentis suis. Ea<sup>1</sup> laudābat semper. "Habēsne tū ūlla ōrnāmenta, Cornēlia?" inquit. "Ubi sunt tua ōrnāmenta?" Deinde Cornēlia filiōs suos Tiberium et Gāium vocat. "Puerī mei," inquit, "sunt mea ōrnāmenta. Nam bonī liberī sunt semper bonae fēminae ōrnāmenta maximē clāra."

NOTE. The only new words here are **Campāna**, **semper**, and **tū**.

1. **Ea**, accusative plural neuter.



"PUERI MEI SUNT MEA ORNAMENTA"

#### LESSON XXIV

#### IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF **REGŌ** AND **AUDIŌ** · THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL INTRANSITIVE VERBS

#### 151. PARADIGMS

CONJUGATION III	SINGULAR	CONJUGATION IV
1. regḗ <b>bam</b> , <i>I was ruling</i>		audiḗ <b>bam</b> , <i>I was hearing</i>
2. regḗ <b>bās</b> , <i>you were riding</i>		audiḗ <b>bās</b> , <i>you were hearing</i>
3. regḗ <b>bat</b> , <i>he was ruling</i>		audiḗ <b>bat</b> , <i>he was hearing</i>

PLURAL

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. regēbā́ <b>mus</b> , <i>we were ruling</i>  | audiēbā́ <b>mus</b> , <i>we were hearing</i>  |
| 2. regēbā́ <b>tis</b> , <i>you were ruling</i> | audiēbā́ <b>tis</b> , <i>you were hearing</i> |
| 3. regḗ <b>bant</b> , <i>they were ruling</i> | audiḗ <b>bant</b> , <i>they were hearing</i> |

- The tense sign is **-bā-**, as in the first two conjugations.
- Observe that the final **-ē-** of the stem is lengthened before the tense sign **-bā-**. This makes the imperfect of the third conjugation just like the imperfect of the second (cf. **monēbam** and **regēbam**).
- In the fourth conjugation **-ē-** is inserted between the stem and the tense sign **-bā-** (**audi-ē-ba-m**).
- In a similar manner inflect the verbs given in § 148.

**152. EXERCISES**

I. 1. Agēbat, veniēbat, mittēbat, dūcēbant. 2. Agēbant, mittēbant, dūcēbas, mūniēbant. 3. Mittēbāmus, dūcēbātis, dīcēbant. 4. Mūniēbāmus, veniēbātis, dīcēbās. 5. Mittēbās, veniēbāmus, reperiēbat. 6. Reperiēbās, veniēbās, audiēbātis. 7. Agēbāmus, reperiēbātis, mūniēbat. 8. Agēbātis, dīcēbam, mūniēbam.

II. 1. They were leading, you were driving (*sing. and plur.*), he was fortifying. 2. They were sending, we were finding, I was coming. 3. You were sending, you were fortifying, (*sing. and plur.*), he was saying. 4. They were hearing, you were leading (*sing. and plur.*), I was driving. 5. We were saying, he was sending, I was fortifying. 6. They were coming, he was hearing, I was finding. 7. You were ruling (*sing. and plur.*), we were coming, they were ruling.

**153. The Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs.** We learned above (§ 20. a) that a verb which does not admit of a direct object is called an *intransitive* verb. Many such verbs, however, are of such meaning that they can govern an indirect object, which will, of course, be in the dative case (§ 45). Learn the following list of intransitive verbs with their meanings. In each case the dative indirect object is the person or thing to which a benefit, injury, or feeling is directed. (Cf. § 43.)

- crēdō, crēdere**, *believe* (give belief to)  
**faveō, favēre**, *favor* (show favor to)  
**noceō, nocēre**, *injure* (do harm to)  
**pāreō, pārēre**, *obey* (give obedience to)  
**persuādeō, persuādēre**, *persuade* (offer persuasion to)  
**resistō, resistere**, *resist* (offer resistance to)  
**studeō, studēre**, *be eager for* (give attention to)

**154. RULE. Dative with Intransitive Verbs.** *The dative of the indirect object is used with the intransitive verbs crēdō, faveō, noceō, pāreō, persuādeō, resistō, studeō, and others of like meaning.*

**155. EXERCISE**

1. Crēdisne verbīs sociōrum? Multī verbīs eōrum nōn crēdunt. 2. Meī finitimī cōnsiliō tuō nōn favēbunt, quod bellō student. 3. Tiberius et Gāius disciplīnae dūrae nōn resistēbant et Cornēliae pārēbant. 4. Dea erat inimīca septem filiābus rēgīnae. 5. Dūra poena et perpetua trīstitia rēgīnae nōn persuādēbunt. 6. Nūper ea resistēbat et nunc resistit potentiae Lātōnae. 7. Mox sagittae volābunt et liberīs miserīs nocēbunt.

LESSON XXV

**FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF REGŌ AND AUDIŌ**

**156.** In the future tense of the third and fourth conjugations we meet with a new tense sign. Instead of using **-bi-**, as in the first and second conjugations, we use **-ā-**<sup>1</sup> in the first person singular and **-ē-** in the rest of the tense. In the third conjugation the final **-ē-** of the stem is dropped before this tense sign; in the fourth conjugation the final **-ī-** of the stem is retained.<sup>2</sup>

- The **-ā-** is shortened before **-m** final, and **-ē-** before **-t** final and before **-nt**. (Cf. § 12. 2.)
- The **-ī-** is, of course, shortened, being before another vowel. (Cf. § 12. 1.)

**157. PARADIGMS**

CONJUGATION III	CONJUGATION IV
SINGULAR	
1. re'gam, <i>I shall rule</i>	au'diam, <i>I shall hear</i>
2. re'gēs, <i>you will rule</i>	au'diēs, <i>you will hear</i>
3. re'get, <i>he will rule</i>	au'diet, <i>he will hear</i>
PLURAL	
1. regē'mus, <i>we shall rule</i>	audiē'mus, <i>we shall hear</i>
2. regē'tis, <i>you will rule</i>	audiē'tis, <i>you will hear</i>

1. Observe that the future of the third conjugation is like the present of the second, excepting in the first person singular.

2. In the same manner inflect the verbs given in § 148.

### 158. EXERCISES

I. 1. Dīcet, dūcētis, mūniēmus. 2. Dīcent, dīcētis, mittēmus. 3. Mūnient, venient, mittent, agent. 4. Dūcet, mittēs, veniet, aget. 5. Mūniet, reperiētis, agēmus. 6. Mittam, veniēmus, regent. 7. Audiētis, veniēs, reperiēs. 8. Reperiet, agam, dūcēmus, mittet. 9. Vidēbitis, sedēbō, vocābimus.

II. 1. I shall find, he will hear, they will come. 2. I shall fortify, he will send, we shall say. 3. I shall drive, you will lead, they will hear. 4. You will send, you will fortify, (*sing. and plur.*), he will say. 5. I shall come, we shall find, they will send.

6. Who<sup>3</sup> will believe the story? I<sup>4</sup> shall believe the story. 7. Whose friends do you favor? We favor our friends. 8. Who will resist our weapons? Sextus will resist your weapons. 9. Who will persuade him? They will persuade him. 10. Why were you injuring my horse? I was not injuring your horse. 11. Whom does a good slave obey? A good slave obeys his master. 12. Our men were eager for another battle.

3. Remember that **quis**, *who*, is singular in number.

4. Express by **ego**, because it is emphatic.

## LESSON XXVI

### VERBS IN -IŌ OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION · THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

**159.** There are a few common verbs ending in **-iō** which do not belong to the fourth conjugation, as you might infer, but to the third. The fact that they belong to the third conjugation is shown by the ending of the infinitive. (Cf. § 126.) Compare

**audiō, audīre** (*hear*), fourth conjugation

**capiō, capere** (*take*), third conjugation

**160.** The present, imperfect, and future active indicative of **capiō** are inflected as follows:

#### **capiō, capere, take**

##### PRES. STEM **cape-**

PRESENT	IMPERFECT SINGULAR	FUTURE
1. ca'piō	capiē'bam	ca'pīam
2. ca'pis	capiē'bās	ca'piēs
3. ca'pit	capiē'bat	ca'piet
PLURAL		
1. ca'pīmus	capiēbā'mus	capiē'mus
2. ca'pītis	capiēbā'tis	capiē'tis
3. ca'piunt	capiē'bant	ca'pient

1. Observe that **capiō** and the other **-iō** verbs follow the fourth conjugation wherever in the fourth conjugation *two vowels occur in succession*. (Cf. **capiō, audīō; capiunt, audiunt**; and all the imperfect and future.) All other forms are like the third conjugation. (Cf. **capis, regis; capit, regit**; etc.)

2. Like **capiō**, inflect

**faciō, facere, make, do**

**fugiō, fugere, flee**

**iaciō, iacere, hurl**

**rapiō, rapere, seize**

**161. The Imperative Mood.** The imperative mood expresses a command; as, *come! send!* The present tense of the imperative is used only in the second person, singular and plural. *The singular in the active voice is regularly the same in form as the present stem. The plural is formed by adding -te to the singular.*

CONJUGATION	SINGULAR	PLURAL
I.	<b>amā, love thou</b>	<b>amā'te, love ye</b>
II.	<b>monē, advise thou</b>	<b>monē'te, advise ye</b>
III. (a)	<b>rege, rule thou</b>	<b>re'gite, rule ye</b>
(b)	<b>cape, take thou</b>	<b>ca'pīte, take ye</b>
IV.	<b>audī, hear thou</b>	<b>audī'te, hear ye</b>
<b>sum (irregular)</b>	<b>es, be thou</b>	<b>este, be ye</b>

1. In the third conjugation the final -ĕ- of the stem becomes -ĭ- in the plural.
2. The verbs **dicō**, *say*; **dūcō**, *lead*; and **faciō**, *make*, have the irregular forms **dīc**, **dūc**, and **fac** in the singular.
3. Give the present active imperative, singular and plural, of **veniō**, **dūcō**, **vocō**, **doceō**, **laudō**, **dīcō**, **sedeō**, **agō**, **faciō**, **mūniō**, **mittō**, **rapiō**.

### 162. EXERCISES

I. 1. Fugient, faciunt, iaciēbat. 2. Dēlē, nūntiāte, fugiunt. 3. Venīte, dīc, faciētis. 4. Dūcite, iaciam, fugiēbant. 5. Fac, iaciēbāmus, fugimus, rapite. 6. Sedēte, reperī, docēte. 7. Fugiēmus, iacient, rapiēs. 8. Reperient, rapiēbātis, nocent. 9. Favēte, resistē, pārēbitis.

10. Volā ad multās terrās et dā auxilium. 11. Ego tēla mea capiam et multās ferās dēlēbō. 12. Quis fābulae tuae crēdet? 13. Este bonī, puerī, et audīte verba grāta magistrī.

II. 1. The goddess will seize her arms and will hurl her weapons. 2. With her weapons she will destroy many beasts. 3. She will give aid to the weak.<sup>1</sup> 4. She will fly to many lands and the beasts will flee. 5. Romans, tell<sup>2</sup> the famous story to your children.

1. Plural. An adjective used as a noun. (Cf. § 99. II. 3.)
2. Imperative. The imperative generally stands first, as in English.

## Third Review, Lessons XVIII-XXVI, §§ 510-512

### LESSON XXVII

#### THE PASSIVE VOICE · PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF *AMŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

**163. The Voices.** Thus far the verb forms have been in the *active voice*; that is, they have represented the subject as *performing* an action; as,

The lion—→ *killed*—→ the hunter

A verb is said to be in the *passive voice* when it represents its subject as *receiving* an action; as,

The lion ←— *was killed* ←— by the hunter

Note the direction of the arrows.

**164. Passive Personal Endings.** In the passive voice we use a different set of personal endings. They are as follows:

SING.	1. <b>-r</b> , <i>I</i>		1. <b>-mur</b> , <i>we</i>
	2. <b>-ris</b> , <b>-re</b> , <i>you</i>	PLUR.	2. <b>-minī</b> , <i>you</i>
	3. <b>-tur</b> , <i>he, she, it</i>		3. <b>-ntur</b> , <i>they</i>

a. Observe that the letter **-r** appears somewhere in all but one of the endings. This is sometimes called the *passive sign*.

### 165. PARADIGMS

	<b>amō, amāre</b> PRES. STEM <b>amā-</b>	<b>monēo, monēre</b> PRES. STEM <b>monē-</b>	
	PRESENT INDICATIVE		PERSONAL ENDINGS
SING.	a' <b>mor</b> , <i>I am loved</i>	mo' <b>neor</b> , <i>I am advised</i>	<b>-or</b> <sup>1</sup>
	amā' <b>ris</b> or amā' <b>re</b> , <i>you are loved</i>	monē' <b>ris</b> or monē' <b>re</b> , <i>you are advised</i>	<b>-ris</b> or <b>-re</b>
	amā' <b>tur</b> , <i>he is loved</i>	monē' <b>tur</b> , <i>he is advised</i>	<b>-tur</b>
PLUR.	amā' <b>mur</b> , <i>we are loved</i>	monē' <b>mur</b> , <i>we are advised</i>	<b>-mur</b>
	amā' <b>minī</b> , <i>you are loved</i>	monē' <b>minī</b> , <i>you are advised</i>	<b>-minī</b>
	aman' <b>tur</b> , <i>they are loved</i>	monen' <b>tur</b> , <i>they are advised</i>	<b>-ntur</b>
	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE (TENSE SIGN <b>-bā-</b> )		
SING.	amā' <b>bar</b> , <i>I was being loved</i>	monē' <b>bar</b> , <i>I was being advised</i>	<b>-r</b>
	amābā' <b>ris</b> or amābā' <b>re</b> , <i>you were being loved</i>	monēbā' <b>ris</b> or monēbā' <b>re</b> , <i>you were being advised</i>	<b>-ris</b> or <b>-re</b>
	amābā' <b>tur</b> , <i>he was being loved</i>	monēbā' <b>tur</b> , <i>he was being advised</i>	<b>-tur</b>
PLUR.	amābā' <b>mur</b> , <i>we were being loved</i>	monēbā' <b>mur</b> , <i>we were being advised</i>	<b>-mur</b>
	amābā' <b>minī</b> , <i>you were being loved</i>	monēbā' <b>minī</b> , <i>you were being advised</i>	<b>-minī</b>

FUTURE (TENSE SIGN **-bi-**)

SING.	amā'bor, I shall be loved	monē'bor, I shall be advised	-r
	amā'beris or amā'bere, you will be loved	monē'beris or monē'bere, you will be advised	-ris or -re
	amā'bitur, he will be loved	monē'bitur, he will be advised	-tur
PLUR.	amā'bimur, we shall be loved	monē'bimur, we shall be advised	-mur
	amābi'minī, you will be loved	monēbi'minī, you will be advised	-minī
	amābun'tur, they will be loved	monēbun'tur, they will be advised	-ntur

1. In the present the personal ending of the first person singular is **-or**.

1. The tense sign and the personal endings are added as in the active.

2. In the future the tense sign **-bi-** appears as **-bo-** in the first person, **-be-** in the second, singular number, and as **-bu-** in the third person plural.

3. Inflect **laudō, necō, portō, moveō, dēleō, iubeō**, in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive.

**166.** Intransitive verbs, such as **mātūrō, I hasten; habitō, I dwell**, do not have a passive voice with a personal subject.

**167. EXERCISES**

I. 1. Laudāris or laudāre, laudās, datur, dat. 2. Dabitur, dabit, vidēminī, vidētis. 3. Vocābat, vocābatur, dēlēbitis, dēlēbiminī. 4. Parābatur, parābat, cūrās, cūrāris or cūrāre. 5. Portābantur, portābant, vidēbimur, vidēbimus. 6. Iubēris or iubēre, iubēs, laudābāris or laudābāre, laudābās. 7. Movēberis or movēbere, movēbis, dabantur, dabant. 8. Dēlentur, dēlent, parābāmur, parābāmus.

II. 1. We prepare, we are prepared, I shall be called, I shall call, you were carrying, you were being carried. 2. I see, I am seen, it was being announced, he was announcing, they will order, they will be ordered. 3. You will be killed, you will kill, you move, you are moved, we are praising, we are being praised. 4. I am called, I call, you will have, you are cared for. 5. They are seen, they see, we were teaching, we were being taught, they will move, they will be moved.



PERSEUS ANDROMEDAM SERVAT

**168. PER'SEUS AND ANDROM'EDA**

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 288.

Perseus filius erat Iovis,<sup>2</sup> maximī<sup>3</sup> deōrum. Dē eō multās fabulās narrant poētae. Eī favent deī, eī magica arma et ālās dant. Eīs tēlis armātus et ālis frētus ad multās terrās volābat et mōnstra saeva dēlēbat et miserīs infirmisque auxilium dabat. Aethiopia est terra Āfricae. Eam terram Cēpheus<sup>5</sup> regēbat. Eī<sup>6</sup> Neptūnus, maximus aquārum deus, erat irātus et mittit<sup>7</sup> mōnstrum saevum ad Aethiopiam. Ibi mōnstrum nōn solum lātis pulchrisque Aethiopiae agrīs nocēbat sed etiam domicilia agricolārum dēlēbat, et multōs virōs, fēminās, liberōsque necābat. Populus ex agrīs fugiēbat et oppida mūrīs validīs mūniēbat. Tum Cēpheus magnā trīstitiā commōtus ad Iovis orāculum properat et ita dicit: "Amīcī meī necantur; agrī meī vāstantur. Audī verba mea, Iuppiter.

Dā miseris auxilium. Age monstrum saevum ex patriā.”

2. **Iovis**, the genitive of **Iuppiter**.

3. Used substantively, *the greatest*. So below, l. 4, **miseris** and **infirmis** are used substantively.

4. Pronounce in two syllables, *Ce´pheus*.

5. **Ei**, at *him*, dative with **iratus**.

6. The present is often used, as in English, in speaking of a past action, in order to make the story more vivid and exciting.

## LESSON XXVIII

### PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *REGŌ* AND *AUDIŌ*

**169.** Review the present, imperfect, and future indicative active of **regō** and **audiō**, and learn the passive of the same tenses (§§ 490, 491).

a. Observe that the tense signs of the imperfect and future are the same as in the active voice, and that the passive personal endings (§ 164) are added instead of the active ones.

b. Note the slight irregularity in the second person singular present of the third conjugation. There the final **-e-** of the stem is not changed to **-i-**, as it is in the active. We therefore have **re´geris** or **re´gere**, not **re´giris**, **re´gire**.

c. Inflect **agō**, **dicō**, **dūcō**, **mūniō**, **reperiō**, in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive.

### 170. EXERCISES

I. 1. Agēbat, agēbātur, mittēbat, mittēbātur, dūcēbat. 2. Agunt, aguntur, mittuntur, mittunt, mūniunt. 3. Mittor, mittar, mittam, dūcere, dūcere. 4. Dicēmur, dicimus, dicēmus, dicimur, mūniēbaminī. 5. Dūcitur, dūciminī, reperīmur, reperiar, agitur. 6. Agēbāmus, agēbāmur, reperīris, reperiēminī. 7. Mūnīminī, veniēbam, dūcēbar, dicētur. 8. Mittiminī, mittitis, mittēris, mitteris, agēbāminī. 9. Dicitur, dicit, mūniuntur, reperient, audientur.

II. 1. I was being driven, I was driving, we were leading, we were being led, he says, it is said. 2. I shall send, I shall be sent, you will find, you will be found, they lead, they are led. 3. I am found, we are led, they are driven, you were being led (*sing. and plur.*). 4. We shall drive, we shall be driven, he leads, he is being led, they will come, they will be fortified. 5. They were ruling, they were being ruled, you will send, you will be sent, you are sent, (*sing. and plur.*). 6. He was being led, he will come, you are said (*sing. and plur.*).

### 171. PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA (*Continued*)

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 288.

Tum ōrāculum ita respondet: “Mala est fortūna tua. Neptūnus, magnus aquārum deus, terrae Aethiopiae inimicus, eās poenās mittit. Sed parā irātō deō sacrum idōneum et mōnstrum saevum ex patriā tuā agētur. Andromeda filia tua est mōnstrō grāta. Dā eam mōnstrō. Servā cāram patriam et vītā populī tuī.” Andromeda autem erat puella pulchra. Eam amābat Cēpheus maximē.

## LESSON XXIX

### PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *-IŌ* VERBS · PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE AND IMPERATIVE

**172.** Review the active voice of **capiō**, present, imperfect, and future, and learn the passive of the same tenses (§ 492).

a. The present forms **capior** and **capiuntur** are like **audior**, **audiuntur**, and the rest of the tense is like **regor**.

b. In like manner inflect the passive of **iaciō** and **rapiō**.

**173. The Infinitive.** The infinitive mood gives the general meaning of the verb without person or number; as, **amāre**, *to love*. Infinitive means *unlimited*. The forms of the other moods, being limited by person and number, are called the *finite*, or limited, verb forms.

**174.** The forms of the Present Infinitive, active and passive, are as follows:

CONJ.	PRES. STEM	PRES. INFINITIVE ACTIVE	PRES. INFINITIVE PASSIVE
I.	<b>amā-</b>	amā´re, <i>to love</i>	amā´rī, <i>to be loved</i>
II.	<b>monē-</b>	monē´re, <i>to advise</i>	monē´rī, <i>to be advised</i>
III.	<b>rege-</b> <b>cape-</b>	re´gere, <i>to rule</i> ca´pere, <i>to take</i>	re´gī, <i>to be ruled</i> ca´pī, <i>to be taken</i>
IV.	<b>audī-</b>	audī´re, <i>to hear</i>	audī´rī, <i>to be heard</i>

1. Observe that to form the present active infinitive we add **-re** to the present stem.

a. The present infinitive of **sum** is **esse**. There is no passive.

2. Observe that the present passive infinitive is formed from the active by changing final **-e** to **-ī**, except in the third conjugation, which changes final **-ere** to **-ī**.

3. Give the active and passive present infinitives of **doceō, sedeō, volō, cūrō, mittō, dūcō, mūniō, reperiō, iaciō, rapiō**.

175. The forms of the Present Imperative, active and passive, are as follows:

CONJ.	ACTIVE <sup>1</sup>		PASSIVE	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
I.	a'mā	amā'te	amā're, <i>be thou loved</i>	amā'minī, <i>be ye loved</i>
II.	mo'nē	monē'te	monē're, <i>be thou advised</i>	monē'minī, <i>be ye advised</i>
III.	re'ge	re'gite	re'gere, <i>be thou ruled</i>	regi'minī, <i>be ye ruled</i>
	ca'pe	ca'pite	ca'pere, <i>be thou taken</i>	capi'minī, <i>be ye taken</i>
IV.	au'dī	audī'te	audī're, <i>be thou heard</i>	audī'minī, <i>be ye heard</i>

1. Observe that the second person singular of the present passive imperative is like the present active infinitive, and that both singular and plural are like the second person singular<sup>2</sup> and plural, respectively, of the present passive indicative.

2. Give the present imperative, both active and passive, of the verbs in § 174. 3.

1. For the sake of comparison the active is repeated from § 161.

2. That is, using the personal ending **-re**. A form like **amāre** may be either *indicative, infinitive, or imperative*.

### 176. EXERCISES

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 289.

I. 1. Tum Perseus ālis ad terrās multās volabit. 2. Mōnstrum saevum per aquās properat et mox agrōs nostrōs vāstābit. 3. Sī autem Cēpheus ad ōrāculum properābit, ōrāculum ita respondēbit. 4. Quis tēlis Perseī superābitur? Multa mōnstra tēlis eius superābuntur. 5. Cum cūrīs magnīs et lacrimīs multīs agricolae ex domiciliīs cārīs aguntur. 6. Multa loca vāstābantur et multa oppida dēlēbantur. 7. Mōnstrum est validum, tamen superābitur. 8. Crēdesne semper verbis ōrāculi? Ego iīs non semper crēdam. 9. Pārēbitne Cēpheus ōrāculō? Verba ōrāculi eī persuādēbunt. 10. Si nōn fugiēmus, oppidum capiētur et oppidānī necābuntur. 11. Vocāte puerōs et nārrāte fābulam clāram dē mōnstrō saevō.

II. 1. Fly thou, to be cared for, be ye sent, lead thou. 2. To lead, to be led, be ye seized, fortify thou. 3. To be hurled, to fly, send thou, to be found. 4. To be sent, be ye led, to hurl, to be taken. 5. Find thou, hear ye, be ye ruled, to be fortified.

## LESSON XXX

### SYNOPSIS IN THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS · THE ABLATIVE DENOTING FROM

177. You should learn to give rapidly synopses of the verbs you have had, as follows:<sup>1</sup>

	CONJUGATION I		CONJUGATION II	
	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	a'mō	a'mor	mo'neō	mo'neor
<i>Imperf.</i>	amā'bam	amā'bar	monē'bam	monē'bar
<i>Fut.</i>	amā'bo	amā'bor	monē'bo	monē'bor
	IMPERATIVE			
<i>Pres.</i>	a'mā	amā're	mo'nē	monē're
	INFINITIVE			
<i>Pres.</i>	amā're	amā'rī	monē're	monē'rī
	CONJUGATION III		CONJUGATION III (-iō verbs)	
	INDICATIVE			
	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	re'gō	re'gor	ca'piō	ca'pior
<i>Imperf.</i>	regē'bam	regē'bar	capiē'bam	capiē'bar
<i>Fut.</i>	re'gam	re'gar	ca'piam	ca'piar
	IMPERATIVE			
<i>Pres.</i>	re'ge	re'gere	ca'pe	ca'pere
	INFINITIVE			



CONJUGATION IV

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

Pres.	au'diō	au'dior
Imperf.	audiē'bam	audiē'bar
Fut.	au'diam	au'diar

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	au'dī	audi're
-------	-------	---------

INFINITIVE

Pres.	audi're	audi'rī
-------	---------	---------

1. Synopses should be given not only in the first person, but in other persons as well, particularly in the third singular and plural.

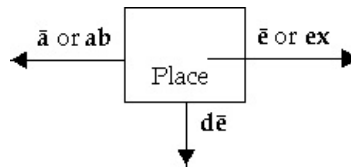
1. Give the synopsis of **rapiō, mūniō, reperiō, doceō, videō, dicō, agō, laudō, portō**, and vary the person and number.

**178.** We learned in § 50 that one of the three relations covered by the ablative case is expressed in English by the preposition *from*. This is sometimes called the *separative ablative*, and it has a number of special uses. You have already grown familiar with the first mentioned below.

**179. RULE. Ablative of the Place From.** *The place from which is expressed by the ablative with the prepositions ā or ab, dē, ē or ex.*

**Agricolae ex agrīs veniunt, the farmers come from the fields**

a. **ā** or **ab** denotes *from near* a place; **ē** or **ex**, *out from* it; and **dē**, *down from* it. This may be represented graphically as follows:



**180. RULE. Ablative of Separation.** *Words expressing separation or deprivation require an ablative to complete their meaning.*

a. If the separation is *actual* and *literal* of one material thing from another, the preposition **ā** or **ab**, **ē** or **ex**, or **dē** is generally used. If no actual motion takes place of one thing from another, no preposition is necessary.

(a) **Perseus terram ā mōnstrīs liberat**

*Perseus frees the land from monsters* (literal separation— actual motion is expressed)

(b) **Perseus terram trīstitiā liberat**

*Perseus frees the land from sorrow* (figurative separation— no actual motion is expressed)

**181. RULE. Ablative of the Personal Agent.** *The word expressing the person from whom an action starts, when not the subject, is put in the ablative with the preposition ā or ab.*

a. In this construction the English translation of **ā, ab** is *by* rather than *from*. This ablative is regularly used with passive verbs to indicate the *person by whom* the act was performed.

**Mōnstrum ā Perseō necātur, the monster is being slain by** (lit. *from*) *Perseus*

b. Note that the active form of the above sentence would be **Perseus monstrum necat**, *Perseus is slaying the monster*. In the passive the *object* of the active verb becomes the *subject*, and the *subject* of the active verb becomes the *ablative of the personal agent*, with **ā** or **ab**.

c. Distinguish carefully between the ablative of means and the ablative of the personal agent. Both are often translated into English by the preposition *by*. (Cf. § 100. b.) *Means is a thing; the agent or actor is a person*. The ablative of means has no preposition. The ablative of the personal agent has **ā** or **ab**. Compare

**Fera sagittā necātur, the wild beast is killed by an arrow**

**Fera ā Diānā necātur, the wild beast is killed by Diana**

**Sagittā**, in the first sentence, is the ablative of means; **ā Diānā**, in the second, is the ablative of the personal agent.

**182. EXERCISES**

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 289.

1. Viri inopiā cibī dēfessī ab eō locō discēdent.
2. Germānī castrīs Rōmānīs adpropinquābant, tamen lēgātus cōpiās ā proeliō continēbat.
3. Multa Gallōrum oppida ab Rōmānīs capientur.
4. Tum Rōmānī tōtum populū eōrum oppidōrum gladiīs pīlisque interficiant.
5. Oppidānī

Rōmānīs resistent, sed defessī longō proeliō fugient. 6. Multī ex Galliā fugiēbant et in Germānōrum vicīs habitābant. 7. Miserī nautae vulnerantur ab inimicīs<sup>2</sup> saevīs et cibō egent. 8. Discēdite et date virīs frūmentum et cōpiam vīnī. 9. Cōpiae nostrae ā proeliō continēbantur ab Sextō lēgatō. 10. Id oppidum ab prōvinciā Rōmānā longē aberat.

II. 1. The weary sailors were approaching a place dear to the goddess Diana. 2. They were without food and without wine. 3. Then Galba and seven other men are sent to the ancient island by Sextus. 4. Already they are not far away from the land, and they see armed men on a high place. 5. They are kept from the land by the men with spears and arrows. 6. The men kept hurling their weapons down from the high place with great eagerness.

2. **inimicīs**, here used as a noun. See vocabulary.

## LESSON XXXI

### PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT OF *SUM*

**183. Principal Parts.** There are certain parts of the verb that are of so much consequence in tense formation that we call them the *principal parts*.

The principal parts of the Latin verb are the present, the past, and the past participle; as *go, went, gone; see, saw, seen*, etc.

The principal parts of the Latin verb are the *first person singular of the present indicative*, the *present infinitive*, the *first person singular of the perfect indicative*, and the *perfect passive participle*.

**184. Conjugation Stems.** From the principal parts we get three conjugation stems, from which are formed the entire conjugation. We have already learned about the **present stem**, which is found from the present infinitive (cf. § 126. a). The other two stems are the **perfect stem** and the **participial stem**.

**185. The Perfect Stem.** The perfect stem of the verb is formed in various ways, but may always be *found by dropping -ī from the first person singular of the perfect*, the third of the principal parts. From the perfect stem are formed the following tenses:

THE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE  
 THE PLUPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE (ENGLISH PAST PERFECT)  
 THE FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

All these tenses express completed action in present, past, or future time respectively.

**186. The Endings of the Perfect.** The perfect active indicative is inflected by adding the endings of the perfect to the perfect stem. These endings are different from those found in any other tense, and are as follows:

SING.	1. <b>-ī</b> , <i>I</i> 2. <b>-istī</b> , <i>you</i> 3. <b>-it</b> , <i>he, she, it</i>	PLUR.	1. <b>-imus</b> , <i>we</i> 2. <b>-istis</b> , <i>you</i> 3. <b>-ērunt</b> or <b>-ēre</b> , <i>they</i>
-------	---	-------	---

**187. Inflection of *sum* in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative:**

PRES. INDIC. PRIN. PARTS	<b>sum</b>	PRES. INFIN. <b>esse</b>	PERF. INDIC. <b>fuī</b>
PERFECT STEM <b>fu-</b>			
PERFECT			
SINGULAR		PLURAL	
fu'ī, <i>I have been, I was</i>		fu'imus, <i>we have been, we were</i>	
fuis'tī, <i>you have been, you were</i>		fuis'tis, <i>you have been, you were</i>	
fu'it, <i>he has been, he was</i>		fuērunt or fuē're, <i>they have been, they were</i>	
PLUPERFECT (TENSE SIGN <b>-erā-</b> )			
fu'eram, <i>I had been</i>		fuerā'mus, <i>we had been</i>	
fu'erās, <i>you had been</i>		fuerā'tis, <i>you had been</i>	
fu'erat, <i>he had been</i>		fu'erant, <i>they had been</i>	
FUTURE PERFECT (TENSE SIGN <b>-erā-</b> )			
fu'erō, <i>I shall have been</i>		fue'rimus, <i>we shall have been</i>	
fu'eris, <i>you will have been</i>		fue'ritis, <i>you will have been</i>	
fu'erit, <i>he will have been</i>		fu'erint, <i>they will have been</i>	

1. Note carefully the changing accent in the perfect.

2. Observe that the pluperfect may be formed by adding **eram**, the imperfect of **sum**, to the perfect stem. The tense sign is **-erā-**.

3. Observe that the future perfect may be formed by adding **erō**, the future of **sum**, to the perfect

stem. But the third person plural ends in **-erint**, not in **-erunt**. The tense sign is **-eri-**.

4. All active perfects, pluperfects, and future perfects are formed on the perfect stem and inflected in the same way.

### 188. DIALOGUE

#### THE BOYS TITUS, MARCUS, AND QUINTUS

First learn the **special vocabulary**, p. 289.

M. Ubi fuistis, Tite et Quīnte?

T. Ego in meō lūdō fuī et Quīntus in suō lūdō fuit. Bonī puerī fuimus. Fuitne Sextus in vicō hodiē?

M. Fuit. Nūper per agrōs proximōs fluviō properābat. Ibi is et Cornēlius habent nāvigium.

T. Nāvigium dīcis? Aliī<sup>1</sup> nārrā eam fābulam!

M. Vērō (*Yes, truly*), pulchrum et novum nāvigium!

Q. Cuius pecūniā<sup>2</sup> Sextus et Cornēlius id nāvigium parant? Quis iīs pecūniam dat?

M. Amīcī Cornēli multum habent aurum et puer pecūniā nōn eget.

T. Quō puerī nāvigābunt? Nāvigābuntne longē ā terrā?

M. Dubia sunt cōsilia eōrum. Sed hodiē, crēdō, sī ventus erit idōneus, ad maximam īnsulam nāvigābunt. Iam antea ibi fuērunt. Tum autem ventus erat perfidus et puerī magnō in periculō erant.

Q. Aqua ventō commōta est inimīca nautīs semper, et saepe perfidus ventus nāvigia rapit, agit, dēletque. Iī puerī, sī nōn fuerint maximē attentī, irātā aquā et validō ventō superābuntur et ita interficientur.

1. Dative case. (Cf. § 109.)

2. Ablative of means.

### 189. EXERCISE

1. Where had the boys been before? They had been in school. 2. Where had Sextus been? He had been in a field next to the river. 3. Who has been with Sextus to-day? Cornelius has been with him. 4. Who says so? Marcus. 5. If the wind has been suitable, the boys have been in the boat. 6. Soon we shall sail with the boys. 7. There<sup>3</sup> will be no danger, if we are (shall have been) careful.<sup>4</sup>

3. The expletive *there* is not expressed, but the verb will precede the subject, as in English.

4. This predicate adjective must be nominative plural to agree with *we*.

## LESSON XXXII

### THE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS

**190. Meanings of the Perfect.** The perfect tense has two distinct meanings. The first of these is equivalent to the English present perfect, or perfect with *have*, and denotes that the action of the verb is complete at the time of speaking; as, *I have finished my work*. As this denotes completed action at a definite time, it is called the **perfect definite**.

The perfect is also used to denote an action that happened *sometime in the past*; as, *I finished my work*. As no definite time is specified, this is called the **perfect indefinite**. It corresponds to the ordinary use of the English past tense.

a. Note carefully the difference between the following tenses:

*I was finishing* | *my work* (imperfect, § 134)  
*used to finish* |  
*I finished my work* (perfect indefinite)  
*I have finished my work* (perfect definite)

When telling a story the Latin uses the *perfect indefinite* to mark the different *forward steps* of the narrative, and the *imperfect* to *describe situations and circumstances* that attend these steps. If the following sentences were Latin, what tenses would be used?

"Last week I went to Boston. I was trying to find an old friend of mine, but he was out of the city. Yesterday I returned home."

**191. Inflection of the Perfect.** We learned in § 186 that any perfect is inflected by adding the endings of the perfect to the perfect stem. The inflection in the four regular conjugations is then as follows:

CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III	CONJ. IV	
<b>amāvī</b>	<b>monuī</b>	<b>rēxī</b>	<b>cēpī</b>	<b>audivī</b>
<i>I have loved</i>	<i>I have advised</i>	<i>I have ruled</i>	<i>I have taken</i>	<i>I have heard</i>
<i>I loved or did love</i>	<i>I advised or did advise</i>	<i>I ruled or did rule</i>	<i>I took or did take</i>	<i>I heard or did hear</i>

#### PERFECT STEMS

<b>amāv-</b>	<b>monu-</b>	<b>rēx-</b>	<b>cēp-</b>	<b>audiv-</b>
		SINGULAR		
1. amā'vī	mo'nuī	rē'xī	cē'pī	audī'vī
2. amāvis'tī	monuis'tī	rēxis'tī	cēpis'tī	audīvis'tī
3. amā'vit	mo'nuīt	rē'xit	cē'pit	audī'vit
		PLURAL		
1. amā'vimus	monu'imus	rē'ximus	cē'pimus	audī'vimus
2. amāvis'tis	monuis'tis	rēxis'tis	cēpis'tis	audīvis'tis
3. amāvē'runt or amāvē're	monuē'runt or monuē're	rēxē'runt or rēxē're	cēpē'runt or cēpē're	audīvē'runt or audīvē're

1. The first person of the perfect is always given as the third of the principal parts. From this we get the perfect stem. *This shows the absolute necessity of learning the principal parts thoroughly.*

2. Nearly all perfects of the first conjugation are formed by adding **-vī** to the present stem. Like **amāvī** inflect **parāvī, vocāvī, cūrāvī, laudāvī.**

3. Note carefully the changing accent in the perfect. Drill on it.

**192.** Learn the principal parts and inflect the perfects:

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	
<b>dō</b>	<b>dāre</b>	<b>dedī</b>	<i>give</i>
<b>dēleō</b>	<b>dēlere</b>	<b>dēlēvī</b>	<i>destroy</i>
<b>habeō</b>	<b>habēre</b>	<b>habuī</b>	<i>have</i>
<b>moveō</b>	<b>movēre</b>	<b>mōvī</b>	<i>move</i>
<b>pāreō</b>	<b>pārēre</b>	<b>pāruī</b>	<i>obey</i>
<b>prohibeō</b>	<b>prohibēre</b>	<b>prohibuī</b>	<i>restrain, keep from</i>
<b>videō</b>	<b>vidēre</b>	<b>vīdī</b>	<i>see</i>
<b>dīcō</b>	<b>dīcere</b>	<b>dīxī</b>	<i>say</i>
<b>discēdō</b>	<b>discēdere</b>	<b>discessī</b>	<i>depart</i>
<b>dūcō</b>	<b>dūcere</b>	<b>dūxī</b>	<i>lead</i>
<b>faciō</b>	<b>facere</b>	<b>fēcī</b>	<i>make, do</i>
<b>mittō</b>	<b>mittere</b>	<b>mīsī</b>	<i>send</i>
<b>mūniō</b>	<b>mūnīre</b>	<b>mūnīvī</b>	<i>fortify</i>
<b>veniō</b>	<b>venīre</b>	<b>vēnī</b>	<i>come</i>

**193.** PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA (*Continued*)

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 290.

Cēpheus, adversā fortunā maximē commōtus, discessit et multis cum lacrimis populō Aethiopiae verba orāculi nārrāvit. Fāta Andromedae, puellae pulchrae, ā tōtō populō dēplōrābantur, tamen nūllum erat auxilium. Deinde Cēpheus cum plēnō trīstītiaē animō cāram suam filiam ex oppidī portā ad aquam dūxit et braccia eius ad saxa dūra revīxit. Tum amīcī puellae miserae longē discessērunt et diū mōnstrum saevum exspectāvērunt.

Tum forte Perseus, ālis frētus, super Aethiopiam volābat. Vīdit populum, Andromedam, lacrimās, et, magnopere attonitus, ad terram dēscendit. Tum Cēpheus eī tōtās cūrās nārrāvit et ita dīxit: "Pārēbō verbis orāculī, et prō patriā filiam meam dabō; sed sī id mōnstrum interficiēs et Andromedam servābis, tibi (*to you*) eam dabō."

### LESSON XXXIII

#### PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE · PERFECT ACTIVE INFINITIVE

**194.**

	CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III	CONJ. IV
	<b>amō</b>	<b>moneō</b>	<b>regō</b>	<b>capiō</b>
	<b>audiō</b>			
PERFECT STEMS	<b>amāv-</b>	<b>monu-</b>	<b>rēx-</b>	<b>cēp-</b>
				<b>audiv-</b>
	PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE			
	TENSE SIGN <b>-erā-</b>			
	SINGULAR			
<i>I had loved</i>	<i>I had advised</i>	<i>I had ruled</i>	<i>I had taken</i>	<i>I had heard</i>
1. amā'veram	monu'eram	rē'xeram	cē'peram	audī'veram
2. amā'verās	monu'erās	rē'xerās	cē'perās	audī'verās

3. amā' <b>verat</b>	monu' <b>erat</b>	rē' <b>xerat</b>	cē' <b>perat</b>	audī' <b>verat</b>
		PLURAL		
1. amā <b>verā</b>	monu <b>erā</b>	rē <b>xerā</b>	cē <b>perā</b>	audī <b>verā</b>
' <b>mus</b>	' <b>mus</b>	' <b>mus</b>	' <b>mus</b>	' <b>mus</b>
2. amā <b>verā</b> ' <b>tis</b>	monu <b>erā</b> ' <b>tis</b>	rē <b>xerā</b> ' <b>tis</b>	cē <b>perā</b> ' <b>tis</b>	audī <b>verā</b> ' <b>tis</b>
3. amā' <b>verant</b>	monu' <b>erant</b>	rē' <b>xerant</b>	cē' <b>perant</b>	audī' <b>verant</b>

FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

TENSE SIGN **-eri-**  
SINGULAR

<i>I shall have loved</i>	<i>I shall have advised</i>	<i>I shall have ruled</i>	<i>I shall have taken</i>	<i>I shall have heard</i>
1. amā' <b>verō</b>	monu' <b>erō</b>	rē' <b>xerō</b>	cē' <b>perō</b>	audī' <b>verō</b>
2. amā' <b>veris</b>	monu' <b>eris</b>	rē' <b>xeris</b>	cē' <b>peris</b>	audī' <b>veris</b>
3. amā' <b>verit</b>	monu' <b>erit</b>	rē' <b>xerit</b>	cē' <b>perit</b>	audī' <b>verit</b>

PLURAL

1. amā <b>ve</b> ' <b>rimus</b>	monu <b>e</b> ' <b>rimus</b>	rē <b>x</b> ' <b>rimus</b>	cē <b>pe</b> ' <b>rimus</b>	audī <b>ve</b> ' <b>rimus</b>
2. amā <b>ve</b> ' <b>ritis</b>	monu <b>e</b> ' <b>ritis</b>	rē <b>x</b> ' <b>ritis</b>	cē <b>pe</b> ' <b>ritis</b>	audī <b>ve</b> ' <b>ritis</b>
3. amā' <b>verint</b>	monu' <b>erint</b>	rē' <b>xerint</b>	cē' <b>perint</b>	audī' <b>verint</b>

1. Observe that these are all inflected alike and the rules for formation given in § 187. 2-4 hold good here.

2. In like manner inflect the pluperfect and future perfect indicative active of **dō**, **portō**, **dēleō**, **moveō**, **habeō**, **dīcō**, **discēdō**, **faciō**, **veniō**, **mūniō**.

**195. The Perfect Active Infinitive.** The perfect active infinitive is formed by adding **-isse** to the perfect stem.

CONJ.	PERFECT STEM	PERFECT INFINITIVE
I.	<b>amāv-</b>	amā <b>vis</b> ' <b>se</b> , <i>to have loved</i>
II.	<b>monu-</b>	monu <b>is</b> ' <b>se</b> , <i>to have advised</i>
III. (a)	<b>rēx-</b>	rē <b>xis</b> ' <b>se</b> , <i>to have ruled</i>
(b)	<b>cēp-</b>	cē <b>pis</b> ' <b>se</b> , <i>to have taken</i>
IV.	<b>audīv-</b>	audī <b>vis</b> ' <b>se</b> , <i>to have heard</i>
<b>sum</b>	<b>fu-</b>	fui <b>s</b> ' <b>se</b> , <i>to have been</i>

1. In like manner give the perfect infinitive active of **dō**, **portō**, **dēleō**, **moveō**, **habeō**, **dīcō**, **discēdō**, **faciō**, **veniō**, **mūniō**.

**196. EXERCISES**

I. 1. Habuistī, mōvērunt, miserant. 2. Vīdit, dīxeris, dūxisse. 3. Mīsistis, pārūērunt, discesserāmus. 4. Mūnīvit, dederam, mīserō. 5. Habuerimus, dēlēvī, pārūit, fuisse. 6. Dederās, mūnīveritis, vēnerātis, mīsisse. 7. Vēnerās, fēcisse, dederātis, portāveris.

8. Quem verba ōrāculī mōverant? Populum verba ōrāculī mōverant. 9. Cui Cēpheus verba ōrāculī nārrāverit? Perseō Cēpheus verba ōrāculī nārrāverit. 10. Amīcī ab Andromedā discesserint. 11. Mōnstrum saevum domicilia multa dēlēverat. 12. Ubi mōnstrum vidistis? Id in aquā vīdimus. 13. Quid mōnstrum faciet? Mōnstrum Andromedam interficiet.

II. 1. They have obeyed, we have destroyed, I shall have had. 2. We shall have sent, I had come, they have fortified. 3. I had departed, he has obeyed, you have sent (*sing. and plur.*). 4. To have destroyed, to have seen, he will have given, they have carried. 5. He had destroyed, he has moved, you have had (*sing. and plur.*). 6. I have given, you had moved (*sing. and plur.*), we had said. 7. You will have made (*sing. and plur.*), they will have led, to have given.

8. Who had seen the monster? Andromeda had seen it. 9. Why had the men departed from<sup>1</sup> the towns? They had departed because the monster had come. 10. Did Cepheus obey<sup>2</sup> the oracle<sup>3</sup>? He did.

1. **ex**. What would **ab** mean?
2. *Did ... obey*, perfect tense.
3. What case?

LESSON XXXIV

REVIEW OF THE ACTIVE VOICE

**197.** A review of the tenses of the indicative active shows the following formation:

| PRESENT = First of the principal parts

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE	IMPERFECT = Present stem + <b>-ba-m</b>
	FUTURE = Present stem + <b>-bō</b> , Conj. I and II <b>-a-m</b> , Conj. III and IV
	PERFECT = Third of the principal parts
	PLUPERFECT = Perfect stem + <b>-era-m</b>
	FUTURE PERFECT = Perfect stem + <b>-erō</b>

**198.** The synopsis of the active voice of **amō**, as far as we have learned the conjugation, is as follows:

PRINCIPAL PARTS **amō, amāre, amāvī**

PRES. STEM <b>amā-</b> INDIC. <i>Pres.</i> <b>amō</b> <i>Imperf.</i> <b>amābam</b> <i>Fut.</i> <b>amābō</b> PRES. IMV. <b>amā</b> PRES. INFIN. <b>amāre</b>	PERF. STEM <b>amāv-</b> INDIC. <i>Perf.</i> <b>amāvī</b> <i>Pluperf.</i> <b>amāveram</b> <i>Fut. perf.</i> <b>amāverō</b> PERF. INFIN. <b>amāvisse</b>
--	--

1. Learn to write in the same form and to give rapidly the principal parts and synopsis of **parō, dō, laudō, dēleō, habeō, moveō, pāreō, videō, dīcō, discēdō, dūcō, mittō, capiō, muniō, veniō**.<sup>1</sup>

1. Learn to give synopses rapidly, and not only in the first person singular but in any person of either number.

**199.** Learn the following principal parts:<sup>2</sup>

	PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	
IRREGULAR VERBS	<b>sum</b>	<b>esse</b>	<b>fuī</b>	<i>be</i>
	<b>ab'sum</b>	<b>abes'se</b>	<b>ā'fuī</b>	<i>be away</i>
	<b>dō</b>	<b>dare</b>	<b>dedī</b>	<i>give</i>
CONJUGATION II	<b>contineō</b>	<b>continēre</b>	<b>continūi</b>	<i>hold in, keep</i>
	<b>doceō</b>	<b>docēre</b>	<b>docuī</b>	<i>teach</i>
	<b>egeō</b>	<b>egēre</b>	<b>eguī</b>	<i>need</i>
	<b>faveō</b>	<b>favēre</b>	<b>fāvī</b>	<i>favor</i>
	<b>iubeō</b>	<b>iubēre</b>	<b>iussi</b>	<i>order</i>
	<b>noceō</b>	<b>nocēre</b>	<b>nocuī</b>	<i>injure</i>
	<b>persuādeō</b>	<b>persuādēre</b>	<b>persuāsī</b>	<i>persuade</i>
	<b>respondeō</b>	<b>respondēre</b>	<b>respondī</b>	<i>reply</i>
CONJUGATION III	<b>sedeō</b>	<b>sedēre</b>	<b>sēdī</b>	<i>sit</i>
	<b>studeō</b>	<b>studēre</b>	<b>studuī</b>	<i>be eager</i>
	<b>agō</b>	<b>agere</b>	<b>ēgī</b>	<i>drive</i>
	<b>crēdō</b>	<b>crēdere</b>	<b>crēdidī</b>	<i>believe</i>
	<b>fugiō</b>	<b>fugere</b>	<b>fūgī</b>	<i>flee</i>
	<b>iaciō</b>	<b>iacere</b>	<b>iēcī</b>	<i>hurl</i>
CONJUGATION IV	<b>interficiō</b>	<b>interficere</b>	<b>interfēcī</b>	<i>kill</i>
	<b>rapīō</b>	<b>rapere</b>	<b>rapuī</b>	<i>seize</i>
	<b>resis'tō</b>	<b>resis'tere</b>	<b>re'stiti</b>	<i>resist</i>
	<b>repe'riō</b>	<b>reperi're</b>	<b>rep'peri</b>	<i>find</i>

2. These are all verbs that you have had before, and the perfect is the only new form to be learned.

**200.** PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA (*Concluded*)

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 290. Read the whole story.

Perseus semper proeliō studēbat<sup>3</sup> et respondit,<sup>3</sup> “Verba tua sunt maximē grāta,” et laetus arma sua magica parāvit.<sup>3</sup> Subitō mōnstrum vidētur; celeriter per aquam properat et Andromedae adpropinquat. Eius amīcī longē absunt et misera puella est sōla. Perseus autem sine morā super aquam volāvit.<sup>3</sup> Subitō dēscendit<sup>3</sup> et dūrō gladiō saevum mōnstrum graviter vulnerāvit.<sup>3</sup> Diū pugnātur,<sup>4</sup> diū proelium est dubium. Dēnique autem Perseus mōnstrum interfēcit<sup>3</sup> et victōriam reportāvit.<sup>3</sup> Tum ad saxum vēnit<sup>3</sup> et Andromedam liberāvit<sup>3</sup> et eam ad Cēpheum dūxit.<sup>3</sup> Is, nūper miser, nunc laetus, ita dīxit<sup>3</sup>: “Tuō auxiliō, mī amīce, cāra filia mea est liberā; tua est Andromeda.” Diū Perseus cum Andromedā ibi habitābat<sup>3</sup> et magnopere ā tōtō populō amābātur.<sup>3</sup>

3. See if you can explain the use of the perfects and imperfects in this passage.

4. The verb pugnātur means, literally, *it is fought*; translate freely, *the battle is fought*, or *the contest rages*. The verb pugnō in Latin is intransitive, and so does not have a personal subject in the passive. A verb with an indeterminate subject, designated in English by *it*, is called impersonal.

**THE PASSIVE PERFECTS OF THE INDICATIVE · THE PERFECT PASSIVE AND FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE**

**201.** The fourth and last of the principal parts (§ 183) is the **perfect passive participle**. From it we get the participial stem on which are formed the future active infinitive and all the passive perfects.

1. Learn the following principal parts, which are for the first time given in full:

CONJ.	PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PASS. PART
I.	<b>amō</b>	<b>amā'-re</b>	<b>amā'v-ī</b>	<b>amā't-us</b>
This is the model for all regular verbs of the first conjugation.				
II.	<b>mo'neō</b>	<b>monē'-re</b>	<b>mo'nu-ī</b>	<b>mo'nit-us</b>
III.	<b>regō</b>	<b>re'ge-re</b>	<b>rēx-ī</b>	<b>rēct-us</b>
	<b>ca'piō</b>	<b>ca'pe-re</b>	<b>cēp-ī</b>	<b>capt-us</b>
IV.	<b>au'diō</b>	<b>audi'-re</b>	<b>audi'v-ī</b>	<b>audi't-us</b>

2. The base of the participial stem is found by dropping **-us** from the perfect passive participle.

**202.** In English the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses of the indicative passive are made up of forms of the auxiliary verb *to be* and the past participle; as, *I have been loved, I had been loved, I shall have been loved*.

Very similarly, in Latin, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive tenses use respectively the present, imperfect, and future of **sum** as an auxiliary verb with the perfect passive participle, as

Perfect passive, **amā'tus sum**, *I have been or was loved*  
 Pluperfect passive, **amā'tus eram**, *I had been loved*  
 Future perfect passive, **amā'tus erō**, *I shall have been loved*

1. In the same way give the synopsis of the corresponding tenses of **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, and **audiō**, and give the English meanings.

**203. Nature of the Participle.** A participle is partly verb and partly adjective. As a verb it possesses tense and voice. As an adjective it is declined and agrees with the word it modifies in gender, number, and case.

**204.** The perfect passive participle is declined like **bonus, bona, bonum**, and in the compound tenses (§ 202) it agrees as a predicate adjective with the subject of the verb.

EXAMPLES IN SINGULAR	<b>Vir laudātus est</b> , <i>the man was praised, or has been praised</i> <b>Puella laudāta est</b> , <i>the girl was praised, or has been praised</i> <b>Cōnsilium laudātum est</b> , <i>the plan was praised, or has been praised</i>
EXAMPLES IN PLURAL	<b>Virī laudātī sunt</b> , <i>the men were praised, or have been praised</i> <b>Puellae laudātae sunt</b> , <i>the girls were praised, or have been praised</i> <b>Cōnsilia laudāta sunt</b> , <i>the plans were praised, or have been praised</i>

1. Inflect the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative passive of **amō**, **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, and **audiō** (§§ 488-492).

**205. The perfect passive infinitive** is formed by adding **esse**, the present infinitive of **sum**, to the perfect passive participle; as, **amā't-us (-a, -um) esse**, *to have been loved*; **mo'nit-us (-a, -um) esse**, *to have been advised*.

1. Form the perfect passive infinitive of **regō**, **capiō**, **audiō**, and give the English meanings.

**206.** The future active infinitive is formed by adding **esse**, the present infinitive of **sum**, to the future active participle. This participle is made by adding **-ūrus, -a, -um** to the base of the participial stem. Thus the future active infinitive of **amō** is **amat-ū'rus (-a, -um) esse**, *to be about to love*.

a. Note that in forming the three tenses of the active infinitive we use all three conjugation stems:

Present, **amāre** (present stem), *to love*  
 Perfect, **amāvisse** (perfect stem), *to have loved*  
 Future, **amatūrus esse** (participial stem), *to be about to love*

1. Give the three tenses of the active infinitive of **laudō**, **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, **audiō**, with the English meanings.

**207. EXERCISES**

I. 1. Fābula Andromedae nārrāta est. 2. Multae fābulae ā magistrō nārrātae sunt. 3. Ager ab agricolā validō arātus erat. 4. Agrī ab agricolīs validīs arātī erant. 5. Aurum ā servō perfidō ad domicilium suum portātum erit. 6. Nostra arma ā lēgātō laudāta sunt. Quis vestra arma laudāvit? 7. Ab ancillā tuā ad cēnam vocātae sumus. 8. Andromeda mōnstrō nōn data est, quia mōnstrum ā Perseō necātum erat.

II. 1. The provinces were laid waste, the field had been laid waste, the towns will have been laid waste. 2. The oracles were heard, the oracle was heard, the oracles had been heard. 3. The oracle will have been heard, the province had been captured, the boats have been captured. 4. The fields were laid waste, the man was advised, the girls will have been advised. 5. The towns

had been ruled, we shall have been captured, you will have been heard.

## LESSON XXXVI

### REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS · PREPOSITIONS *YES-OR-NO* QUESTIONS

**208.** The following list shows the principal parts of all the verbs you have had excepting those used in the paradigms. The parts you have had before are given for review, and the perfect participle is the only new form for you to learn. Sometimes one or more of the principal parts are lacking, which means that the verb has no forms based on that stem. A few verbs lack the perfect passive participle but have the future active participle in **-ūrus**, which appears in the principal parts instead.

#### IRREGULAR VERBS

<b>sum</b>	<b>esse</b>	<b>fuī</b>	<b>futūrus</b>	<i>be</i>
<b>absum</b>	<b>abesse</b>	<b>āfuī</b>	<b>āfutūrus</b>	<i>be away</i>
<b>dō</b> <sup>1</sup>	<b>dare</b>	<b>dedī</b>	<b>datus</b>	<i>give</i>

1. **dō** is best classed with the irregular verbs because of the short **a** in the present and participial stems.

#### CONJUGATION I

<b>portō</b>	<b>portāre</b>	<b>portāvī</b>	<b>portātus</b>	<i>carry</i>
--------------	----------------	----------------	-----------------	--------------

So for all verbs of this conjugation thus far used.

#### CONJUGATION II

<b>contineō</b>	<b>continēre</b>	<b>continūi</b>	<b>contentus</b>	<i>hold in, keep</i>
<b>dēleō</b>	<b>dēlere</b>	<b>dēlēvī</b>	<b>dēlētus</b>	<i>destroy</i>
<b>doceō</b>	<b>docere</b>	<b>docuī</b>	<b>doctus</b>	<i>teach</i>
<b>egeō</b>	<b>egere</b>	<b>egūi</b>	---	<i>lack</i>
<b>faveō</b>	<b>favere</b>	<b>fāvī</b>	<b>fautūrus</b>	<i>favor</i>
<b>iubeō</b>	<b>iubere</b>	<b>iussī</b>	<b>iussus</b>	<i>order</i>
<b>moveō</b>	<b>movere</b>	<b>mōvī</b>	<b>mōtus</b>	<i>move</i>
<b>noceō</b>	<b>nocere</b>	<b>nocuī</b>	<b>nocitūrus</b>	<i>injure</i>
<b>pāreō</b>	<b>pāre</b>	<b>pārūi</b>	---	<i>obey</i>
<b>persuādeō</b>	<b>persuādere</b>	<b>persuāsī</b>	<b>persuāsus</b>	<i>persuade (from)</i>
<b>prohibeō</b>	<b>prohibere</b>	<b>prohibuī</b>	<b>prohibitus</b>	<i>restrain, keep</i>
<b>respondeō</b>	<b>respondere</b>	<b>respondī</b>	<b>respōnsus</b>	<i>reply</i>
<b>sedeō</b>	<b>sedere</b>	<b>sēdī</b>	<b>-sessus</b>	<i>sit</i>
<b>studeō</b>	<b>studere</b>	<b>studūi</b>	---	<i>be eager</i>
<b>videō</b>	<b>videre</b>	<b>vidī</b>	<b>vīsus</b>	<i>see</i>

#### CONJUGATION III

<b>agō</b>	<b>agere</b>	<b>ēgī</b>	<b>āctus</b>	<i>drive</i>
<b>crēdō</b>	<b>crēdere</b>	<b>crēdidī</b>	<b>crēditus</b>	<i>believe</i>
<b>dīcō</b>	<b>dīcere</b>	<b>dīxī</b>	<b>dictus</b>	<i>say</i>
<b>discēdō</b>	<b>discēdere</b>	<b>discessī</b>	<b>discessus</b>	<i>depart</i>
<b>dūcō</b>	<b>dūcere</b>	<b>dūxī</b>	<b>ductus</b>	<i>lead</i>
<b>faciō</b> <sup>2</sup>	<b>facere</b>	<b>fēcī</b>	<b>factus</b>	<i>make</i>
<b>fugiō</b>	<b>fugere</b>	<b>fūgī</b>	<b>fugitūrus</b>	<i>flee</i>
<b>iaciō</b>	<b>iacere</b>	<b>iēcī</b>	<b>iactus</b>	<i>hurl</i>
<b>interficiō</b>	<b>interficere</b>	<b>interfēcī</b>	<b>interfectus</b>	<i>kill</i>
<b>mittō</b>	<b>mittere</b>	<b>mīsī</b>	<b>missus</b>	<i>send</i>
<b>rapiō</b>	<b>rapere</b>	<b>rapuī</b>	<b>raptus</b>	<i>seize</i>
<b>resistō</b>	<b>resistere</b>	<b>restitī</b>	---	<i>resist</i>

#### CONJUGATION IV

<b>mūniō</b>	<b>mūnire</b>	<b>mūnivī</b>	<b>mūnitus</b>	<i>fortify</i>
<b>reperiō</b>	<b>reperire</b>	<b>rep'peri</b>	<b>repertus</b>	<i>find</i>
<b>veniō</b>	<b>venire</b>	<b>vēnī</b>	<b>ventus</b>	<i>come</i>

2. **faciō** has an irregular passive which will be presented later.

**209. Prepositions.** 1. We learned in §§ 52, 53 that only the *accusative* and the *ablative* are used with prepositions, and that prepositions expressing ablative relations govern the ablative case. Those we have had are here summarized. The table following should be learned.

<b>ā</b> or <b>ab</b> , <i>from, by</i>
<b>cum</b> , <i>with</i>
<b>dē</b> , <i>down from, concerning</i>
<b>ē</b> or <b>ex</b> , <i>out from, out of</i>
<b>prō</b> , <i>before, in front of; for, in behalf of</i>
<b>sine</b> , <i>without</i>

2. Prepositions not expressing ablative relations must govern the *accusative* (§ 52). Of these we



have had the following:

**ad**, *to*  
**apud**, *among*  
**per**, *through*

There are many others which you will meet as we proceed.

3. The preposition **in** when meaning *in* or *on* governs the *ablative*; when meaning *to*, *into*, *against* (relations foreign to the ablative) **in** governs the *accusative*.

**210. Yes-or-No Questions.** Questions not introduced by some interrogative word like *who*, *why*, *when*, etc., but expecting the answer *yes* or *no*, may take one of three forms:

1. *Is he coming?* (Asking for information. Implying nothing as to the answer expected.)
2. *Is he not coming?* (Expecting the answer *yes*.)
3. *He isn't coming, is he?* (Expecting the answer *no*.)

These three forms are rendered in Latin as follows:

1. **Venitne?** *is he coming?*
2. **Nōne venit?** *is he not coming?*
3. **Num venit?** *he isn't coming, is he?*

a. **-ne**, the question sign, is usually added to the verb, which then stands first.

b. We learned in § 56. b that *yes-or-no* questions are usually answered by repeating the verb, with or without a negative. Instead of this, **ita**, **vērō**, **certē**, etc. (*so*, *truly*, *certainly*, etc.) may be used for *yes*, and **nōn**, **minimē**, etc. for *no* if the denial is emphatic, as, *by no means*, *not at all*.

## 211. EXERCISES

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 290.

I. 1. Nōne habēbat Cornēlia ōrnāmenta aurī? Habēbat. 2. Num Sextus lēgātus scūtum in dextrō brachiō gerēbat? Nōn in dextrō, sed sinistrō in brachiō Sextus scūtum gerēbat. 3. Frūstrā bella multa ab Gallis gesta erant. 4. Ubi oppidum ā perfidō Sextō occupātum est, oppidānī miserī gladiō interfectī sunt. 5. Id oppidum erat plēnum frūmentī. 6. Nōne Sextus ab oppidānīs frūmentum postulāvit? Vērō, sed iī recusāvērunt frūmentum dare. 7. Cūr oppidum ab Sextō dēlētum est? Quia frūmentum recusātum est. 8. Ea victōria nōn dubia erat. 9. Oppidānī erant dēfessī et armīs egēbant. 10. Num fugam temptāvērunt? Minimē.

II. 1. Where was Julia standing? She was standing where you had ordered. 2. Was Julia wearing any ornaments? She had many ornaments of gold. 3. Did she not attempt flight when she saw the danger? She did. 4. Who captured her? Galba captured her without delay and held her by the left arm. 5. She didn't have the lady's gold, did she? No, the gold had been taken by a faithless maid and has been brought back.

---

## Fourth Review, Lessons XXVII-XXXVI, §§ 513-516

---

### LESSON XXXVII

#### CONJUGATION OF *POSSUM* · THE INFINITIVE USED AS IN ENGLISH

**212.** Learn the principal parts of **possum**, *I am able*, *I can*, and its inflection in the indicative and infinitive. (Cf. § 495.)

a. **Possum**, *I can*, is a compound of **potis**, *able*, and **sum**, *I am*.

**213. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative.** The *infinitive* (cf. § 173) is a *verbal noun*. Used as a noun, it has the constructions of a noun. As a verb it can govern a case and be modified by an adverb. The uses of the infinitive are much the same in Latin as in English.

1. In English certain verbs of *wishing*, *commanding*, *forbidding*, and the like are used with an object clause consisting of a substantive in the objective case and an infinitive, as, *he commanded the men to flee*. Such object clauses are called infinitive clauses, and the substantive is said to be the subject of the infinitive.

Similarly in Latin, some verbs of *wishing*, *commanding*, *forbidding*, and the like are used with an object clause consisting of an infinitive with a subject in the accusative case, as, **Is virōs fugere iussit**, *he commanded the men to flee*.

**214. RULE. Subject of the Infinitive.** *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.*

**215. The Complementary Infinitive.** In English a verb is often followed by an infinitive to complete its meaning, as, *the Romans are able to conquer the Gauls*. This is called the *complementary infinitive*, as the predicate is not *complete* without the added infinitive.

Similarly in Latin, *verbs of incomplete predication* are completed by the infinitive. Among such verbs are **possum**, *I am able*, *I can*; **properō**, *I hasten*; **temptō**, *I attempt*; as

**Rōmānī Gallōs superāre possunt, the Romans are able to (or can) conquer the Gauls**  
**Bellum gerere mātūrānt, they hasten to wage war**

a. A predicate adjective completing a complementary infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the main verb.

**Mali pueri esse boni nōn possunt, bad boys are not able to (or cannot) be good.**

Observe that **boni** agrees with **pueri**.

**216. The Infinitive used as a Noun.** In English the infinitive is often used as a pure noun, as the subject of a sentence, or as a predicate nominative. For example, *To conquer* (= conquering) *is pleasing*; *To see* (= seeing) *is to believe* (= believing). The same use of the infinitive is found in Latin, especially with **est**, as

**Superāre est grātum, to conquer is pleasing**  
**Vidēre est crēdere, to see is to believe**

a. In the construction above, the infinitive often has a subject, which must then be in the accusative case, as

**Galbam superāre inimicōs est grātum multis,**  
*for Galba to conquer his enemies is pleasing to many*

b. An infinitive used as a noun is neuter singular. Thus, in the sentence **superāre est grātum**, the predicate adjective **grātum** is in the neuter nominative singular to agree with **superāre** the subject.

**217. EXERCISES**

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 291.

I. 1. Magister lūdī liberōs cum dīligentiā labōrāre iussit. 2. Egēre cibō et vinō est virīs molestum. 3. Virī armātī vetuērunt Gallōs castra ibi pōnere. 4. Estne lēgātus in castellō an in mūrō? Is est prō portā. 5. Ubi nostrī<sup>1</sup> fugere incēpērunt, lēgātus ab vestrīs<sup>1</sup> captus est. 6. Gallī castellum ibi oppugnāverant ubi praesidium erat infirmum. 7. Aliī pugnāre temptābant, aliī portās petēbant. 8. Fēminae prō domiciliīs sedēbant neque resistere validīs Gallīs poterant. 9. Bellum est saevum, nec infirmīs nec miserīs favet. 10. Sed virī arma postulābant et studēbant Gallōs dē mūrīs agere. 11. Id castellum ab Gallīs occupārī Rōmānīs nōn grātum erit. 12. Gallī ubi ā Rōmānīs victī sunt, esse liberī<sup>2</sup> cessāvērunt. 13. Diū sine aquā vīvere nōn potestis.

1. Supply *men*. **nostrī, vestrī, and suī** are often used as nouns in this way.

2. Not *children*. The Romans used **liberī** either as an adjective, meaning *free*, or as a noun, meaning *the free*, thereby signifying their *free-born children*. The word was never applied to children of slaves.

II. 1. The girl began daily to carry water from the river to the gates. 2. The Gauls had pitched their camp in a place suitable for a battle. 3. For a long time they tried in vain to seize the redoubt. 4. Neither did they cease to hurl weapons against<sup>3</sup> the walls. 5. But they were not able to (could not) take the town.

3. **in** with the accusative.

**218. THE FAITHLESS TARPEIA**

Sabīnī ōlim cum Rōmānīs bellum gerēbant et multās victōriās reportāverant. Iam agrōs proximōs mūrīs vāstābant, iam oppidō adpropinquābant. Rōmānī autem in Capitōlium fūgerant et longē periculō aberant. Mūrīs validīs et saxīs altīs crēdēbant. Frūstrā Sabīnī tēla iaciēbant, frūstrā portās dūrās petēbant; castellum occupāre nōn poterant. Deinde novum cōsiliū cēpērunt.<sup>4</sup>

Tarpēia erat puella Rōmāna pulchra et superba. Cotidiē aquam cōpiīs Rōmānīs in Capitōlium portābat. Eī<sup>5</sup> nōn nocēbant Sabīnī, quod ea sine armīs erat neque Sabīnī bellum cum fēminīs liberisque gerēbant. Tarpēia autem maximē amābat ōrnāmenta aurī. Cotidiē Sabīnōrum ōrnāmenta vidēbat et mox ea dēsiderāre incipiēbat. Eī unus ex<sup>6</sup> Sabīnīs dixit, "Dūc cōpiās Sabīnās intrā portās, Tarpēia, et maxima erunt praemia tua."

4. **cōsiliū capere, to make a plan.** Why is the *perfect* tense used here and the imperfect in the preceding sentences? Explain the use of tenses in the next paragraph.

5. Dative with **nocēbant**. (Cf. § 154.)

6. **ex, out of**, i.e. *from the number of*; best translated *of*.



TARPEIA PUELLA PERFIDA

## LESSON XXXVIII

### THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AND THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

**219.** Sentences are *simple, compound, or complex*.

*a.* A *simple sentence* is a sentence containing but one statement, that is, one subject and one predicate: *The Romans approached the town.*

*b.* A *compound sentence* is a sentence containing two or more independent statements: *The Romans approached the town | and | the enemy fled.*

NOTE. An independent statement is one that can stand alone; it does not depend upon another statement.

*c.* A *complex sentence* is a sentence containing one independent statement and one or more dependent statements: *When the Romans approached the town | the enemy fled.*

NOTE. A dependent or subordinate statement is one that depends on or qualifies another statement; thus *the enemy fled* is independent, and *when the Romans approached the town* is dependent or subordinate.

*d.* The separate statements in a compound or complex sentence are called *clauses*. In a complex sentence the independent statement is called the *main clause* and the dependent statement the *subordinate clause*.

**220.** Examine the complex sentence

*The Romans killed the men who were taken*

Here are two clauses:

*a.* The main clause, *The Romans killed the men*

*b.* The subordinate clause, *who were taken*

The word *who* is a pronoun, for it takes the place of the noun *men*. It also connects the subordinate clause *who were taken* with the noun *men*. Hence the clause is an *adjective clause*. A pronoun that connects an *adjective clause* with a substantive is called a *relative pronoun*, and the substantive for which the relative pronoun stands is called its *antecedent*. The relative pronouns in English are *who, whose, whom, which, what, that*.

**221.** The relative pronoun in Latin is **quī, quae, quod**, and it is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>quī</b>	<b>quae</b>	<b>quod</b>	<b>quī</b>	<b>quae</b>	<b>quae</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>cuius</b>	<b>cuius</b>	<b>cuius</b>	<b>quōrum</b>	<b>quārum</b>	<b>quōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>cui</b>	<b>cui</b>	<b>cui</b>	<b>quibus</b>	<b>quibus</b>	<b>quibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>quem</b>	<b>quam</b>	<b>quod</b>	<b>quōs</b>	<b>quās</b>	<b>quae</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>quō</b>	<b>quā</b>	<b>quō</b>	<b>quibus</b>	<b>quibus</b>	<b>quibus</b>

1. Review the declension of **is**, § 114, and note the similarity in the endings. The forms **quī, quae**, and **quibus** are the only forms showing new endings.

NOTE. The genitive **cuius** and the dative **cui** are pronounced *coōi 'yoōs* (two syllables) and *coōi* (one syllable).

**222.** The Relative Pronoun is translated as follows: <sup>1</sup>

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>who, that</i>	<i>which, what, that</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>of whom, whose</i>	<i>of which, of what, whose</i>

<i>Dat.</i>	<i>to or for whom</i>	<i>to or for which, to or for what</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>whom, that</i>	<i>which, what, that</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>from, etc., whom</i>	<i>from, etc., which or what</i>

1. This table of meanings need not be memorized. It is inserted for reference when translating.

a. We see from the table above that **quī**, when it refers to a person, is translated by some form of *who* or by *that*; and that when it refers to anything else it is translated by *which, what, or that*.

223. Note the following sentences:

*The Romans killed the men who were taken*  
*The Romans killed the woman who was taken*  
**Rōmānī interfēcērunt virōs quī captī sunt**  
**Rōmānī interfēcērunt fēminam quae capta est**

In the first sentence *who (quī)* refers to the antecedent *men (virōs)*, and is *masculine plural*. In the second, *who (quae)* refers to *woman (fēminam)*, and *feminine singular*. From this we learn that the relative must agree with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*. In neither of the sentences are the antecedents and relatives in the same case. **Virōs** and **fēminam** are accusatives, and **quī** and **quae** are nominatives, being the subjects of the subordinate clauses. Hence

224. **RULE. Agreement of the Relative.** *A relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in gender and number; but its case is determined by the way it is used in its own clause.*

225. **Interrogative Pronouns.** An interrogative pronoun is a pronoun that asks a question. In English the interrogatives are *who? which? what?* In Latin they are **quis? quid?** (pronoun) and **quī? quae? quod?** (adjective).

226. Examine the sentences

- a. *Who is the man?* **Quis est vir?**  
b. *What man is leading them?* **Quī vir eōs dūcit?**

In *a*, *who* is an interrogative *pronoun*. In *b*, *what* is an interrogative *adjective*. Observe that in Latin **quis, quid** is the *pronoun* and **quī, quae, quod** is the *adjective*.

227. 1. The interrogative adjective **quī, quae, quod** is declined just like the relative pronoun. (See § 221.)

2. The interrogative pronoun **quis, quid** is declined like **quī, quae, quod** in the plural. In the singular it is declined as follows:

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>quis, who?</b>	<b>quid, what? which?</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>cuius, whose?</b>	<b>cuius, whose?</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>cui, to or for whom?</b>	<b>cui, to or for what or which?</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>quem, whom?</b>	<b>quid, what? which?</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>quō, from, etc., whom?</b>	<b>quō, from, etc., which or what?</b>

NOTE. Observe that the masculine and feminine are alike and that all the forms are like the corresponding forms of the relative, excepting *quis* and *quid*.

## 228. EXERCISES

I. 1. *Quis est aeger? Servus quem amō est aeger.* 2. *Cuius scūtum habēs? Scūtum habeō quod lēgātus ad castellum mīsit.* 3. *Cui lēgātus suum scūtum dabit? Filiō meō scūtum dabit.* 4. *Ubi Germānī antīquī vivēbant? In terrā quae est proxima Rhēnō Germānī vivēbant.* 5. *Quibuscum<sup>2</sup> Germānī bellum gerēbant? Cum Rōmānīs, qui eōs superāre studēbant, Germānī bellum gerēbant.* 6. *Quī virī castra pōnunt? Ilī sunt virī quōrum armīs Germānī victī sunt.* 7. *Quibus telīs cōpiae nostrae eguērunt? Gladiīs et telīs nostrae cōpiae eguērunt.* 8. *Ā quibus porta sinistra tenēbātur? Ā sociīs porta sinistra tenēbātur.* 9. *Quae prōvinciae ā Rōmānīs occupātae sunt? Multae prōvinciae ā Rōmānīs occupātae sunt.* 10. *Quibus virīs deī favēbunt? Bonīs virīs deī favēbunt.*

2. **cum** is added to the ablative of relative, interrogative, and personal pronouns instead of being placed before them.



GERMANI ANTIQUI

II. 1. What victory will you announce? 2. I will announce to the people the victory which the sailors have won. 3. The men who were pitching camp were eager for battle. 4. Nevertheless they were soon conquered by the troops which Sextus had sent. 5. They could not resist our forces, but fled from that place without delay.

**229.** THE FAITHLESS TARPEIA (*Concluded*)<sup>3</sup>

Tarpēia, commōta ōrnamentis Sabīnōrum pulchrīs, diū resistere nōn potuit et respondit: "Date mihi<sup>4</sup> ōrnāmenta quae in sinistrīs bracchīs geritis, et celeriter cōpiās vestrās in Capitōlium dūcam." Nec Sabīnī recūsāvērunt, sed per dūrās magnāsque castellī portās properāvērunt quō<sup>5</sup> Tarpēia dūxit et mox intrā validōs et altōs mūrōs stābant. Tum sine morā in<sup>6</sup> Tarpēiam scūta graviter iēcērunt; nam scūta quoque in sinistrīs bracchiīs gerēbant. Ita perfida puella Tarpēia interfecta est; ita Sabīnī Capitōlium occupāvērunt.

3. Explain the use of the tenses in this selection.

4. *to me.*

5. quō = *whither, to the place where.* Here **quo** is the relative adverb. We have had it used before as the interrogative adverb, *whither? to what place?*

6. *upon.*

LESSON XXXIX

THE THIRD DECLENSION · CONSONANT STEMS

**230. Bases and Stems.** In learning the first and second declensions we saw that the different cases were formed by adding the case terminations to the part of the word that did not change, which we called the **base**. If to the base we add **-ā** in the first declension, and **-o** in the second, we get what is called the **stem**. Thus **porta** has the base **port-** and the stem **portā-**; **servus** has the base **serv-** and the stem **servo-**.

These stem vowels, **-ā-** and **-o-**, play so important a part in the formation of the case terminations that these declensions are named from them respectively the *Ā-* and *O-*Declensions.

**231. Nouns of the Third Declension.** The third declension is called the Consonant or *I-* Declension, and its nouns are classified according to the way the *stem* ends. If the last letter of the stem is a consonant, the word is said to have a *consonant stem*; if the stem ends in **-i-**, the word is said to have an *i-stem*. *In consonant stems the stem is the same as the base. In i-stems the stem is formed by adding -i- to the base.* The presence of the **i** makes a difference in certain of the cases, so the distinction is a very important one.

**232.** Consonant stems are divided into two classes:

- I. Stems that add **-s** to the base to form the nominative singular.
- II. Stems that add no termination in the nominative singular.

CLASS I

**233.** Stems that add **-s** to the base in the nominative singular are either masculine or feminine and are declined as follows:

	<b>prīnceps</b> , m., <i>chief</i>	<b>mīles</b> , m., <i>soldier</i>	<b>lapis</b> , m., <i>stone</i>	
BASES OR STEMS	<b>prīncip-</b>	<b>mīlit-</b>	<b>lapid-</b>	
		SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS M. AND F.
<i>Nom.</i>	prīnceps	mīles	lapis	<b>-s</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	prīn'cipis	mīlitis	lapidis	<b>-is</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	prīn'cipī	mīlitī	lapidī	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	prīn'cipem	mīlitem	lapidem	<b>-em</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	prīn'cipe	mīlite	lapide	<b>-e</b>
		PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	prīn'cipēs	mīlitēs	lapidēs	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	prīn'cipum	mīlitum	lapidum	<b>-um</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	prīnci'pibus	mīlitibus	lapidibus	<b>-ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	prīn'cipēs	mīlitēs	lapidēs	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	prīnci'pibus	mīlitibus	lapidibus	<b>-ibus</b>
	<b>rēx</b> , m., <i>king</i>	<b>iūdex</b> , m., <i>judge</i>	<b>virtūs</b> , f., <i>manliness</i>	
BASES OR STEMS	<b>rēg-</b>	<b>iūdic-</b>	<b>virtūt-</b>	
<i>Nom.</i>	rēx	iūdex	virtūs	<b>-s</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgis	iūdicis	virtū'tis	<b>-is</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgī	iūdicī	virtū'tī	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgem	iūdicem	virtū'tem	<b>-em</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	rēge	iūdice	virtū'te	<b>-e</b>
		PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	rēgēs	iūdicēs	virtū'tēs	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgum	iūdicum	virtū'tum	<b>-um</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgibus	iūdicibus	virtū'tibus	<b>-ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgēs	iūdicēs	virtū'tēs	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	rēgibus	iūdicibus	virtū'tibus	<b>-ibus</b>

1. The base or stem is found by dropping **-is** in the genitive singular.

2. Most nouns of two syllables, like **prīnceps** (**prīncip-**), **mīles** (**mīlit-**), **iūdex** (**iūdic-**), have **i** in the base, but **e** in the nominative.

a. **lapis** is an exception to this rule.

3. Observe the consonant changes of the base or stem in the nominative:

a. A final **-t** or **-d** is dropped before **-s**; thus **mīles** for **mīlets**, **lapis** for **lapids**, **virtūs** for **virtūts**.

b. A final **-c** or **-g** unites with **-s** and forms **-x**; thus **iūdec** + **s** = **iūdex**, **rēg** + **s** = **rēx**.

4. Review § 74 and apply the rules to this declension.

In like manner decline **dux**, **ducis**, m., *leader*; **eques**, **equitis**, m., *horseman*; **pedes**, **peditis**, m., *foot soldier*; **pēs**, **pedis**, m., *foot*.

### 234. EXERCISES

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 291.

I. 1. Neque peditēs neque equitēs occupāre castellum Rōmānum poterant. 2. Summā virtūte mūrōs altōs cotīdiē oppugnābant. 3. Pedes militum lapidibus quī dē mūrō iaciēbantur saepe vulnerābantur. 4. Quod novum cōsiliū dux cēpit? 5. Is perfidam puellam pulchrīs ōrnāmentīs temptāvit. 6. Quid puella fēcit? 7. Puella commōta aurō militēs per portās dūxit. 8. Tamen praemia quae summō studiō petiverat nōn reportāvit. 9. Apud Rōmānōs antiquōs Tarpēia nōn est laudāta.

II. 1. What ship is that which I see? That (**illud**) ship is the *Victory*. It is sailing now with a favorable wind and will soon approach Italy. 2. The judges commanded the savages to be seized and to be killed. 3. The chiefs of the savages suddenly began to flee, but were quickly captured by the horsemen. 4. The king led the foot soldiers to the wall from which the townsmen were hurling stones with the greatest zeal.



NAVIGIUM

LESSON XL

THE THIRD DECLENSION · CONSONANT STEMS (*Continued*)

CLASS II

**235.** Consonant stems that add no termination in the nominative are declined in the other cases exactly like those that add **-s**. They may be masculine, feminine, or neuter.

**236. PARADIGMS**

MASCULINES AND FEMININES					
BASSES OR STEMS					
	<b>cōnsul</b> , m., <i>consul</i>	<b>legiō</b> , f., <i>legion</i>	<b>ōrdō</b> , m., <i>row</i>	<b>pater</b> , m., <i>father</i>	
	<b>cōnsul-</b>	<b>legiōn-</b>	<b>ōrdin-</b>	<b>patr-</b>	
SINGULAR					
					TERMINATIONS M. AND F.
<i>Nom.</i>	cōnsul	legiō	ōrdō	pater	—
<i>Gen.</i>	cōnsul <b>is</b>	legiō <b>nis</b>	ōrdin <b>is</b>	patr <b>is</b>	<b>-is</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	cōnsul <b>ī</b>	legiōn <b>ī</b>	ōrdin <b>ī</b>	patr <b>ī</b>	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	cōnsul <b>em</b>	legiōn <b>em</b>	ōrdin <b>em</b>	patr <b>em</b>	<b>-em</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	cōnsul <b>e</b>	legiōn <b>e</b>	ōrdin <b>e</b>	patr <b>e</b>	<b>-e</b>
PLURAL					
<i>Nom.</i>	cōnsul <b>ēs</b>	legiōn <b>ēs</b>	ōrdin <b>ēs</b>	patr <b>ēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	cōnsul <b>um</b>	legiōn <b>um</b>	ōrdin <b>um</b>	patr <b>um</b>	<b>-um</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	cōnsul <b>ibus</b>	legiōn <b>ibus</b>	ōrdin <b>ibus</b>	patr <b>ibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	cōnsul <b>ēs</b>	legiōn <b>ēs</b>	ōrdin <b>ēs</b>	patr <b>ēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	cōnsul <b>ibus</b>	legiōn <b>ibus</b>	ōrdin <b>ibus</b>	patr <b>ibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>

1. With the exception of the nominative, the terminations are exactly the same as in Class I, and the base or stem is found in the same way.

2. Masculines and feminines with bases or stems in **-in-** and **-ōn-** drop **-n-** and end in **-ō** in the nominative, as **legiō** (base or stem **legiōn-**), **ōrdō** (base or stem **ōrdin-**).

3. Bases or stems in **-tr-** have **-ter** in the nominative, as **pater** (base or stem **patr-**).

4. Note how the genitive singular gives the clue to the whole declension. *Always learn this with the nominative.*

**237. EXERCISES**

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 291.

I. 1. Audisne tubās, Mārce? Nōn solum tubās audiō sed etiam ordinēs militum et carrōs impedimentōrum plēnōs vidēre possum. 2. Quās legiōnēs vidēmus? Eae legiōnēs nūper ex Galliā vēnērunt. 3. Quid ibi fēcērunt? Studēbantne pugnāre an sine virtūte erant? 4. Multa proelia fēcērunt<sup>1</sup> et magnās victōriās et multōs captivōs reportāverunt. 5. Quis est imperātor eārum legiōnum? Caesar, summus Rōmānōrum imperātor. 6. Quis est eques quī pulchram corōnam gerit? Is eques est frāter meus. Eī corōna ā cōnsule data est quia summā virtūte pugnāverat et ā barbarīs patriam servāverat.

II. 1. Who has seen my father to-day? 2. I saw him just now (**nūper**). He was hastening to your dwelling with your mother and sister. 3. When men are far from the fatherland and lack food, they cannot be restrained<sup>2</sup> from wrong<sup>3</sup>. 4. The safety of the soldiers is dear to Cæsar, the general. 5. The chiefs were eager to storm a town full of grain which was held by the consul. 6. The king forbade the baggage of the captives to be destroyed.

1. **proelium facere** = to fight a battle.

2. **contineō**. Cf. § 180.

3. Abl. iniūriā.

LESSON XLI

THE THIRD DECLENSION · CONSONANT STEMS (*Concluded*)

**238.** Neuter consonant stems add no termination in the nominative and are declined as follows:

BASSES OR STEMS					
	<b>flūmen</b> , n., <i>river</i>	<b>tempus</b> , n., <i>time</i>	<b>opus</b> , n., <i>work</i>	<b>caput</b> , n., <i>head</i>	
	<b>flūmin-</b>	<b>tempor-</b>	<b>oper-</b>	<b>capit-</b>	
SINGULAR					
					TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	flūmen	tempus	opus	caput	—

<i>Gen.</i>	flūminis	temporis	operis	capitis -is	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	flūminī	temporī	operī	capitī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	flūmen	tempus	opus	caput	—
<i>Abl.</i>	flūmine	tempore	opere	capite	-e
PLURAL					
<i>Nom.</i>	flūmina	tempora	opera	capita	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	flūminum	temporum	operum	capitum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	flūminibus	temporibus	operibus	capitibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	flūmina	tempora	opera	capita	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	flūminibus	temporibus	operibus	capitibus	-ibus

- Review § 74 and apply the rules to this declension.
- Bases or stems in **-in-** have **-e-** instead of **-i-** in the nominative, as flūmen, base or stem **flūmin-**.
- Most bases or stems in **-er-** and **-or-** have **-us** in the nominative, as **opus**, base or stem **oper-**; **tempus**, base or stem **tempor-**.

### 239. EXERCISES

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 292.

I. 1. Barbarī ubi Rōmam cēpērunt, maxima rēgum opera dēlēvērunt. 2. Rōmānī multās calamitātēs ā barbarīs accēpērunt. 3. Ubi erat summus terror apud oppidānōs, animī dubiū eōrum ab ōrātōre clarō cōnfirmāti sunt. 4. Rōma est in rīpīs fiūminis magnī. 5. Ubi Caesar imperātor milītēs suōs arma capere iussit, iī ā proeliō continērī nōn potuērunt. 6. Ubi proelium factum est, imperātor reperīrī nōn potuit. 7. Imperātor sagittā in capite vulnerātus erat et stāre nōn poterat. 8. Eum magnō labōre pedes ex proeliō portāvit. 9. Is bracchiīs suis imperātōrem tenuit et eum ex periculis summīs servāvit. 10. Virtūte suā bonus miles ab imperātōre corōnam accēpit.

II. 1. The consul placed a crown on the head of the victor. 2. Before the gates he was received by the townsmen. 3. A famous orator praised him and said, "By your labors you have saved the fatherland from disaster." 4. The words of the orator were pleasing to the victor. 5. To save the fatherland was a great task.



CORONA

## LESSON XLII

### REVIEW LESSON

**240.** Review the paradigms in §§ 233, 236, 238; and decline all nouns of the third declension in this selection.

#### TERROR CIMBRICUS<sup>1</sup>

Ōlim Cimbrī et Teutonēs, populī Germāniae, cum fēminīs liberīsque Italiae adpropinquāverant et cōpiās Rōmānās maximō proeliō vicerant. Ubi fuga legiōnum nūntiāta est, summus erat terror tōtius Rōmae, et Rōmānī, graviter commōtī, sacra crēbra deīs faciēbant et salutem petēbant.

Tum Mānlius ōrātōr animōs populī ita cōnfirmāvit:—"Magnam calamitātem accēpimus. Oppida nostra ā Cimbrīs Teutonibusque capiuntur, agricolae interficiuntur, agrī vāstantur, cōpiae barbarōrum Rōmae adpropinquant. Itaque, nisi novīs animīs proelium novum faciēmus et Germānōs ex patriā nostrā sine morā agēmus, erit nūlla salūs fēminīs nostrīs liberīsque. Servāte liberōs! Servāte patriam! Antea superātī sumus quia imperātōrēs nostrī fuērunt infirmī. Nunc Marius, clārus imperātor, quī iam multās aliās victōriās reportāvit, legiōnēs dūcet et animōs nostrōs terrōre Cimbricō liberāre mātūrābit."

Marius tum in Āfricā bellum gerēbat. Sine morā ex Āfricā in Italiam vocātus est. Cōpiās novās nōn solum tōtī Italiae sed etiam prōvinciīs sociōrum imperāvit.<sup>2</sup> Disciplinā autem durā labōribusque perpetuis milītēs exercuit. Tum cum peditibus equitibusque, quī iam proeliō studēbant, ad Germānōrum castra celeriter properāvit. Diū et ācritur pugnātum est.<sup>3</sup> Dēnique barbarī fūgērunt et multī in fugā ab equitibus sunt interfectī. Marius pater patriae vocātus est.

1. About the year 100 B.C. the Romans were greatly alarmed by an invasion of barbarians from the north known as Cimbri and Teutons. They were traveling with wives and children, and had an army of 300,000 fighting men. Several Roman armies met defeat, and the city was in a panic. Then the





<i>Gen.</i>	īnsignium	animālium	calcārium	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	īnsignibus	animālibus	calcāribus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	īnsignia	animālia	calcāria	-ia
<i>Abl.</i>	īnsignibus	animālibus	calcāribus	-ibus

1. Review § 74 and see how it applies to this declension.
2. The final **-i-** of the stem is usually dropped in the nominative. If not dropped, it is changed to **e**.
3. A long vowel is shortened before final **-l** or **-r**. (Cf. § 12. 2.)

#### 245. EXERCISES

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 292.

I. 1. Quam urbem vidēmus? Urbs quam vidētis est Rōma. 2. Cīvēs Rōmānī urbem suam turribus altis et mūrīs longīs mūniverant. 3. Ventī nāvīs longās prohibēbant finibus hostium adpropinquāre. 4. Imperātor a clientibus suis calcāria aurī et alia īnsignia accēpit. 5. Militēs Rōmānī cum hostibus bella saeva gessērunt et eōs caede magnā superāvērunt. 6. Alia animālia terram, alia mare amant. 7. Nāvēs longae quae auxilium ad imperātōrem portābant ignī ab hostibus dēlētae sunt. 8. In eō marī avis multās vidimus quae longē ā terrā volāverant. 9. Nōnne vidistis nāvīs longās hostium et ignīs quibus urbs nostra vāstābātur? Certē, sed nec caedem cīvium nec fugam clientium vidimus. 10. Avēs et alia animālia, ubi ignem vidērunt, salūtem fugā petere celeriter incēpērunt. 11. Num. iūdex in peditum ōrdinibus stābat? Minimē, iūdex erat apud equitēs et equus eius īsigne pulchrum gerēbat.



NAVES LONGAE

II. 1. Because of the lack of grain the animals of the village were not able to live. 2. When the general<sup>2</sup> heard the rumor, he quickly sent a horseman to the village. 3. The horseman had a beautiful horse and wore spurs of gold. 4. He said to the citizens, "Send your retainers with horses and wagons to our camp, and you will receive an abundance of grain." 5. With happy hearts they hastened to obey his words.<sup>3</sup>

2. Place first.

3. Not the accusative. Why?

#### LESSON XLIV

##### IRREGULAR NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION · GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

#### 246. PARADIGMS

The "Stems" are missing in the printed book. They have been supplied from the inflectional table in the Appendix.

	<b>vīs</b> , f., <i>force</i>	<b>iter</b> , n., <i>march</i>
STEMS	<b>vī-</b> and <b>vīri-</b>	<b>iter-</b> and <b>itiner-</b>
BASES	<b>v-</b> and <b>vīr-</b>	<b>iter-</b> and <b>itiner-</b>

SINGULAR		
Nom.	vīs	iter
Gen.	vīs (rare)	itineris
Dat.	vī (rare)	itinerī
Acc.	vim	iter
Abl.	vī	itinere
PLURAL		
Nom.	vīrēs	itinera
Gen.	vīrium	itinerum
Dat.	vīribus	itineribus
Acc.	vīrīs, or -ēs	itinera
Abl.	vīribus	itineribus

**247.** There are no rules for gender in the third declension that do not present numerous exceptions.<sup>1</sup> The following rules, however, are of great service, and should be thoroughly mastered:

1. **Masculine** are nouns in **-or, -ōs, -er, -ēs** (gen. **-itis**).

a. **arbor**, *tree*, is feminine; and **iter**, *march*, is neuter.

2. **Feminine** are nouns in **-ō, -is, -x**, and in **-s** preceded by a consonant or by any long vowel but **ō**.

a. Masculine are **collis** (*hill*), **lapis**, **mēnsis** (*month*), **ōrdō**, **pēs**, and nouns in **-nis** and **-guis**—as **ignis**, **sanguis** (*blood*)—and the four monosyllables

**dēns**, *a tooth*  
**mōns**, *a mountain*  
**pōns**, *a bridge*  
**fōns**, *a fountain*

3. **Neuters** are nouns in **-e, -al, -ar, -n, -ur, -ūs**, and **caput**.

1. Review § 60. Words denoting males are, of course, masculine, and those denoting females, feminine.

**248.** Give the gender of the following nouns and the rule by which it is determined:

<b>animal</b>	<b>calamitās</b>	<b>flūmen</b>	<b>lapis</b>	<b>nāvis</b>
<b>avis</b>	<b>caput</b>	<b>ignis</b>	<b>legiō</b>	<b>opus</b>
<b>caedēs</b>	<b>eques</b>	<b>insigne</b>	<b>mare</b>	<b>salūs</b>
<b>calcar</b>	<b>finis</b>	<b>labor</b>	<b>mīles</b>	<b>urbs</b>

**249. EXERCISES**

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 292.

I. *The First Bridge over the Rhine.* Salūs sociōrum erat semper cāra Rōmānīs. Ōlim Gallī, amīcī Rōmānōrum, multās iniūriās ab Germānīs quī trāns flūmen Rhēnum vivēbant accēperant. Ubi lēgātī ab iīs ad Caesarem imperātorem Rōmānum vērunt et auxiliū postulāvērunt, Rōmānī magnīs itineribus ad hostium finis properāvērunt. Mox ad ripās magnī flūminis vērunt. Imperātor studēbat cōpiās suās trāns fluvium dūcere, sed nullā viā<sup>2</sup> poterat. Nullās nāvīs habēbat. Alta erat aqua. Imperātor autem, vir clārus, numquam adversā fortunā commōtus, novum cōsiliū cēpit. Iussit suōs<sup>3</sup> in<sup>4</sup> lātō flūmine facere pontem. Numquam antēā pōns in Rhēnō vīsus erat. Hostēs ubi pontem quem Rōmānī fēcerant vīdērunt, summō terrōre commōtī, sine morā fugam parāre incēpērunt.

II. 1. The enemy had taken (possession of) the top of the mountain. 2. There were many trees on the opposite hills. 3. We pitched our camp near (**ad**) a beautiful spring. 4. A march through the enemies' country is never without danger. 5. The time of the month was suitable for the march. 6. The teeth of the monster were long. 7. When the foot soldiers<sup>4</sup> saw the blood of the captives, they began to assail the fortifications with the greatest violence.<sup>5</sup>

2. Abl. of manner.

3. **suōs**, used as a noun, *his men*.

4. We say *build a bridge over*; the Romans, *make a bridge on*.

5. Place first.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION · *I*-STEMS

250. Adjectives are either of the first and second declensions (like **bonus**, **aeger**, or **liber**), or they are of the third declension.

251. Nearly all adjectives of the third declension have *i*-stems, and they are declined almost like nouns with *i*-stems.

252. Adjectives learned thus far have had a different form in the nominative for each gender, as, **bonus**, m.; **bona**, f.; **bonum**, n. Such an adjective is called an *adjective of three endings*.

Adjectives of the third declension are of the following classes:

- I. Adjectives of three endings—  
a different form in the nominative for each gender.
- II. Adjectives of two endings—  
masculine and feminine nominative alike, the neuter different.
- III. Adjectives of one ending—  
masculine, feminine, and neuter nominative all alike.

253. Adjectives of the third declension in **-er** have three endings; those in **-is** have two endings; the others have one ending.

CLASS I

254. Adjectives of Three Endings are declined as follows:

<b>ācer, ācris, ācre, keen, eager</b>						
	STEM <b>ācri-</b>			BASE <b>ācr-</b>		
	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācre <b>m</b>	ācre <b>m</b>	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

CLASS II

255. Adjectives of Two Endings are declined as follows:

<b>omnis, omne, every, all<sup>1</sup></b>				
	STEM <b>omni-</b>		BASE <b>omn-</b>	
	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
<i>Gen.</i>	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
<i>Dat.</i>	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
<i>Acc.</i>	omn <b>em</b>	omne	omnīs, ēs	omnia
<i>Abl.</i>	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

1. **omnis** is usually translated *every* in the singular and *all* in the plural.

CLASS III

256. Adjectives of One Ending are declined as follows:

<b>pār, equal</b>				
	STEM <b>pari-</b>		BASE <b>par-</b>	
	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	pār	pār	parēs	paria
<i>Gen.</i>	paris	paris	parium	parium
<i>Dat.</i>	parī	parī	paribus	paribus
<i>Acc.</i>	pare <b>m</b>	pār	parīs, ēs	paria
<i>Abl.</i>	parī	parī	paribus	paribus

1. All *i*-stem adjectives have **-ī** in the ablative singular.

2. Observe that the several cases of adjectives of one ending have the same form for all genders excepting in the accusative singular and in the nominative and accusative plural.

3. Decline **vir ācer, legiō ācris, animal ācre, ager omnis, scūtum omne, proelium pār**.

257. There are a few adjectives of one ending that have consonant stems. They are declined exactly like nouns with consonant stems.

258. EXERCISES

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 293.

I. *The Romans invade the Enemy's Country.* Ōlim peditēs Rōmānī cum equitibus vĕlōcibus in hostium urbem iter faciēbant. Ubi nōn longē āfuērunt, rapuērunt agricolam, quī eīs viam brevem et facilem dēmōnstrāvit. Iam Rōmānī moenia alta, turrīs validās aliaque opera urbis vidēre poterant. In moenibus stābant multī prīncipēs. Prīncipēs ubi vidērunt Rōmānōs, iussērunt cīvis lapidēs aliaque tēla dē mūrīs iacere. Tum milītēs fortēs continērī ā proeliō nōn poterant et ācer imperātor signum tubā darī iussit. Summā vī omnēs mātūrāvērunt. Imperātor Sextō lēgātō impedīmenta omnia mandāvit. Sextus impedīmenta in summō colle conlocāvit. Grave et ācre erat proelium, sed hostēs nōn parēs Rōmānīs erant. Aliī interfectī, aliī captī sunt. Apud captīvōs erant māter sororque rēgis. Paucī Rōmānōrum ab hostibus vulnerātī sunt. Secundum proelium Rōmānīs erat grātum. Fortūna fortibus semper favet.

II. 1. Some months are short, others are long. 2. To seize the top of the mountain was difficult. 3. Among the hills of Italy are many beautiful springs. 4. The soldiers were sitting where the baggage had been placed because their feet were weary. 5. The city which the soldiers were eager to storm had been fortified by strong walls and high towers. 6. Did not the king intrust a heavy crown of gold and all his money to a faithless slave? Yes, but the slave had never before been faithless.



AQUILA LEGIONIS

LESSON XLVI

THE FOURTH OR U-DECLENSION

259. Nouns of the fourth declension are either masculine or neuter.

260. Masculine nouns end in **-us**, neuters in **-ū**. The genitive ends in **-ūs**.

a. Feminine by exception are **domus**, *house*; **manus**, *hand*; and a few others.

PARADIGMS

The "Stems" are missing in the printed book. They have been supplied from the inflectional table in the Appendix.

	<b>adventus</b> , m., <i>arrival</i>	<b>cornū</b> , n., <i>horn</i>	TERMINATIONS	
STEMS	<b>adventu-</b>	<b>cornu-</b>	MASC.	NEUT.
BASES	<b>advent-</b>	<b>corn-</b>		
SINGULAR				
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>adventus</b>	<b>cornū</b>	<b>-us</b>	<b>-ū</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>adventūs</b>	<b>cornūs</b>	<b>-ūs</b>	<b>-ūs</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>adventuī (ū)</b>	<b>cornū</b>	<b>-uī (ū)</b>	<b>-ū</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>adventum</b>	<b>cornū</b>	<b>-um</b>	<b>-ū</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>adventū</b>	<b>cornū</b>	<b>-ū</b>	<b>-ū</b>
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>adventūs</b>	<b>cornua</b>	<b>-ūs</b>	<b>-ua</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>adventuum</b>	<b>cornuum</b>	<b>-uum</b>	<b>-uum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>adventibus</b>	<b>cornibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>adventūs</b>	<b>cornua</b>	<b>-ūs</b>	<b>-ua</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>adventibus</b>	<b>cornibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>

1. Observe that the base is found, as in other declensions, by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

2. **lacus**, *lake*, has the ending **-ubus** in the dative and ablative plural; **portus**, *harbor*, has either **-ubus** or **-ibus**.

3. **cornū** is the only neuter that is in common use.

## 261. EXERCISES

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 293.

- I. 1. Ante adventum Caesaris vēlōcēs hostium equitēs ācrem impetum in castra fēcērunt. 2. Continēre exercitum ā proeliō nōn facile erat. 3. Post adventum suum Caesar iussit legiōnēs ex castrīs dūcī. 4. Prō castrīs cum hostium equitātū pugnātum est. 5. Post tempus breve equitātus trāns flūmen fūgit ubi castra hostium posita erant. 6. Tum victor imperātor agrōs vāstāvit et vīcōs hostium cremāvit. 7. Castra autem nōn oppugnāvit quia militēs erant dēfessī et locus difficilis. 8. Hostēs nōn cessāvērunt iacere tēla, quae paucīs nocuērunt. 9. Post adversum proelium principēs Gallōrum lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere studēbant, sed populō persuādere nōn poterant.
- II. 1. Did you see the man-of-war on the lake? 2. I did not see it (*fem.*) on the lake, but I saw it in the harbor. 3. Because of the strong wind the sailor forbade his brother to sail. 4. Cæsar didn't make an attack on the cavalry on the right wing, did he? 5. No, he made an attack on the left wing. 6. Who taught your swift horse to obey? 7. I trained my horse with my (own) hands, nor was the task difficult. 8. He is a beautiful animal and has great strength.

## LESSON XLVII

### EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE · THE DECLENSION OF *DOMUS*

262. We have become thoroughly familiar with expressions like the following:

**Galba ad (or in) oppidum properat**  
**Galba ab (dē or ex) oppidō properat**  
**Galba in oppidō habitat**

From these expressions we may deduce the following rules:

263. **RULE. Accusative of the Place to.** The **place to which** is expressed by **ad** or **in** with the accusative. This answers the question *Whither?*

264. **RULE. Ablative of the Place from.** The **place from which** is expressed by **ā** or **ab**, **dē**, **ē** or **ex**, with the separative ablative. This answers the question *Whence?* (Cf. Rule, § 179.)

265. **RULE. Ablative of the Place at or in.** The **place at or in which** is expressed by the ablative with **in**. This answers the question *Where?*

a. The ablative denoting the *place where* is called the *locative ablative* (cf. **locus**, *place*).

266. **Exceptions.** Names of towns, small islands,<sup>1</sup> **domus**, *home*, **rūs**, *country*, and a few other words in common use omit the prepositions in expressions of place, as,

**Galba Athēnās properat**, *Galba hastens to Athens*  
**Galba Athēnīs properat**, *Galba hastens from Athens*  
**Galba Athēnīs habitat**, *Galba lives at (or in) Athens*  
**Galba domum properat**, *Galba hastens home*  
**Galba rūs properat**, *Galba hastens to the country*  
**Galba domō properat**, *Galba hastens from home*  
**Galba rūre properat**, *Galba hastens from the country*  
**Galba rūri** (less commonly **rūre**) **habitat**, *Galba lives in the country*

a. Names of *countries*, like **Germānia**, **Italia**, etc., do not come under these exceptions. *With them prepositions must not be omitted.*

1. Small islands are classed with towns because they generally have but one town, and the name of the town is the same as the name of the island.

267. **The Locative Case.** We saw above that the place-relation expressed by *at* or *in* is regularly covered by the locative ablative. However, Latin originally expressed this relation by a separate form known as the *locative case*. This case has been everywhere merged in the ablative excepting in the singular number of the first and second declensions. The form of the locative in these declensions is like the genitive singular, and its use is limited to names of towns and small islands, **domī**, *at home*, and a few other words.

268. **RULE. Locative and Locative Ablative.** To express the **place in which** with names of towns and small islands, **if they are singular and of the first or second declension**, use the locative; otherwise use the locative ablative without a preposition; as,

**Galba Rōmae habitat**, *Galba lives at Rome*  
**Galba Corinthī habitat**, *Galba lives at Corinth*  
**Galba domī habitat**, *Galba lives at home*

Here **Rōmae**, **Corinthī**, and **domī** are *locatives*, being *singular* and of the first and second declensions respectively. But in

**Galba Athēnīs habitat**, *Galba lives at Athens*,

**Athēnīs** and **Pompēiis** are locative ablatives. These words can have no locative case, as the nominatives **Athēnae** and **Pompēii** are *plural* and there is no plural locative case form.

**269.** The word **domus**, *home, house*, has forms of both the second and the fourth declension. Learn its declension (§ 468).

**270. EXERCISES**

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 293.

I. 1. Corinthī omnia īnsignia aurī ā ducibus victōribus rapta erant. 2. Caesar Genāvam exercitum magnīs itineribus dūxit. 3. Quem pontem hostēs cremāverant? Pontem in Rhēnō hostēs cremāverant. 4. Pompēiis multās Rōmānōrum domōs vidēre poteritis. 5. Rōmā cōsul equō vēlōcī rūs properāvit. 6. Domī cōsulis hominēs multī sedēbant. 7. Imperātor iusserat lēgātum Athēnās cum multīs nāvibus longīs nāvīgāre. 8. Ante moenia urbis sunt ōrdinēs arborum altārum. 9. Propter arborēs altās nec lacum nec portum reperire potuimus. 10. Proeliīs crēbrīs Caesar legiōnēs suās quae erant in Galliā exercēbat. 11. Cotidiē in locō idoneō castra pōnēbat et mūniēbat.

II. 1. Cæsar, the famous general, when he had departed from Rome, hastened to the Roman province on a swift horse.<sup>2</sup> 2. He had heard a rumor concerning the allies at Geneva. 3. After his arrival Cæsar called the soldiers together and commanded them to join battle. 4. The enemy hastened to retreat, some because<sup>3</sup> they were afraid, others because<sup>3</sup> of wounds. 5. Recently I was at Athens and saw the place where the judges used to sit.<sup>4</sup> 6. Marcus and Sextus are my brothers; the one lives at Rome, the other in the country.

2. Latin says "by a swift horse." What construction?

3. Distinguish between the English conjunction *because* (**quia** or **quod**) and the preposition *because of* (**propter**).

4. *used to sit*, express by the imperfect.



DAEDALUS ET ICARUS

**271. DAED'ALUS AND IC'ARUS**

Crēta est īnsula antīqua quae aquā altā magnī maris pulsātur. Ibi ōlim Mīnōs erat rēx. Ad eum vēnit Daedalus quī ex Graeciā patriā fugiēbat. Eum Mīnōs rēx benignis verbīs accēpit et eī domicilium in Crētā dedit. <sup>5</sup>Quō in locō Daedalus sine cūrā vīvebat et rēgī multa et clāra opera faciēbat. Post tempus longum autem Daedalus patriam cāram dēsīderāre incēpit. Domum properāre studēbat, sed rēgī persuādere nōn potuit et mare saevum fugam vetābat.

5. *And in this place*; **quō** does not here introduce a subordinate relative clause, but establishes the connection with the preceding sentence. Such a relative is called a *connecting relative*, and is translated by *and* and a demonstrative or personal pronoun.

## THE FIFTH OR Ē-DECLENSION · THE ABLATIVE OF TIME

**272. Gender.** Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine except **diēs**, *day*, and **merīdiēs**, *midday*, which are usually masculine.

**273. PARADIGMS**

The “Stems” are missing in the printed book. They have been supplied from the inflectional table in the Appendix.

	<b>diēs</b> , m., <i>day</i>	<b>rēs</b> , f. <i>thing</i>	
STEMS	<b>diē-</b>	<b>rē-</b>	
BASES	<b>di-</b>	<b>r-</b>	
		SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>diēī</b>	<b>reī</b>	<b>-ēī</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>diēī</b>	<b>reī</b>	<b>-ēī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>diem</b>	<b>rem</b>	<b>-em</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>diē</b>	<b>rē</b>	<b>-ē</b>
		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>diērum</b>	<b>rērum</b>	<b>-ērum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>diēbus</b>	<b>rēbus</b>	<b>-ēbus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>diēbus</b>	<b>rēbus</b>	<b>-ēbus</b>

1. The vowel **e** which appears in every form is regularly long. It is shortened in the ending **-eī** after a consonant, as in **r-eī**; and before **-m** in the accusative singular, as in **di-em**. (Cf. § 12. 2.)

2. Only **diēs** and **rēs** are complete in the plural. Most other nouns of this declension lack the plural. **Acīēs**, *line of battle*, and **spēs**, *hope*, have the nominative and accusative plural.

**274.** The ablative relation (§ 50) which is expressed by the prepositions *at*, *in*, or *on* may refer not only to place, but also to time, as *at noon*, *in summer*, *on the first day*. The ablative which is used to express this relation is called the *ablative of time*.

**275. RULE. The Ablative of Time.** *The time when or within which anything happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

a. Occasionally the preposition **in** is found. Compare the English *Next day we started* and **On the next day we started**.

**276. EXERCISES**

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 294.

I. *Galba the Farmer.* Galba agricola rūri vivit. Cotīdiē primā lūce labōrāre incipit, nec ante noctem in studiō suō cessat. Merīdiē Iūlia filia eum ad cēnam vocat. Nocte pedēs dēfessōs domum vertit. Aestāte filiī agricolae auxiliū patrī dant. Hieme agricola eōs in lūdum mittit. Ibi magister pueris multās fābulās dē rēbus gestīs Caesaris nārrat. Aestāte filiī agricolae perpetuīs labōribus exercentur nec grave agrī opus est iīs molestum. Galba sine ūllā cūrā vivit nec rēs adversās timet.

II. 1. In that month there were many battles in Gaul. 2. The cavalry of the enemy made an attack upon Cæsar's line of battle. 3. In the first hour of the night the ship was overcome by the billows. 4. On the second day the savages were eager to come under Cæsar's protection. 5. The king had joined battle, moved by the hope of victory. 6. That year a fire destroyed many birds and other animals. 7. We saw blood on the wild beast's teeth.

**277. DAED'ALUS AND IC'ARUS (Continued)**

Tum Daedalus gravibus cūrīs commōtus filiō suō Īcarō ita dixit: “Animus meus, Īcare, est plēnus trīstītiæ nec oculī lacrimīs egent. Discēdere ex Crētā, Athēnās properāre, maximē studeō; sed rēx recusat audire verba mea et omnem reditūs spem eripit. Sed numquam rēbus adversīs vincar. Terra et mare sunt inimīca, sed aliam fugae viam reperiam.” Tum in artīs ignōtās animum dīmittit et mīrum capit cōnsiliū. Nam pennās in ōrdine pōnit et vērās ālās facit.

## PRONOUNS CLASSIFIED · PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

**278.** We have the same kinds of pronouns in Latin as in English. They are divided into the following eight classes:



1. **Personal pronouns**, which show the person speaking, spoken to, or spoken of; as, **ego, I; tū, you; is, he.** (Cf. § 279. etc.)
2. **Possessive pronouns**, which denote possession; as, **meus, tuus, suus,** etc. (Cf. § 98.)
3. **Reflexive pronouns**, used in the predicate to refer back to the subject; as, *he saw himself.* (Cf. § 281.)
4. **Intensive pronouns**, used to emphasize a noun or pronoun; as, *I myself saw it.* (Cf. § 285.)
5. **Demonstrative pronouns**, which point out persons or things; as, **is, this, that.** (Cf. § 112.)
6. **Relative pronouns**, which connect a subordinate adjective clause with an antecedent; as, **quī, who.** (Cf. § 220.)
7. **Interrogative pronouns**, which ask a question; as, **quis, who?** (Cf. § 225.)
8. **Indefinite pronouns**, which point out indefinitely; as, *some one, any one, some, certain ones,* etc. (Cf. § 296.)

**279.** The demonstrative pronoun **is, ea, id,** as we learned in § 115, is regularly used as the personal pronoun of the third person (*he, she, it, they,* etc.).

**280.** The personal pronouns of the first person are **ego, I; nōs, we;** of the second person, **tū, thou or you; vōs, ye or you.** They are declined as follows:

		SINGULAR		
		FIRST PERSON		SECOND PERSON
Nom.	<b>ego, I</b>			<b>tū, you</b>
Gen.	<b>meī, of me</b>			<b>tuī, of you</b>
Dat.	<b>mihi, to or for me</b>			<b>tibi, to or for you</b>
Acc.	<b>mē, me</b>			<b>tē, you</b>
Abl.	<b>mē, with, from, etc., me</b>			<b>tē, with, from, etc., you</b>
		PLURAL		
Nom.	<b>nōs, we</b>			<b>vōs, you</b>
Gen.	<b>nostrum or nostrī, of us</b>			<b>vestrum or vestrī, of you</b>
Dat.	<b>nōbīs, to or for us</b>			<b>vōbīs, to or for you</b>
Acc.	<b>nōs, us</b>			<b>vōs, you</b>
Abl.	<b>nōbīs, with, from, etc., us</b>			<b>vōbīs, with, from, etc., you</b>

1. The personal pronouns are not used in the nominative excepting for emphasis or contrast.

**281. The Reflexive Pronouns.** 1. The personal pronouns **ego** and **tū** may be used in the predicate as reflexives; as,

**videō mē, I see myself**      **vidēmus nōs, we see ourselves**  
**vidēs tē, you see yourself**      **vidētis vōs, you see yourselves**

2. The reflexive pronoun of the third person (*himself, herself, itself, themselves*) has a special form, used only in these senses, and declined alike in the singular and plural.

SINGULAR AND PLURAL			
Gen.	<b>suī</b>	Acc.	<b>sē</b>
Dat.	<b>sibi</b>	Abl.	<b>sē</b>

EXAMPLES

<b>Puer sē videt, the boy sees himself</b> <b>Puella sē videt, the girl sees herself</b> <b>Animal sē videt, the animal sees itself</b> <b>Īī sē vident, they see themselves</b>
---

a. The form **sē** is sometimes doubled, **sēsē**, for emphasis.

3. Give the Latin for

*I teach myself*      *We teach ourselves*  
*You teach yourself*      *You teach yourselves*  
*He teaches himself*      *They teach themselves*

**282.** The preposition **cum**, when used with the ablative of **ego, tū,** or **suī,** is appended to the form, as, **mēcum, with me; tēcum, with you; nōbiscum, with us;** etc.

### 283. EXERCISES

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 294.

I. 1. Mea māter est cāra mihi et tua māter est cāra tibi. 2. Vestrae litterae erant grātae nōbīs et nostrae litterae erant grātae vōbīs. 3. Nūntius rēgis quī nōbiscum est nihil respondēbit. 4. Nūntiū pācem amīcitiāque sibi et suīs sociīs postulāvērunt. 5. Sī tū arma sūmēs, ego rēgnum occupābō. 6. Uter vestrum est cīvis Rōmānus? Neuter nostrum. 7. Eō tempore multī supplicium dedērunt quia rēgnum petierant. 8. Sūme supplicium, Caesar, dē hostibus patriae ācribus. 9. Prīmā lūce aliī metū commōtī sēsē fugae mandāvērunt; aliī autem magnā virtūte impetum exercitūs nostrī

sustinuerunt. 10. Soror regis, ubi de adverso proelio audivit, sese Pompeius interfecit.

II. 1. Whom do you teach? I teach myself. 2. The soldier wounded himself with his sword. 3. The master praises us, but you he does not praise. 4. Therefore he will inflict punishment on you, but we shall not suffer punishment. 5. Who will march (i.e. make a march) with me to Rome? 6. I will march with you to the gates of the city. 7. Who will show us<sup>1</sup> the way? The gods will show you<sup>1</sup> the way.

1. Not accusative.

#### DAEDALUS AND ICARUS (Concluded)

**284.** Puer Icarus unā<sup>2</sup> stābat et mirum patris opus vidēbat. Postquam manus ultima<sup>3</sup> ālis imposita est, Daedalus eās temptāvit et similis avī in aurās volāvit. Tum ālās umeris fili adligāvit et docuit eum volāre et dixit, "Tē vetō, mī fili, adpropinquāre aut solī aut marī. Sī fluctibus adpropinquāveris,<sup>4</sup> aqua ālis tuis nocēbit, et si solī adpropinquāveris,<sup>4</sup> ignis eās cremābit." Tum pater et filius iter difficile incipiunt. Ālās movent et aerae sese committunt. Sed stultus puer verbis patris nōn pāret. Solī adpropinquat. Ālae cremantur et Icarus in mare dēcidit et vitam amittit. Daedalus autem sine ullō periculō trāns fluctūs ad insulam Siciliam volāvit.

2. Adverb, see vocabulary.

3. **manus ultima**, *the finishing touch*. What literally?

4. Future perfect. Translate by the present.

### LESSON L

#### THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN *IPSE* AND THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IDEM*

**285.** **Ipse** means *-self* (*him-self*, *her-self*, etc.) or is translated by *even* or *very*. It is used to emphasize a noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, with which it agrees like an adjective.

a. **Ipse** must be carefully distinguished from the reflexive **suī**. The latter is always used as a pronoun, while **ipse** is regularly adjective. Compare

**Homō sē videt**, *the man sees himself* (reflexive)

**Homō ipse periculum videt**, *the man himself* (intensive) *sees the danger*

**Homō ipsum periculum videt**, *the man sees the danger itself* (intensive)

**286.** Except for the one form **ipse**, the intensive pronoun is declined exactly like the nine irregular adjectives (cf. §§ 108, 109). Learn the declension (§ 481).

**287.** The demonstrative **idem**, meaning *the same*, is a compound of **is**. It is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>idem</b>	<b>e'adem</b>	<b>idem</b>	<b>iī'dem</b> <b>eī'dem</b>	<b>eae'dem</b>	<b>e'adem</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>eius'dem</b>	<b>eius'dem</b>	<b>eius'dem</b>	<b>eōrun'dem</b>	<b>eārun'dem</b>	<b>eōrun'dem</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>eī'dem</b>	<b>eī'dem</b>	<b>eī'dem</b>	<b>iīs'dem</b> <b>eīs'dem</b>	<b>iīs'dem</b> <b>eīs'dem</b>	<b>iīs'dem</b> <b>eīs'dem</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>eun'dem</b>	<b>ean'dem</b>	<b>idem</b>	<b>eōs'dem</b>	<b>eās'dem</b>	<b>e'adem</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>eī'dem</b>	<b>eī'dem</b>	<b>eī'dem</b>	<b>iīs'dem</b> <b>eīs'dem</b>	<b>iīs'dem</b> <b>eīs'dem</b>	<b>iīs'dem</b> <b>eīs'dem</b>

a. From forms like **eundem** (**eum** + **-dem**), **eōrundem** (**eōrum** + **-dem**), we learn the rule that **m** before **d** is changed to **n**.

b. The forms **iīdem**, **iīsdem** are often spelled and pronounced with one **i**.

#### 288. EXERCISES

First learn the **special vocabulary**, p. 295.

I. 1. Ego et tū<sup>1</sup> in eādem urbe vivimus. 2. Iter ipsum nōn timēmus sed ferās saevās quae in silvā dēnsā esse dīcuntur. 3. Ōlim nōs ipsī idem iter fēcimus. 4. Eō tempore multās ferās vīdimus. 5. Sed nōbis nōn nocuērunt. 6. Caesar ipse scūtum de manibus militis eripuit et in ipsam aciem properāvit. 7. Itaque milites summā virtūte tēla in hostium corpora iēcērunt. 8. Rōmānī quoque gravia vulnera accēpērunt. 9. Dēnique hostēs terga vertērunt et ommīs in partīs<sup>2</sup> fūgērunt. 10. Eādem hōrā litterae Rōmam ab imperātōre ipsō missae sunt. 11. Eōdem mēse captivī quoque in Italiam missī sunt. 12. Sed multī propter vulnera iter difficile trāns montis facere recūsābant et Genāvae esse dicēbantur.

1. Observe that in Latin we say *I and you*, not *you and I*.

2. Not *parts*, but *directions*.

II. 1. At Pompeii there is a wonderful mountain. 2. When I was in that place, I myself saw that mountain. 3. On the same day many cities were destroyed by fire and stones from that very mountain. 4. You have not heard the true story of that calamity, have you?<sup>3</sup> 5. On that day the

very sun could not give light to men. 6. You yourself ought to tell (to) us that story.

3. Cf. § 210.

### 289. HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE <sup>4</sup>

Tarquinius Superbus, septimus et ultimus rēx Rōmānōrum, ubi in exsilium ab irātīs Rōmānīs ēiectus est, ā Porsenā, rēge Etrūscōrum, auxilium petiit. Mox Porsena magnīs cum cōpiīs Rōmam vēnit, et ipsa urbs summō in periculō erat. Omnibus in partibus exercitus Rōmānus victus erat. Iam rēx montem Iāniculum <sup>5</sup> occupāverat. Numquam antea Rōmānī tantō metū tenēbantur. Ex agrīs in urbem properābant et summō studiō urbem ipsam mūniēbant.

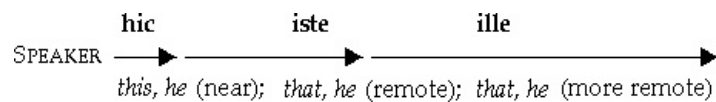
4. The story of Horatius has been made familiar by Macaulay's well-known poem "Horatius" in his *Lays of Ancient Rome*. Read the poem in connection with this selection.

5. The Janiculum is a high hill across the Tiber from Rome.

## LESSON LI

### THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS *HIC, ISTE, ILLE*

290. We have already learned the declension of the demonstrative pronoun **is** and its use. (Cf. Lesson XVII.) That pronoun refers to persons or things either far or near, and makes no definite reference to place or time. If we wish to point out an object definitely in place or time, we must use **hic**, **iste**, or **ille**. These demonstratives, like **is**, are used both as pronouns and as adjectives, and their relation to the speaker may be represented graphically thus:



a. In dialogue **hic** refers to a person or thing near the speaker; **iste**, to a person or thing near the person addressed; **ille**, to a person or thing remote from both. These distinctions are illustrated in the model sentences, § 293, which should be carefully studied and imitated.

291. **Hic** is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>hic</b>	<b>haec</b>	<b>hoc</b>	<b>hī</b>	<b>hae</b>	<b>haec</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>huius</b>	<b>huius</b>	<b>huius</b>	<b>hōrum</b>	<b>hārum</b>	<b>hōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>hunc</b>	<b>hanc</b>	<b>hoc</b>	<b>hōs</b>	<b>hās</b>	<b>haec</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>hāc</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>

a. **Huius** is pronounced *hoŏ'yoŏs*, and **huic** is pronounced *hoŏ'ic* (one syllable).

292. The demonstrative pronouns **iste**, **ista**, **istud**, and **ille**, **illa**, **illud**, except for the nominative and accusative singular neuter forms **istud** and **illud**, are declined exactly like **ipse**, **ipsa**, **ipsum**. (See § 481.)

### 293. MODEL SENTENCES

*Is this horse (of mine) strong?*

**Estne hic equus validus?**

*That horse (of yours) is strong, but that one (yonder) is weak*

**Iste equus est validus, sed ille est infirmus**

*Are these (men by me) your friends?*

**Suntne hī amīcī tuī?**

*Those (men by you) are my friends, but those (men yonder) are enemies*

**Istī sunt amīcī meī, sed illī sunt inimīcī**

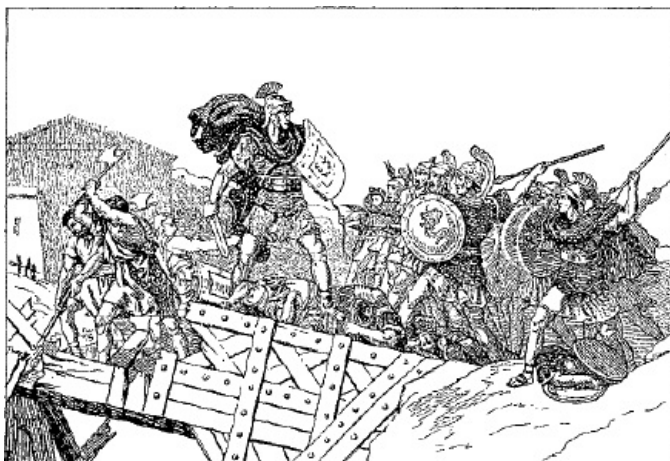
### 294. EXERCISES

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 295.

I. *A German Chieftain addresses his Followers.* Ille fortis Germānōrum dux suōs convocāvit et hōc modō animōs eōrum cōfirmāvit. "Vōs, quī in hīs finibus vīvitis, in hunc locum convocāvi <sup>1</sup> quia mēcum dēbētis istōs agrōs et istās domōs ab iniūriīs Rōmānōrum liberāre. Hoc nōbis nōn difficile erit, quod illī hostēs hās silvās dēnsās, ferās saevās quārum vestigia vident, montēs altōs timent. Sī fortēs erimus, dei ipsī nōbis viam salūtis dēmonstrābunt. Ille sōl, istī oculī calamitātēs nostrās vīdērunt. <sup>1</sup> Itaque nōmen illiūs rei pūblicae Rōmānae nōn sōlum nōbis, sed etiam omnibus hominibus quī libertātem amant, est invīsum. Ad arma vōs vocō. Exercēte istam prīstinam virtūtem et vincētis."

II. 1. Does that bird (of yours) <sup>2</sup> sing? 2. This bird (of mine) <sup>2</sup> sings both <sup>3</sup> in summer and in winter and has a beautiful voice. 3. Those birds (yonder) <sup>2</sup> in the country don't sing in winter. 4. Snatch a spear from the hands of that soldier (near you) <sup>2</sup> and come home with me. 5. With those very eyes (of yours) <sup>2</sup> you will see the tracks of the hateful enemy who burned my dwelling and made an attack on my brother. 6. For (**propter**) these deeds (**rēs**) we ought to inflict punishment on him without delay. 7. The enemies of the republic do not always suffer punishment.

1. The perfect definite. (Cf. § 190.)
2. English words in parentheses are not to be translated. They are inserted to show what demonstratives should be used. (Cf. § 290.)
3. *both ... and, et ... et.*



HORATIUS PONTEM DEFENDIT

**295.** HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE (*Continued*)

Altera urbis pars mūrīs, altera flūmine satis mūnīrī vidēbātur. Sed erat pōns in flūmine quī hostibus iter paene dedit. Tum Horātius Cocles, fortis vir, magnā vōce dīxit, “Rescindite pontem, Rōmānī! Brevī tempore Porsena in urbem cōpiās suās trādūcet.” Iam hostēs in ponte erant, sed Horātius cum duōbus (cf. § 479) comitibus ad extrēmam pontis partem properāvit, et hi sōli aciem hostium sustinuerunt. Tum vērō civēs Rōmānī pontem ā tergō rescindere incipiunt, et hostēs frūstrā Horātium superāre temptant.

LESSON LII

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

**296.** The indefinite pronouns are used to refer to *some person* or *some thing*, without indicating which particular one is meant. The pronouns **quis** and **quī**, which we have learned in their interrogative and relative uses, may also be indefinite; and nearly all the other indefinite pronouns are compounds of **quis** or **quī** and declined almost like them. Review the declension of these words, §§ 221, 227.

**297.** Learn the declension and meaning of the following indefinites:

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
	<b>quis</b>	<b>quid</b> , <i>some one, any one</i> (substantive)
<b>quī</b>	<b>qua</b> or <b>quae</b>	<b>quod</b> , <i>some, any</i> (adjective), § 483
	<b>aliquis</b>	<b>aliquid</b> , <i>some one, any one</i> (substantive), § 487
<b>aliquī</b>	<b>aliqua</b>	<b>aliquid</b> , <i>some, any</i> (adjective), § 487
<b>quīdam</b>	<b>quaedam</b>	<b>quoddam</b> , <b>quiddam</b> , <i>a certain, a certain one</i> , § 485
	<b>quisquam</b>	<b>quicquam</b> or <b>quidquam</b> (no plural), <i>any one (at all)</i> (substantive), § 486
	<b>quisque</b>	<b>quidque</b> , <i>each one, every one</i> (substantive), § 484
<b>quisque</b>	<b>quaque</b>	<b>quodque</b> , <i>each, every</i> (adjective), § 484

Transcriber's Note:

In the original text, the combined forms (masculine/feminine) were printed in the “masculine” column.

NOTE. The meanings of the neuters, *something*, etc., are easily inferred from the masculine and feminine.

a. In the masculine and neuter singular of the indefinites, **quis**-forms and **quid**-forms are mostly used as substantives, **quī**-forms and **quod**-forms as adjectives.

b. The indefinites **quis** and **quī** never stand first in a clause, and are rare excepting after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, **num** (as, **sī quis**, *if any one*; **sī quid**, *if anything*; **nisi quis**, *unless some one*). Generally **aliquis** and **aliquī** are used instead.

c. The forms **qua** and **aliqua** are both feminine nominative singular and neuter nominative plural of the indefinite adjectives **quī** and **aliquī** respectively. How do these differ from the corresponding forms of the relative **quī**?

d. Observe that **quīdam** (**quī** + **-dam**) is declined like **quī**, except that in the accusative singular and genitive plural **m** of **quī** becomes **n** (cf. § 287. a): **quendam, quandam, quōrundam, quārundam**; also that the neuter has **quiddam** (substantive) and **quoddam** (adjective) in the nominative and accusative singular. **Quīdam** is the least indefinite of the indefinite pronouns, and implies that you could name the person or thing referred to if you cared to do so.

e. **Quisquam** and **quisque** (substantive) are declined like **quis**.

f. **Quisquam**, *any one* (**quicquam** or **quidquam**, *anything*), is always used substantively and chiefly in negative sentences. The corresponding adjective *any* is **ūllus, -a, -um** (§ 108).

## 298. EXERCISES

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 295.

I. 1. Aliquis dē ponte in flūmen dēcidit sed sine ūllō periculō servātus est. 2. Est vērō in vītā cuiusque hominis aliqua bona fortūna. 3. Nē militum quidem<sup>1</sup> quisquam in castrīs mānsit. 4. Sī quem meae domī vidēs, iubē eum discēdere. 5. Sī quis pontem tenet, nē tantus quidem exercitus capere urbem potest. 6. Urbs nōn satis mūnīta erat et merīdiē rēx quīdam paene cōpiās suās trāns pontem trādūxerat. 7. Dēnique mīles quīdam armātus in fluctūs dēsiluit et incolumis ad alteram rīpam oculōs vertit. 8. Quisque illī fortī mīlitī aliquid dare dēbet. 9. Tanta vērō virtūs Rōmānis semper placuit. 10. Ōlim Corinthus erat urbs satis magna et paene par Rōmae ipsī; nunc vērō moenia dēcidērunt et pauca vestīgia urbis illius reperīri possunt. 11. Quisque libertātem amat, et aliquibus vērō nōmen rēgis est invīsum.

II. 1. If you see a certain Cornelius at Corinth, send him to me. 2. Almost all the soldiers who fell down into the waves were unharmed. 3. Not even at Pompeii did I see so great a fire. 4. I myself was eager to tell something to some one. 5. Each one was praising his own work. 6. Did you see some one in the country? I did not see any one. 7. Unless some one will remain on the bridge with Horatius, the commonwealth will be in the greatest danger.

1. Observe that **quīdam** and **quidem** are different words.

## 299. HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE (*Concluded*)

Mox, ubi parva pars pontis mānsit, Horātius iussit comitēs discēdere et sōlus mīrā cōstantiā impetum illius tōtius exercitūs sustinēbat. Dēnique magnō fragōre pōns in flūmen dēcidit. Tum vērō Horātius tergum vertit et armātus in aquās dēsiluit. In eum hostēs multa tēla iēcērunt; incolumis autem per fluctūs ad alteram rīpam trānāvit. Eī propter tantās rēs gestās populus Rōmānus nōn solum alia magna praemia dedit sed etiam statuam Horāti in locō públicō posuit.

---

## Sixth Review, Lessons XLV-LII, §§ 521-523

---

### LESSON LIII

#### REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

**300.** The quality denoted by an adjective may exist in either a higher or a lower degree, and this is expressed by a form of inflection called comparison. The mere presence of the quality is expressed by the positive degree, its presence in a higher or lower degree by the comparative, and in the highest or lowest of all by the superlative. In English the usual way of comparing an adjective is by using the suffix *-er* for the comparative and *-est* for the superlative; as, positive *high*, comparative *higher*, superlative *highest*. Less frequently we use the adverbs *more* and *most*; as, positive *beautiful*, comparative *more beautiful*, superlative *most beautiful*.

In Latin, as in English, adjectives are compared by adding suffixes or by using adverbs.

**301.** Adjectives are compared by using suffixes as follows:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<b>clārus, -a, -um</b> ( <i>bright</i> ) (BASE <b>clār-</b> )	<b>clārīor, clārīus</b> ( <i>brighter</i> )	<b>clārīssimus, -a, -um</b> ( <i>brightest</i> )
<b>brevīs, brevis</b> ( <i>short</i> ) (BASE <b>brev-</b> )	<b>brevīor, brevīus</b> ( <i>shorter</i> )	<b>brevīssimus, -a, -um</b> ( <i>shortest</i> )
<b>vēlōx</b> ( <i>swift</i> ) (BASE <b>veloc-</b> )	<b>vēlōcīor, vēlōcīus</b> ( <i>swifter</i> )	<b>vēlōcīssimus, -a, -um</b> ( <i>swiftest</i> )

a. The comparative is formed from the base of the positive by adding **-ior** masc. and fem., and **-ius** neut.; the superlative by adding **-issimus, -issima, -issimum**.

**302.** Less frequently adjectives are compared by using the adverbs **magis**, *more*; **maximē**, *most*; as, **idōneus**, *suitable*; **magis idōneus**, *more suitable*; **maximē idōneus**, *most suitable*.

**303. Declension of the Comparative.** Adjectives of the comparative degree are declined as follows:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>clārior</b>	<b>clārius</b>	<b>clāriōrēs</b>	<b>clāriōra</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>clāriōris</b>	<b>clāriōris</b>	<b>clāriōrum</b>	<b>clāriōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>clāriōrī</b>	<b>clāriōrī</b>	<b>clāriōribus</b>	<b>clāriōribus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>clāriōrem</b>	<b>clārius</b>	<b>clāriōrēs</b>	<b>clāriōra</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>clāriōre</b>	<b>clāriōre</b>	<b>clāriōribus</b>	<b>clāriōribus</b>

a. Observe that the endings are those of the consonant stems of the third declension.

b. Compare **longus**, *long*; **fortis**, *brave*; **recēns** (base, **recent-**), *recent*; and decline the comparative of each.

**304.** Adjectives in **-er** form the comparative regularly, but the superlative is formed by adding **-rimus**, **-a**, **-um** to the nominative masculine of the positive; as,

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<b>ācer, ācris, ācre</b> (Base <b>acr-</b> )	<b>ācrior, ācrius</b>	<b>ācerrimus, -a, -um</b>
<b>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum</b> (Base <b>pulchr-</b> )	<b>pulchrior, pulchrius</b>	<b>pulcherrimus, -a, -um</b>
<b>liber, libera, liberum</b> (Base <b>liber-</b> )	<b>liberior, liberius</b>	<b>liberrimus, -a, -um</b>

a. In a similar manner compare **miser**, **aeger**, **crēber**.

**305.** The comparative is often translated by *quite*, *too*, or *somewhat*, and the superlative by *very*; as, **altior**, *quite (too, somewhat) high*; **altissimus**, *very high*.

### 306. EXERCISES

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 296.

I. 1. Quid explorātōrēs quaerēbant? Explorātōrēs tempus oportūnissimum itinerī quaerēbant. 2. Mediā in silvā ignīs quam crēberrimōs fēcimus, quod ferās tam audācis numquam antea viderāmus. 3. Antīquis temporibus Germānī erant fortiōrēs quam Gallī. 4. Caesar erat clārior quam inimīcī<sup>1</sup> quī eum necāvērunt. 5. Quisque scūtum ingēns et pīlum longius gerēbat. 6. Apud barbarōs Germānī erant audācissimī et fortissimī. 7. Mēns hominum est celerior quam corpus. 8. Virī aliquārum terrārum sunt miserrimī. 9. Corpora Germānōrum erant ingentiōra quam Rōmānōrum. 10. Ācerrimī Gallōrum prīcipēs sine ūllā morā trāns flūmen quoddam equōs vēlōcissimōs trādūxērunt. 11. Aestāte diēs sunt longiōrēs quam hieme. 12. Imperātor quīdam ab explorātōribus dē recentī adventū nāvium longārum quaesivit.

II. 1. Of all birds the eagle is the swiftest. 2. Certain animals are swifter than the swiftest horse. 3. The Roman name was most hateful to the enemies of the commonwealth. 4. The Romans always inflicted the severest<sup>2</sup> punishment on faithless allies. 5. I was quite ill, and so I hastened from the city to the country. 6. Marcus had some friends dearer than Cæsar.<sup>3</sup> 7. Did you not seek a more recent report concerning the battle? 8. Not even after a victory so opportune did he seek the general's friendship.

1. Why is this word used instead of **hostēs**?

2. Use the superlative of **gravis**.

3. Accusative. In a comparison the noun after **quam** is in the same case as the one before it.

N.B. Beginning at this point, the [selections for reading](#) will be found near the end of the volume. (See p. 197.)

## LESSON LIV

### IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES · THE ABLATIVE WITH COMPARATIVES WITHOUT *QUAM*

**307.** The following six adjectives in **-lis** form the comparative regularly; but the superlative is formed by adding **-limus** to the base of the positive. Learn the meanings and comparison.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<b>facilis, -e</b> , <i>easy</i>	<b>facilior, -ius</b>	<b>facillimus, -a, -um</b>
<b>difficilis, -e</b> , <i>hard</i>	<b>difficilior, -ius</b>	<b>difficillimus, -a, -um</b>
<b>similis, -e</b> , <i>like</i>	<b>similior, -ius</b>	<b>simillimus, -a, -um</b>
<b>dissimilis, -e</b> , <i>unlike</i>	<b>dissimilior, -ius</b>	<b>dissimillimus, -a, -um</b>
<b>gracilis, -e</b> , <i>slender</i>	<b>gracilior, -ius</b>	<b>gracillimus, -a, -um</b>
<b>humilis, -e</b> , <i>low</i>	<b>humilior, -ius</b>	<b>humillimus, -a, -um</b>

**308.** From the knowledge gained in the preceding lesson we should translate the sentence *Nothing is brighter than the sun*

**Nihil est clārius quam sōl**

But the Romans, especially in negative sentences, often expressed the comparison in this way,

## Nihil est clārius sōle

which, literally translated, is *Nothing is brighter away from the sun*; that is, *starting from the sun as a standard, nothing is brighter*. This relation is expressed by the separative ablative **sōle**. Hence the rule

**309. RULE. Ablative with Comparatives.** *The comparative degree, if **quam** is omitted, is followed by the separative ablative.*

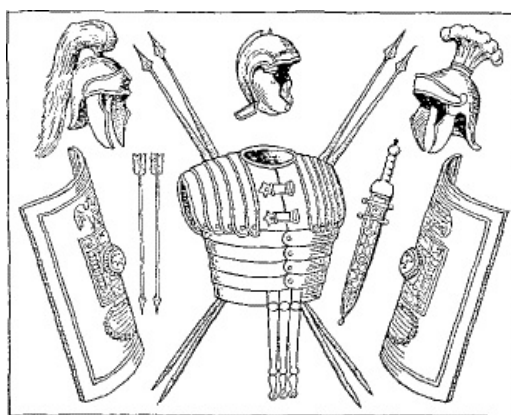
### 310. EXERCISES

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 296.

I. 1. Nēmō militēs alacriōrēs Rōmānīs vīdit. 2. Statim imperātor iussit nūntiōs quam celerrimōs litterās Rōmam portāre. 3. Multa flūmina sunt lēniōra Rhēnō. 4. Apud Rōmanōs quis erat clārior Caesare? 5. Nihil pulchrius urbe Rōmā vīdī. 6. Subitō multitūdo audacissima magnō clamōre proelium ācrius commisit. 7. Num est equus tuus tardus? Nōn vērō tardus, sed celerior aquilā. 8. Ubi Romae fuī, nēmō erat mihi amicior Sextō. 9. Quaedam mulierēs cibum militibus dare cupivērunt. 10. Rēx vetuit cīvis ex urbe noctū discēdere. 11. Ille puer est gracilior hāc muliere. 12. Explōrātor duās (*two*) viās, alteram facilem, alteram difficiliōrem, dēmōstrāvit.

II. 1. What city have you seen more beautiful than Rome? 2. The Gauls were not more eager than the Germans. 3. The eagle is not slower than the horse. 4. The spirited woman did not fear to make the journey by night. 5. The mind of the multitude was quite gentle and friendly. 6. But the king's mind was very different. 7. The king was not like (similar to) his noble father. 8. These hills are lower than the huge mountains of our territory.

[Reading Selection](#)



ARMA ROMANA

## LESSON LV

### IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*Continued*)

**311.** Some adjectives in English have irregular comparison, as *good, better, best; many, more, most*. So Latin comparison presents some irregularities. Among the adjectives that are compared irregularly are

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<b>bonus, -a, -um, good</b>	<b>melior, melius</b>	<b>optimus, -a, -um</b>
<b>magnus, -a, -um, great</b>	<b>maior, maius</b>	<b>maximus, -a, -um</b>
<b>malus, -a, -um, bad</b>	<b>peior, peius</b>	<b>pessimus, -a, -um</b>
<b>multus, -a, -um, much</b>	—, <b>plūs</b>	<b>plūrimus, -a, -um</b>
<b>multi, -ae, -a, many</b>	<b>plūrēs, plūra</b>	<b>plūrimī, -ae, -a</b>
<b>parvus, -a, -um, small</b>	<b>minor, minus</b>	<b>minimus, -a, -um</b>

**312.** The following four adjectives have two superlatives. Unusual forms are placed in parentheses.

<b>exterus, -a, -um, outward</b>	<b>(exterior, -ius, outer)</b>	<b>extrēmus, -a, -um</b> <b>(extimus, -a, -um)</b>	<i>outermost, last</i>
<b>īferus, -a, -um, low</b>	<b>īferior, -ius, lower</b>	<b>īfimus, -a, -um</b> <b>imus, -a, -um</b>	<i>lowest</i>
<b>posterus, -a, -um, next</b>	<b>(posterior, -ius, later)</b>	<b>postrēmus, -a, -um</b> <b>(postumus, -a, -um)</b>	<i>last</i>
<b>superus, -a, -um, above</b>	<b>superior, -ius, higher</b>	<b>suprēmus, -a, -um</b> <b>summus, -a, -um</b>	<i>highest</i>

**313. Plūs, more** (plural *more, many, several*), is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	---	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i>	---	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i>	---	---	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i>	---	plūs	plūrīs, -ēs	plūra
<i>Abl.</i>	---	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

a. In the singular **plūs** is used only as a neuter substantive.

### 314. EXERCISES

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 296.

I. 1. Reliqui hostēs, qui ā dextrō cornū proelium commiserant, dē superiōre locō fūgērunt et sēsē in silvam maximam recēpērunt. 2. In extrēmā parte silvae castra hostium posita erant. 3. Plūrimī captīvī ab equitibus ad Caesarem ductī sunt. 4. Caesar vērō iussit eōs in servitūtem trādī. 5. Posterō diē magna multitudō mulierum ab Rōmānīs in valle imā reperta est. 6. Hae mulierēs maximē perterritae adventū Caesaris sēsē occidere studēbant. 7. Eae quoque plūris fābulās dē exercitūs Rōmānī sceleribus audiverant. 8. Fāma illōrum militum optima nōn erat. 9. In barbarōrum aedificiīs maior cōpia frūmentī reperta est. 10. Nēmō crēbrīs proeliīs contendere sine aliquō periculō potest.

II. 1. The remaining women fled from their dwellings and hid themselves. 2. They were terrified and did not wish to be captured and given over into slavery. 3. Nothing can be worse than slavery. 4. Slavery is worse than death. 5. In the Roman empire a great many were killed because they refused to be slaves. 6. To surrender the fatherland is the worst crime.

[Reading Selection](#)

## LESSON LVI

### IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*Concluded*) · ABLATIVE OF THE MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE

**315.** The following adjectives are irregular in the formation of the superlative and have no positive. Forms rarely used are in parentheses.

COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<b>citerior</b> , <i>hither</i>	( <b>citimus</b> , <i>hithermost</i> )
<b>interior</b> , <i>inner</i>	( <b>intimus</b> , <i>inmost</i> )
<b>prior</b> , <i>former</i>	<b>prīmus</b> , <i>first</i>
<b>propior</b> , <i>nearer</i>	<b>proximus</b> , <i>next, nearest</i>
<b>ulterior</b> , <i>further</i>	<b>ultimus</b> , <i>furthest</i>

**316.** In the sentence *Galba is a head taller than Sextus*, the phrase *a head taller* expresses the **measure of difference** in height between Galba and Sextus. The Latin form of expression would be *Galba is taller than Sextus by a head*. This is clearly an ablative relation, and the construction is called the **ablative of the measure of difference**.

EXAMPLES	<b>Galba est altior capite quam Sextus</b>
	<i>Galba is a head taller (taller by a head) than Sextus.</i>
	<b>Illud iter ad Italiam est multō brevius</b>
	<i>That route to Italy is much shorter (shorter by much)</i>

**317. RULE. Ablative of the Measure of Difference.** *With comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the measure of difference.*

a. Especially common in this construction are the neuter ablatives

**eō**, *by this, by that*  
**hōc**, *by this*  
**multō**, *by much*  
**nihilō**,<sup>1</sup> *by nothing*  
**paulō**, *by a little*

1. **nihil** was originally **nihilum** and declined like **pilum**. There is no plural.

### 318. EXERCISES

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 297.

I. 1. Barbarī proelium committere statuērunt eō magis quod Rōmānī infirmī esse vidēbantur. 2. Meum cōsiliū est multō melius quam tuum quia multō facilius est. 3. Haec via est multō lātior quam illa. 4. Barbarī erant nihilō tardiōrēs quam Rōmānī. 5. Tuus equus est paulō celerior quam meus. 6. Iī qui paulō fortiōrēs erant prohibuērunt reliquōs aditum relinquere. 7. Inter illās



civitatēs Germānia militēs habet optimōs. 8. Propior via quae per hanc vallem dūcit est inter portum et lacum. 9. Servī, quī agrōs citeriōrēs incolēbant, priōrēs dominōs relinquere nōn cupivērunt, quod eōs amābant. 10. Ultimaē Germāniae partēs numquam in fidem Rōmānōrum vēnērunt. 11. Nam trāns Rhēnum aditus erat multō difficiliōr exercituī Rōmānō.

II. 1. Another way much more difficult (more difficult by much) was left through hither Gaul. 2. In ancient times no state was stronger than the Roman empire. 3. The states of further Gaul did not wish to give hostages to Cæsar. 4. Slavery is no better (better by nothing) than death. 5. The best citizens are not loved by the worst. 6. The active enemy immediately withdrew into the nearest forest, for they were terrified by Cæsar's recent victories.

### Reading Selection

## LESSON LVII

### FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

**319.** Adverbs are generally derived from adjectives, as in English (e.g. adj. *sweet*, adv. *sweetly*). Like adjectives, they can be compared; but they have no declension.

**320.** Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declensions are formed and compared as follows:

	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
Adj.	<b>cārus</b> , <i>dear</i>	<b>cārior</b>	<b>cārissimus</b>
Adv.	<b>cārē</b> , <i>dearly</i>	<b>cārius</b>	<b>cārissimē</b>
Adj.	<b>pulcher</b> , <i>beautiful</i>	<b>pulchrior</b>	<b>pulcherrimus</b>
Adv.	<b>pulchrē</b> , <i>beautifully</i>	<b>pulchrius</b>	<b>pulcherrimē</b>
Adj.	<b>liber</b> , <i>free</i>	<b>liberior</b>	<b>liberrimus</b>
Adv.	<b>liberē</b> , <i>freely</i>	<b>liberius</b>	<b>liberrimē</b>

a. The positive of the adverb is formed by adding **-ē** to the base of the positive of the adjective. The superlative of the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective in the same way.

b. The comparative of any adverb is the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of the adjective.

**321.** Adverbs derived from adjectives of the third declension are formed like those described above in the comparative and superlative. The positive is usually formed by adding **-iter** to the base of adjectives of three endings or of two endings, and **-ter** to the base of those of one ending;<sup>1</sup> as,

	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
Adj.	<b>fortis</b> , <i>brave</i>	<b>fortior</b>	<b>fortissimus</b>
Adv.	<b>fortiter</b> , <i>bravely</i>	<b>fortius</b>	<b>fortissimē</b>
Adj.	<b>audāx</b> , <i>bold</i>	<b>audācior</b>	<b>audācissimus</b>
Adv.	<b>audācter</b> , <i>boldly</i>	<b>audācius</b>	<b>audācissimē</b>

1. This is a good working rule, though there are some exceptions to it.

**322. Case Forms as Adverbs.** As we learned above, the neuter accusative of comparatives is used adverbially. So in the positive or superlative some adjectives, instead of following the usual formation, use the accusative or the ablative singular neuter adverbially; as,

Adj.	<b>facilis</b> , <i>easy</i>	<b>p̄rimus</b> , <i>first</i>
Adv.	<b>facile</b> (acc.), <i>easily</i>	<b>p̄rimum</b> (acc.), <i>first</i> <b>p̄rimō</b> (abl.), <i>at first</i>
Adj.	<b>multus</b> , <i>many</i>	<b>pl̄rimus</b> , <i>most</i>
Adv.	<b>multum</b> (acc.), <i>much</i> <b>multō</b> (abl.), <i>by much</i>	<b>pl̄rimum</b> (acc.), <i>most</i>

**323.** Learn the following irregular comparisons:

<b>bene</b> , <i>well</i>	<b>melius</b> , <i>better</i>	<b>optimē</b> , <i>best</i>
<b>diū</b> , <i>long</i> (time)	<b>diūtius</b> , <i>longer</i>	<b>diūtissimē</b> , <i>longest</i>
<b>magnopere</b> , <i>greatly</i>	<b>magis</b> , <i>more</i>	<b>maximē</b> , <i>most</i>
<b>parum</b> , <i>little</i>	<b>minus</b> , <i>less</i>	<b>minimē</b> , <i>least</i>
<b>prope</b> , <i>nearly, near</i>	<b>propius</b> , <i>nearer</i>	<b>proximē</b> , <i>nearest</i>
<b>saepe</b> , <i>often</i>	<b>saepius</b> , <i>oftener</i>	<b>saepissimē</b> , <i>oftenest</i>

**324.** Form adverbs from the following adjectives, using the regular rules, and compare them: **laetus**, **superbus**, **molestus**, **amicus**, **ācer**, **brevis**, **gravis**, **recēns**.

**325. RULE. Adverbs.** *Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.*

**326. EXERCISES**

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 297.

I. 1. Nūlla rēs melius gesta est quam proelium illud<sup>2</sup> ubi Marius multō minōre exercitū multō maiōrēs cōpiās Germānōrum in fugam dedit. 2. Audācter in Rōmānōrum cohortīs hostēs impetūs fēcērunt 3. Marius autem omnēs hōs fortissimē sustinuit. 4. Barbarī nihilō fortiōrēs erant quam Rōmānī. 5. Primō barbarī esse superiōrēs vidēbantur, tum Rōmānī ācrius contendērunt. 6. Dēnique, ubi iam diūtissimē paene aequō proeliō pugnātum est, barbarī fugam petiērunt. 7. Quaedam Germānōrum gentēs, simul atque rūmōrem illius calamitātis audivērunt, sēsē in ultimīs regiōnibus finium suōrum abdidērunt. 8. Rōmānī saepius quam hostēs vicērunt, quod meliōra arma habēbant. 9. Inter omnīs gentīs Rōmānī plūrimum valēbant. 10. Hae cohortēs simul atque in aequiōrem regiōnem sē recēpērunt, castra sine ūllā difficultāte posuērunt.

II. 1. Some nations are easily overcome by their enemies. 2. Germany is much larger than Gaul. 3. Were not the Romans the most powerful among the tribes of Italy? 4. On account of (his) wounds the soldier dragged his body from the ditch with the greatest difficulty. 5. He was able neither to run nor to fight. 6. Who saved him? A certain horseman boldly undertook the matter. 7. The rumors concerning the soldier's death were not true.

2. **ille** standing after its noun means *that well-known, that famous*.

### Reading Selection

## LESSON LVIII

### NUMERALS · THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE

327. The Latin numeral adjectives may be classified as follows:

1. **Cardinal Numerals**, answering the question *how many?* as, **ūnus**, *one*; **duo**, *two*; etc.
2. **Ordinal Numerals**, derived in most cases from the cardinals and answering the question *in what order?* as, **prīmus**, *first*; **secundus**, *second*; etc.
3. **Distributive Numerals**, answering the question *how many at a time?* as, **singulī**, *one at a time*.

328. **The Cardinal Numerals.** The first twenty of the cardinals are as follows:

1, <b>ūnus</b>	6, <b>sex</b>	11, <b>ūndecim</b>	16, <b>sēdecim</b>
2, <b>duo</b>	7, <b>septem</b>	12, <b>duodecim</b>	17, <b>septendecim</b>
3, <b>trēs</b>	8, <b>octō</b>	13, <b>tredecim</b>	18, <b>duodēvigintī</b>
4, <b>quattuor</b>	9, <b>novem</b>	14, <b>quattuordecim</b>	19, <b>ūndēvigintī</b>
5, <b>quīnque</b>	10, <b>decem</b>	15, <b>quīndecim</b>	20, <b>vīgintī</b>

a. Learn also **centum** = 100, **ducentī** = 200, **mille** = 1000.

329. **Declension of the Cardinals.** Of the cardinals only **ūnus**, **duo**, **trēs**, the hundreds above one hundred, and **mille** used as a noun, are declinable.

a. **ūnus** is one of the nine irregular adjectives, and is declined like **nūllus** (cf. §§ 109, 470). The plural of **ūnus** is used to agree with a plural noun of a singular meaning, as, **ūna castra**, *one camp*; and with other nouns in the sense of *only*, as, **Gallī ūnī**, *only the Gauls*.

b. Learn the declension of **duo**, *two*; **trēs**, *three*; and **mille**, *a thousand*. (§ 479.)

c. The hundreds above one hundred are declined like the plural of **bonus**; as,

ducentī, **-ae, -a**  
ducentōrum, **-ārum, -ōrum**  
etc. etc. etc.

330. We have already become familiar with sentences like the following:

**Omnium avium aquila est vĕlōcissima**  
*Of all birds the eagle is the swiftest*  
**Hoc ōrāculum erat omnium clārissimum**  
*This oracle was the most famous of all*

In such sentences the genitive denotes the whole, and the word it modifies denotes a part of that whole. Such a genitive, denoting the whole of which a part is taken, is called a **partitive genitive**.

331. **RULE. Partitive Genitive.** *Words denoting a part are often used with the genitive of the whole, known as the **partitive genitive**.*

a. Words denoting a part are especially pronouns, numerals, and other adjectives. But cardinal numbers excepting **mille** regularly take the ablative with **ex** or **dē** instead of the partitive genitive.

b. **Mille**, *a thousand*, in the singular is usually an indeclinable adjective (as, **mille militēs**, *a thousand soldiers*), but in the plural it is a declinable noun and takes the partitive genitive (as, **decem milia militum**, *ten thousand soldiers*).

EXAMPLES:

**Fortissimī hōrum sunt Germānī**  
*The bravest of these are the Germans*  
**Decem milia hostium interfecta sunt**  
*Ten thousand (lit. thousands) of the enemy were slain*  
**Ūna ex captivīs erat soror rēgis**  
*One of the captives was the king's sister*

### 332. EXERCISES

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 297.

I. 1. Caesar maximam partem aedificiōrum incendit. 2. Magna pars mūnitiōnis aquā flūminis dēlēta est. 3. Gallī huius regiōnis quīnque milia hominum coēgerant. 4. Duo ex meis frātribus eundem rūmōrem audivērunt. 5. Quis Rōmānōrum erat clarior Caesare? 6. Quīnque cohortēs ex illā legiōne castra quam fortissimē dēfendēbant. 7. Hic locus aberat aequō spatiō<sup>1</sup> ab castrīs Caesaris et castrīs Germānōrum. 8. Caesar simul atque pervēnit, plūs commeātūs ab sociīs postulāvit. 9. Nōne mercātōrēs magnitudinem insulae cognōverant? Longitudinem sed nōn lātitudinem cognōverant. 10. Paucī hostium obtinēbant collem quem explōrātōrēs nostrī vīdērunt.

II. 1. I have two brothers, and one of them lives at Rome. 2. Cæsar stormed that very town with three legions. 3. In one hour he destroyed a great part of the fortification. 4. When the enemy could no longer<sup>2</sup> defend the gates, they retreated to a hill which was not far distant.<sup>3</sup> 5. There three thousand of them bravely resisted the Romans.<sup>4</sup>

1. Ablative of the measure of difference.
2. Not **longius**. Why?
3. Latin, *was distant by a small space*.
4. Not the accusative.

### Reading Selection

## LESSON LIX

### NUMERALS (*Continued*) · THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT

**333.** Learn the first twenty of the ordinal numerals (§ 478). The ordinals are all declined like **bonus**.

**334.** The distributive numerals are declined like the plural of **bonus**. The first three are

**singulī, -ae, -a, one each, one by one**  
**binī, -ae, -a, two each, two by two**  
**ternī, -ae, -a, three each, three by three**

**335.** We have learned that, besides its use as object, the accusative is used to express space relations not covered by the ablative. We have had such expressions as **per plūrimōs annōs**, *for a great many years*; **per tōtum diem**, *for a whole day*. Here the space relation is one of *extent of time*. We could also say **per decem pedēs**, *for ten feet*, where the space relation is one of *extent of space*. While this is correct Latin, the usual form is to use the accusative with no preposition, as,

**Vir tōtum diem cucurrit**, *the man ran for a whole day*  
**Caesar mūrum decem pedēs mōvit**, *Cæsar moved the wall ten feet*

**336. RULE. Accusative of Extent.** *Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.*

- a. This accusative answers the questions *how long? how far?*
- b. Distinguish carefully between the accusative of time *how long* and the ablative of time *when*, or *within which*.

Select the accusatives of time and space and the ablatives of time in the following:

When did the general arrive? He arrived at two o'clock. How long had he been marching? For four days. How far did he march? He marched sixty-five miles. Where has he pitched his camp? Three miles from the river, and he will remain there several days. The wall around the camp is ten feet high. When did the war begin? In the first year after the king's death.

### 337. EXERCISES

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 298.

I. *Cæsar in Gaul.* Caesar bellum in Gallia septem annōs gessit. Primō annō Helvētiōs vīcit, et eōdem annō multae Germanōrum gentēs eī sēsē dēdidērunt. Multōs iam annōs Germānī Gallōs vexabant<sup>1</sup> et ducēs Germānī cōpiās suās trāns Rhēnum saepe trādūcēbant.<sup>1</sup> Nōn singulī veniēbant, sed multa milia hominum in Galliam contendēbant. Quā dē causā principēs Galliae concilium convocāvērunt atque statuērunt legates ad Caesarem mittere. Caesar, simul atque hunc rūmōrem audīvit, cōpiās suās sine morā coēgit. Primā lūce fortiter cum Germanīs proelium commisit. Tōtum diem ācritē pugnātum est. Caesar ipse ā dextrō cornū acicm dūxit. Magna pars exercitūs Germānī cecidit. Post magnam caedem paucī multa milia passuum ad flūmen fūgērunt.

II. 1. Cæsar pitched camp two miles from the river. 2. He fortified the camp with a ditch fifteen feet wide and a rampart nine feet high. 3. The camp of the enemy was a great way off (was distant by a great space). 4. On the next day he hastened ten miles in three hours. 5. Suddenly the enemy with all their forces made an attack upon (*in with acc.*) the rear. 6. For two hours the Romans were hard pressed by the barbarians. 7. In three hours the barbarians were fleeing.

1. Translate as if pluperfect.

## Reading Selection

### LESSON LX

#### DEPONENT VERBS

**338.** A number of verbs are passive in form but active in meaning; as, **hortor**, *I encourage*; **vereor**, *I fear*. Such verbs are called **deponent** because they have laid aside (**dē-pōnere**, *to lay aside*) the active forms.

a. Besides having all the forms of the passive, deponent verbs have also the future active infinitive and a few other active forms which will be noted later. (Sec §§ 375, 403.b.)

**339.** The principal parts of deponents are of course passive in form, as,

<i>Conj. I</i>	<b>hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, encourage</b>
<i>Conj. II</i>	<b>vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear</b>
<i>Conj. III (a)</i>	<b>sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow</b>
	<i>(b)</i> <b>patior, patī, passus sum, suffer, allow</b>
<i>Conj. IV</i>	<b>partior, partīrī, partītus sum, share, divide</b>

Learn the synopses of these verbs. (See § 493.) **Patior** is conjugated like the passive of **capiō** (§ 492).

#### 340. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

The prepositions with the accusative that occur most frequently are

<b>ante</b> , <i>before</i>	<b>intrā</b> , <i>within</i>
<b>apud</b> , <i>among</i>	<b>ob</b> , <i>on account of (quam ob rem, wherefore, therefore)</i>
<b>circum</b> , <i>around</i>	<b>per</b> , <i>through, by means of</i>
<b>contrā</b> , <i>against, contrary to</i>	<b>post</b> , <i>after, behind</i>
<b>extrā</b> , <i>outside of</i>	<b>propter</b> , <i>on account of, because of</i>
<b>in</b> , <i>into, in, against, upon</i>	<b>trāns</b> , <i>across, over</i>
<b>inter</b> , <i>between, among</i>	

a. Most of these you have had before. Review the old ones and learn the new ones. Review the list of prepositions governing the ablative, § 209.

#### 341. EXERCISES

First learn the [special vocabulary](#), p. 298.

I. 1. Trēs ex lēgātīs, contrā Caesaris opiniōnem, iter facere per hostium finis verēbantur. 2. Quis eōs hortātus est? Imperātor eōs hortātus est et iīs persuādere cōnātus est, sed nōn potuit. 3. Quid lēgātōs perterruit? Aut timor hostium, quī undique premēbant, aut longitūdō viae eōs perterruit. 4. Tamen omnēs ferē Caesarem multō magis quam hostīs veritī sunt. 5. Fortissimae gentēs Galliae ex Germānīs oriēbantur. 6. Quam ob rem tam fortēs erant? Quia nec vīnum nec alia quae virtūtem dēlent ad sē portārī patiēbantur. 7. Caesar ex mercātōribus dē īnsulā Britannīā quaesīvit, sed nihil cognōscere potuit. 8. Itaque ipse statuit hanc terram petere, et mediā ferē aestāte cum multīs nāvibus longīs profectus est. 9. Magnā celeritāte iter confēcit et in opportūnissimō locō ēgressus est. 10. Barbarī summīs vīribus eum ab īnsulā prohibēre cōnātī sunt. 11. Ille autem barbarōs multa mīlia passuum īsecūtus est; tamen sine equitātū eōs cōnsequī nōn potuit.

II. 1. Contrary to our expectation, the enemy fled and the cavalry followed close after them. 2. From all parts of the multitude the shouts arose of those who were being wounded. 3. Cæsar did not allow the cavalry to pursue too far.<sup>1</sup> 4. The cavalry set out at the first hour and was returning<sup>2</sup> to camp at the fourth hour. 5. Around the Roman camp was a rampart twelve feet high. 6. Cæsar will delay three days because of the grain supply. 7. Nearly all the lieutenants feared the enemy and attempted to delay the march.

1. Comparative of **longē**.

2. Will this be a deponent or an active form?



## PART III

### CONSTRUCTIONS

#### INTRODUCTORY NOTE

The preceding part of this book has been concerned chiefly with forms and vocabulary. There remain still to be learned the forms of the Subjunctive Mood, the Participles, and the Gerund of the regular verb, and the conjugation of the commoner irregular verbs. These will be taken up in connection with the study of constructions, which will be the chief subject of our future work. The special vocabularies of the preceding lessons contain, exclusive of proper names, about six hundred words. As these are among the commonest words in the language, *they must be mastered*. They properly form the basis of the study of words, and will be reviewed and used with but few additions in the remaining lessons.

For practice in reading and to illustrate the constructions presented, a continued story has been prepared and may be begun at this point (see p. 204). It has been divided into chapters of convenient length to accompany progress through the lessons, but may be read with equal profit after the lessons are finished. The story gives an account of the life and adventures of Publius Cornelius Lentulus, a Roman boy, who fought in Cæsar's campaigns and shared in his triumph. The colored plates illustrating the story are faithful representations of ancient life and are deserving of careful study.

[Reading Selection](#)

#### LESSON LXI

##### THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

**342.** In addition to the indicative, imperative, and infinitive moods, which you have learned, Latin has a fourth mood called the subjunctive. The tenses of the subjunctive are

PRESENT	ACTIVE AND PASSIVE
IMPERFECT	
PERFECT	
PLUPERFECT	

**343.** The tenses of the subjunctive have the same time values as the corresponding tenses of the indicative, and, in addition, *each of them may refer to future time*. No meanings of the tenses will be given in the paradigms, as the translation varies with the construction used.

**344.** The present subjunctive is inflected as follows:

CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III		CONJ. IV
ACTIVE VOICE				
SINGULAR				
1. a'mem	mo'neam	re'gam	ca'piam	au'diam
2. a'mēs	mo'neās	re'gās	ca'piās	au'diās
3. a'met	mo'neat	re'gat	ca'piat	au'diat
PLURAL				
1. amē'mus	moneā'mus	regā'mus	capiā'mus	audiā'mus
2. amē'tis	moneā'tis	regā'tis	capiā'tis	audiā'tis
3. a'ment	mo'neant	re'gant	ca'piant	au'diant

PASSIVE VOICE

SINGULAR

1. a´mer	mo´near	re´gar	ca´piar	au´diar
2. amē´ris (-re)	moneā´ris (-re)	regā´ris (-re)	capiā´ris (-re)	audiā´ris (-re)
3. amē´tur	moneā´tur	regā´tur	capiā´tur	audiā´tur

PLURAL

1. amē´mur	moneā´mur	regā´mur	capiā´mur	audiā´mur
2. amē´minī	moneā´minī	regā´minī	capiā´minī	audiā´minī
3. amen´tur	monean´tur	regan´tur	capiā´tur	audian´tur

a. The present subjunctive is formed from the present stem.

b. The mood sign of the present subjunctive is **-ē-** in the first conjugation and **-ā-** in the others. It is shortened in the usual places (cf. § 12), and takes the place of the final vowel of the stem in the first and third conjugations, but not in the second and fourth.

c. The personal endings are the same as in the indicative.

d. In a similar way inflect the present subjunctive of **cūrō**, **iubeō**, **sūmō**, **iaciō**, **mūniō**.

345. The present subjunctive of the irregular verb **sum** is inflected as follows:

SING.	1. <b>sim</b>	PLUR.	1. <b>sīmus</b>
	2. <b>sīs</b>		2. <b>sītis</b>
	3. <b>sit</b>		3. <b>sint</b>

346. **The Indicative and Subjunctive Compared.** 1. The two most important of the finite moods are the indicative and the subjunctive. The indicative deals with facts either real or assumed. If, then, we wish to assert something as a fact or to inquire after a fact, we use the indicative.

2. On the other hand, if we wish to express a *desire* or *wish*, a *purpose*, a *possibility*, an *expectation*, or some such notion, we must use the subjunctive. The following sentences illustrate the difference between the indicative and the subjunctive ideas.

INDICATIVE IDEAS

1. *He is brave*  
**Fortis est**
2. *We set out at once*  
**Statim proficiscimur**
3. *You hear him every day*  
**Cotidiē eum audīs**
4. *He remained until the ship arrived*  
**Mānsit dum nāvis pervēnit**
5. *Cæsar sends men who find the bridge*  
**Caesar mittit hominēs quī pontem reperiant**

SUBJUNCTIVE IDEAS

1. *May he be brave*  
**Fortis sit** (idea of wishing)
2. *Let us set out at once*  
**Statim proficiscāmur** (idea of willing)
3. *You can hear him every day*  
**Cotidiē eum audiās** (idea of possibility)
4. *He waited until the ship should arrive*  
**Exspectāvit dum nāvis perveniret**<sup>1</sup> (idea of expectation)
5. *Cæsar sends men who are to find (or to find) the bridge*  
**Caesar hominēs mittit quī pontem reperiant** (idea of purpose)

1. **perveniret**, imperfect subjunctive.

NOTE. From the sentences above we observe that the subjunctive may be used in either independent or dependent clauses; but it is far more common in the latter than in the former.

347. EXERCISE

Which verbs in the following paragraph would be in the indicative and which in the subjunctive in a Latin translation?

There have been times in the history of our country when you might be proud of being an American citizen. Do you remember the day when Dewey sailed into Manila Bay to capture or destroy the enemy's fleet? You might have seen the admiral standing on the bridge calmly giving his orders. He did not even wait until the mines should be removed from the harbor's mouth, but sailed in at once. Let us not despair of our country while such valor exists, and may the future add new glories to the past.

[Reading Selection](#)

LESSON LXII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE

348. Observe the sentence

**Caesar hominēs mittit quī pontem reperiant,**  
*Cæsar sends men to find the bridge*

The verb **reperiant** in the dependent clause is in the subjunctive because it tells us what Cæsar wants the men to do; in other words, it expresses his will and the purpose in his mind. Such a use of the subjunctive is called the subjunctive of purpose.

**349. RULE. Subjunctive of Purpose.** *The subjunctive is used in a dependent clause to express the purpose of the action in the principal clause.*

**350.** A clause of purpose is introduced as follows:

I. If something is wanted, by

**quī**, the relative pronoun (as above)

**ut**, conj., *in order that, that*

**quō** (abl. of **quī**, *by which*), *in order that, that*, used when the purpose clause contains a comparative. The ablative **quō** expresses the measure of difference. (Cf. § 317.)

II. If something is not wanted, by

**nē**, conj., *in order that not, that not, lest*

**351. EXAMPLES**

1. **Caesar cōpiās cōgit quibus hostīs insequātur**  
*Cæsar collects troops with which to pursue the foe*
2. **Pācem petunt ut domum revertantur**  
*They ask for peace in order that they may return home*
3. **Pontem faciunt quō facilius oppidum capiant**  
*They build a bridge that they may take the town more easily (lit. by which the more easily)*
4. **Fugiunt nē vulnerentur**  
*They flee that they may not (or lest they) be wounded*

**352. Expression of Purpose in English.** In English, purpose clauses are sometimes introduced by *that* or *in order that*, but much more frequently purpose is expressed in English by the infinitive, as *We eat to live*, *She stoops to conquer*. In Latin prose, on the other hand, **purpose is never expressed by the infinitive**. Be on your guard and do not let the English idiom betray you into this error.

**353. EXERCISES**

I.

1. Veniunt ut	dūcant, mittant, videant, audiant, dūcantur, mittantur, videantur, audiantur.
2. Fugimus nē	capiāmur, trādāmur, videāmus, necēmur, rapiāmur, resistāmus.
3. Mittit nūntiōs quī	dicant, audiant, veniant, nārrent, audiantur, in conciliō sedeant.
4. Castra mūniunt quō facilius	sēsē dēfendant, impetum sustineant, hostīs vincant, salūtem petant.

II. 1. The Helvetii send ambassadors to seek<sup>1</sup> peace. 2. They are setting out at daybreak in order that they may make a longer march before night. 3. They will hide the women in the forest (*acc. with in*) that they may not be captured. 4. The Gauls wage many wars to free<sup>1</sup> their fatherland from slavery. 5. They will resist the Romans<sup>2</sup> bravely lest they be destroyed.

1. Not infinitive.
2. Not accusative.

[Reading Selection](#)

LESSON LXIII

**INFLECTION OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES**

**354.** The imperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings to the present active infinitive.

CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III	CONJ. IV
ACTIVE			
1. amā <b>rem</b>	monē <b>rem</b>	re <b>gerem</b>	ca <b>perem</b>
2. amā <b>rēs</b>	monē <b>rēs</b>	re <b>gerēs</b>	ca <b>perēs</b>
3. amā <b>ret</b>	monē <b>ret</b>	re <b>geret</b>	ca <b>peret</b>
1. amārē <b>mus</b>	monērē <b>mus</b>	regerē <b>mus</b>	caperē <b>mus</b>
2. amārē <b>tis</b>	monērē <b>tis</b>	regerē <b>tis</b>	caperē <b>tis</b>
3. amā <b>rent</b>	monē <b>rent</b>	re <b>gerent</b>	ca <b>perent</b>

PASSIVE

1. amā'rer	monē'rer	re'gerer	ca'perer	audī'rer
2. amārē'ris(-re)	monērē'ris(-re)	regerē'ris(-re)	caperē'ris(-re)	audīrē'ris(-re)
3. amārē'tur	monērē'tur	regerē'tur	caperē'tur	audīrē'tur
1. amārē'mur	monērē'mur	regerē'mur	caperē'mur	audīrē'mur
2. amārē'minī	monērē'minī	regerē'minī	caperē'minī	audīrē'minī
3. amāren'tur	monēren'tur	regeren'tur	caperen'tur	audīren'tur

a. In a similar way inflect the imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of **cūrō**, **iubeō**, **sūmō**, **iaciō**, **mūniō**.

355. The imperfect subjunctive of the irregular verb **sum** is inflected as follows:

SING.	1. es'sem	PLUR.	1. essē'mus
	2. es'sēs		2. essē'tis
	3. es'set		3. es'sent

356. The three great distinctions of time are *present*, *past*, and *future*. All tenses referring to present or future time are called **primary tenses**, and those referring to past time are called **secondary tenses**. Now it is a very common law of language that in a complex sentence the tense in the dependent clause should be of the same kind as the tense in the principal clause. In the sentence *He says that he is coming*, the principal verb, *says*, is present, that is, is in a primary tense; and *is coming*, in the dependent clause, is naturally also primary. If I change *he says* to *he said*,—in other words, if I make the principal verb secondary in character,—I feel it natural to change the verb in the dependent clause also, and I say, *He said that he was coming*. This following of a tense by another of the same kind is called *tense sequence*, from *sequi*, "to follow."

In Latin the law of tense sequence is obeyed with considerable regularity, especially when an indicative in the principal clause is followed by a subjunctive in the dependent clause. Then a primary tense of the indicative is followed by a primary tense of the subjunctive, and a secondary tense of the indicative is followed by a secondary tense of the subjunctive. Learn the following table:

357. TABLE FOR SEQUENCE OF TENSES

	PRINCIPAL VERB IN THE INDICATIVE	DEPENDENT VERBS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE	
		<i>Incomplete or Continuing Action</i>	<i>Completed Action</i>
P R I M A R Y	Present Future Future perfect	Present	Perfect
S E C O N D A R Y	Imperfect Perfect Pluperfect	Imperfect	Pluperfect

358. RULE. **Sequence of Tenses.** *Primary tenses are followed by primary tenses and secondary by secondary.*

359. EXAMPLES

I. Primary tenses in principal and dependent clauses:

	<b>Mittit</b> <b>Mittet</b> <b>Miserit</b>	<b>hominēs ut agrōs vāstent</b>
He	sends will send will have sent	men   that they may in order to   lay waste the fields to

II. Secondary tenses in principal and dependent clauses:

<b>Mittēbat</b> <b>Misit</b>	<b>hominēs ut agrōs vāstārent</b>
---------------------------------	-----------------------------------



<b>Miserat</b>													
He	<table style="border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;"><i>was sending</i></td> <td style="padding: 5px;">men</td> <td style="padding: 5px;"><i>that they might</i></td> <td style="padding: 5px;">lay waste the fields</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;"><i>sent or has sent</i></td> <td style="padding: 5px;"></td> <td style="padding: 5px;"><i>in order to</i></td> <td style="padding: 5px;"></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;"><i>had sent</i></td> <td style="padding: 5px;"></td> <td style="padding: 5px;"><i>to</i></td> <td style="padding: 5px;"></td> </tr> </table>	<i>was sending</i>	men	<i>that they might</i>	lay waste the fields	<i>sent or has sent</i>		<i>in order to</i>		<i>had sent</i>		<i>to</i>	
<i>was sending</i>	men	<i>that they might</i>	lay waste the fields										
<i>sent or has sent</i>		<i>in order to</i>											
<i>had sent</i>		<i>to</i>											

**360. EXERCISES**

I.

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Venerant ut                       | dūcerent, mitterent, vidērent, audirent, dūcerentur, mitterentur, vidērentur, audirentur |
| 2. Fugiēbat nē                       | caperētur, trāderētur, vidērētur, necārētur, raperētur, resiteret.                       |
| 3. Misit nūntiōs quī                 | dīcerent, audirent, venīrent, nārrārent, audirentur, in conciliō sedērent.               |
| 4. Castra mūnīvērunt quō<br>facilius | sēsē dēfenderent, impetum sustinērent, hostīs vincerent, salūtem peterent.               |

II. 1. Cæsar encouraged the soldiers in order that they might fight more bravely. 2. The Helvetii left their homes to wage war. 3. The scouts set out at once lest they should be captured by the Germans. 4. Cæsar inflicted punishment on them in order that the others might be more terrified. 5. He sent messengers to Rome to announce the victory.

[Reading Selection](#)

LESSON LXIV

**THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE**

**361.** The perfect and the pluperfect subjunctive active are inflected as follows:

CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III	CONJ. IV	
PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE				
SINGULAR				
1. amā' <b>verim</b>	monu' <b>erim</b>	rē' <b>xerim</b>	cē' <b>perim</b>	audī' <b>verim</b>
2. amā' <b>veris</b>	monu' <b>eris</b>	rē' <b>xeris</b>	cē' <b>peris</b>	audī' <b>veris</b>
3. amā' <b>verit</b>	monu' <b>erit</b>	rē' <b>xerit</b>	cē' <b>perit</b>	audī' <b>verit</b>
PLURAL				
1. amāve' <b>rimus</b>	monue' <b>rimus</b>	rēxe' <b>rimus</b>	cēpe' <b>rimus</b>	audīve' <b>rimus</b>
2. amāve' <b>ritis</b>	monue' <b>ritis</b>	rēxe' <b>ritis</b>	cēpe' <b>ritis</b>	audīve' <b>ritis</b>
3. amā' <b>verint</b>	monu' <b>erint</b>	rē' <b>xerint</b>	cē' <b>perint</b>	audī' <b>verint</b>
PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE				
SINGULAR				
1. amāvis' <b>sem</b>	monuis' <b>sem</b>	rēxis' <b>sem</b>	cēpis' <b>sem</b>	audīvis' <b>sem</b>
2. amāvis' <b>sēs</b>	monuis' <b>sēs</b>	rēxis' <b>sēs</b>	cēpis' <b>sēs</b>	audīvis' <b>sēs</b>
3. amāvis' <b>set</b>	monuis' <b>set</b>	rēxis' <b>set</b>	cēpis' <b>set</b>	audīvis' <b>set</b>
PLURAL				
1. amāvissē' <b>mus</b>	monuissē' <b>mus</b>	rēxissē' <b>mus</b>	cēpissē' <b>mus</b>	audīvissē' <b>mus</b>
2. amāvissē' <b>tis</b>	monuissē' <b>tis</b>	rēxissē' <b>tis</b>	cēpissē' <b>tis</b>	audīvissē' <b>tis</b>
3. amāvis' <b>sent</b>	monuis' <b>sent</b>	rēxis' <b>sent</b>	cēpis' <b>sent</b>	audīvis' <b>sent</b>

a. Observe that these two tenses, like the corresponding ones in the indicative, are formed from the perfect stem.

b. Observe that the perfect subjunctive active is like the future perfect indicative active, excepting that the first person singular ends in **-m** and not in **-ō**.

c. Observe that the pluperfect subjunctive active may be formed by adding **-issem**, **-issēs**, etc. to the perfect stem.

d. In a similar way inflect the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive active of **cūrō**, **iubeō**, **sūmō**, **iaciō**, **mūniō**.

**362.** The passive of the perfect subjunctive is formed by combining the perfect passive participle with **sim**, the present subjunctive of **sum**.

CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III	CONJ. IV	
PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE				
SINGULAR				
1. amā' <b>tus sim</b>	mo' <b>nitus sim</b>	rēc' <b>tus sim</b>	cap' <b>tus sim</b>	audī' <b>tus sim</b>
2. amā' <b>tus sis</b>	mo' <b>nitus sis</b>	rēc' <b>tus sis</b>	cap' <b>tus sis</b>	audī' <b>tus sis</b>

3. amā'tus sit	mo'nitus sit	rēc'tus sit	cap'tus sit	audī'tus sit
		PLURAL		
1. amā'tī sīmus	mo'nitī sīmus	rēc'tī sīmus	cap'tī sīmus	audī'tī sīmus
2. amā'tī sītis	mo'nitī sītis	rēc'tī sītis	cap'tī sītis	audī'tī sītis
3. amā'tī sint	mo'nitī sint	rēc'tī sint	cap'tī sint	audī'tī sint

**363.** The passive of the pluperfect subjunctive is formed by combining the perfect passive participle with **essem**, the imperfect subjunctive of **sum**.

CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III	CONJ. IV	
PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE				
SINGULAR				
1. amātus essem	monitus essem	rēctus essem	captus essem	auditus essem
2. amātus essēs	monitus essēs	rēctus essēs	captus essēs	auditus essēs
3. amātus esset	monitus esset	rēctus esset	captus esset	auditus esset
PLURAL				
1. amātī essēmus	monitī essēmus	rēctī essēmus	captī essēmus	audītī essēmus
2. amātī essētis	monitī essētis	rēctī essētis	captī essētis	audītī essētis
3. amātī essent	monitī essent	rēctī essent	captī essent	audītī essent

a. In a similar way inflect the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive passive of **cūrō**, **iubeō**, **sūmō**, **iaciō**, **mūniō**.

**364.** The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive of the irregular verb **sum** are inflected as follows:

PERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
fu'erim	fue'rimus	fuis'sem	fuissē'mus
fu'eris	fue'ritis	fuis'sēs	fuissē'tis
fu'erit	fu'erint	fuis'set	fuis'sent

**365.** A substantive clause is a clause used like a noun, as,

*That the men are afraid* is clear enough (clause as subject)  
He ordered *them to call on him* (clause as object)

We have already had many instances of infinitive clauses used in this way (cf. § 213), and have noted the similarity between Latin and English usage in this respect. But the Latin often uses the *subjunctive* in substantive clauses, and this marks an important difference between the two languages.

**366. RULE. Substantive Clauses of Purpose.** A substantive clause of purpose with the subjunctive is used as the object of verbs of **commanding**, **urging**, **asking**, **persuading**, or **advising**, where in English we should usually have the infinitive.

#### EXAMPLES

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>The general ordered the soldiers to run</i> | <b>Imperātor mīlitibus imperāvit ut currerent</b> |
| 2. <i>He urged them to resist bravely</i>         | <b>Hortātus est ut fortiter resisterent</b>       |
| 3. <i>He asked them to give the children food</i> | <b>Petivit ut liberīs cibum darent</b>            |
| 4. <i>He will persuade us not to set out</i>      | <b>Nōbīs persuādēbit nē proficiscāmur</b>         |
| 5. <i>He advises us to remain at home</i>         | <b>Monet ut domī maneāmus</b>                     |

a. The object clauses following these verbs all express the purpose or will of the principal subject that something be done or not done. (Cf. § 348.)

**367.** The following verbs are used with object clauses of purpose. Learn the list and the principal parts of the new ones.

<b>hortor</b> , <i>urge</i>	<b>petō</b> , <b>quaerō</b> , <b>rogō</b> , <i>ask, seek</i>
<b>imperō</b> , <i>order</i> (with the <i>dative</i> of the person ordered and a <i>subjunctive clause</i> of the thing ordered done)	<b>persuādeō</b> , <i>persuade</i> (with the same construction as imperō)
<b>moneō</b> , <i>advise</i>	<b>postulō</b> , <i>demand, require</i>
	<b>suādeō</b> , <i>advise</i> (cf. <b>persuādeō</b> )

N.B. Remember that **iubeō**, *order*, takes the infinitive as in English. (Cf. § 213. 1.) Compare the sentences

**Iubeō eum venire**, *I order him to come*  
**Imperō eī ut veniat**, *I give orders to him that he is to come*

We ordinarily translate both of these sentences like the first, but the difference in meaning between **iubeō** and **imperō** in the Latin requires the *infinitive* in the one case and the *subjunctive* in the other.

**368. EXERCISES**

I. 1. Petit atque hortatur ut ipse dicat. 2. Caesar Helveticis imperavit ne per provinciam iter facerent. 3. Caesar non iussit Helveticos per provinciam iter facere. 4. Ille civibus persuasit ut de finibus suis discederent. 5. Caesar princeps monebit ne proelium committant. 6. Postulavit ne cum Helveticis aut cum eorum sociis bellum gererent. 7. Ab iis quaesivi ne proficiscerentur. 8. Iis persuadere non potui ut domi manerent.

II. 1. Who ordered Caesar to make the march? (*Write this sentence both with impero and with iubeo.*) 2. The faithless scouts persuaded him to set out at daybreak. 3. They will ask him not to inflict punishment. 4. He demanded that they come to the camp. 5. He advised them to tell everything (**omnia**).

NOTE. Do not forget that the English infinitive expressing purpose must be rendered by a Latin subjunctive. Review § 352.

### Reading Selection



LEGIO ITER FACIT

## LESSON LXV

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF *POSSUM* · VERBS OF FEARING

**369.** Learn the subjunctive of **possum** (§ 495), and note especially the position of the accent.

**370. Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing.** We have learned that what we want done or not done is expressed in Latin by a subjunctive clause of purpose. In this class belong also *clauses after verbs of fearing*, for we fear either that something will happen or that it will not, and we either want it to happen or we do not. If we want a thing to happen and fear that it will not, the purpose clause is introduced by **ut**. If we do not want it to happen and fear that it will, **ne** is used. Owing to a difference between the English and Latin idiom we translate **ut** after a verb of fearing by *that not*, and **ne** by *that or lest*.

#### 371. EXAMPLES

<b>timeo</b>	<b>ut</b>	<b>veniat</b>
<b>timebo</b>		<b>venierit</b>
<b>timevero</b>		

*I fear, shall fear, shall have feared, that he will not come, has not come*

<b>timebam</b>	<b>ut</b>	<b>veniret</b>
<b>timeui</b>		<b>venisset</b>
<b>timeveram</b>		

*I was fearing, feared, had feared, that he would not come, had not come*

The same examples with **ne** instead of **ut** would be translated *I fear that or lest he will come, has come, etc.*

**372. RULE. Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing.** *Verbs of fearing are followed by a substantive clause of purpose introduced by ut (that not) or ne (that or lest).*

#### 373. EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar vereretur ut supplicium captivorum Gallis placeret. 2. Romani ipsi magnopere vererentur ne Helvetii iter per provinciam facerent. 3. Timebant ut satis rei frumentariae mitti posset. 4. Vereor ut hostium impetum sustinere possim. 5. Timuit ne impedimenta ab hostibus capta essent. 6. Caesar numquam timuit ne legionem vincerentur. 7. Legionem pugnare non timeverunt.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Distinguish between what one is afraid *to do* (complementary infinitive as here) and what one is afraid *will take place* or *has taken place* (substantive clause with the subjunctive).

II. 1. We fear that they are not coming. 2. We fear lest they are coming. 3. We feared that they had come. 4. We feared that they had not come. 5. They feared greatly that the camp could not be defended. 6. Almost all feared<sup>1</sup> to leave the camp.

## Reading Selection

### LESSON LXVI

#### THE PARTICIPLES

374. The Latin verb has the following Participles:<sup>1</sup>

	CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III	CONJ. IV	
	ACTIVE				
PRESENT	<b>amāns</b> <i>loving</i>	<b>monēns</b> <i>advising</i>	<b>regēns</b> <i>ruling</i>	<b>capiēns</b> <i>taking</i>	<b>audiēns</b> <i>hearing</i>
FUTURE	<b>amātūrus</b> <i>about to love</i>	<b>monitūrus</b> <i>about to advise</i>	<b>rēctūrus</b> <i>about to rule</i>	<b>captūrus</b> <i>about to take</i>	<b>audītūrus</b> <i>about to hear</i>
	PASSIVE				
PERFECT	<b>amātus</b> <i>loved, having been loved</i>	<b>monitus</b> <i>advised, having been advised</i>	<b>rēctus</b> <i>ruled, having been ruled</i>	<b>captus</b> <i>taken, having been taken</i>	<b>audītus</b> <i>heard, having been heard</i>
FUTURE <sup>2</sup>	<b>amandus</b> <i>to be loved</i>	<b>monendus</b> <i>to be advised</i>	<b>regendus</b> <i>to be ruled</i>	<b>capiendus</b> <i>to be taken</i>	<b>audiendus</b> <i>to be heard</i>

1. Review § 203.

2. The future passive participle is often called the *gerundive*.

a. The present active and future passive participles are formed from the present stem, and the future active and perfect passive participles are formed from the participial stem.

b. The present active participle is formed by adding **-ns** to the present stem. In **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation, and in the fourth conjugation, the stem is modified by the addition of **-ē-**, as **capi-ē-ns**, **audi-ē-ns**. It is declined like an adjective of one ending of the third declension. (Cf. § 256.)

#### **amāns, loving**

	BASE <b>amant-</b>		STEM <b>amanti-</b>	
	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>amāns</b>	<b>amāns</b>	<b>amantēs</b>	<b>amantia</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>amantis</b>	<b>amantis</b>	<b>amantium</b>	<b>amantium</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>amanti</b>	<b>amanti</b>	<b>amantibus</b>	<b>amantibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>amantem</b>	<b>amāns</b>	<b>amantis or -ēs</b>	<b>amantia</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>amanti or -e</b>	<b>amanti or -e</b>	<b>amantibus</b>	<b>amantibus</b>

(1) When used as an adjective the ablative singular ends in **-ī**; when used as a participle or as a substantive, in **-e**.

(2) In a similar way decline **monēns, regēns, capiēns, audiēns**.

c. The future active participle is formed by adding **-ūrus** to the base of the participial stem. We have already met this form combined with **esse** to produce the future active infinitive. (Cf. § 206.)

d. For the perfect passive participle see § 201. The future passive participle or gerundive is formed by adding **-ndus** to the present stem.

e. All participles in **-us** are declined like **bonus**.

f. Participles agree with nouns or pronouns like adjectives.

g. Give all the participles of the following verbs: **cūrō, iubeō, sūmō, iaciō, mūniō**.

375. **Participles of Deponent Verbs.** Deponent verbs have the participles of the active voice as well as of the passive; consequently every deponent verb has four participles, as,

<i>Pres. Act.</i>	<b>hortāns, urging</b>
<i>Fut. Act.</i>	<b>hortātūrus, about to urge</b>
<i>Perf. Pass. (in form)</i>	<b>hortātus, having urged</b>
<i>Fut. Pass. (Gerundive)</i>	<b>hortandus, to be urged</b>

a. Observe that the perfect participle of deponent verbs is passive in form but *active* in meaning. *No other verbs have a perfect active participle.* On the other hand, the future passive participle of deponent verbs is passive in meaning as in other verbs.

b. Give the participles of **cōnor, vereor, sequor, patior, partior**.

376. **Tenses of the Participle.** The tenses express time as follows:

1. The present active participle corresponds to the English present active participle in *-ing*, but can be used only of an action occurring at the same time as the action of the main verb; as, **militēs insequentēs cēpērunt multōs**, *the soldiers, while pursuing, captured many*. Here the pursuing and the capturing are going on together.

2. The perfect participle (excepting of deponents) is regularly passive and corresponds to the English past participle with or without the auxiliary *having been*; as, **auditus**, *heard* or *having been heard*.

3. The future active participle, translated *about to*, etc., denotes time after the action of the main verb.

377. Review §§ 203, 204, and, note the following model sentences:

1. **Militēs currentēs erant dēfessī**, *the soldiers who were running (lit. running) were weary*.
2. **Caesar profectūrus Rōmam nōn exspectāvit**, *Cæsar, when about to set out (lit. about to set out) for Rome, did not wait*.
3. **Oppidum captum vīdimus**, *we saw the town which had been captured (lit. captured town)*.
4. **Imperātor trīduum morātus profectus est**, *the general, since (when, or after) he had delayed (lit. the general, having delayed) three days, set out*.
5. **Militēs victī terga nōn vertērunt**, *the soldiers, though they were conquered (lit. the soldiers conquered), did not retreat*.

In each of these sentences the literal translation of the participle is given in parentheses. We note, however, that its proper translation usually requires a clause beginning with some conjunction (*when, since, after, though*, etc.), or a relative clause. Consider, in each case, what translation will best bring out the thought, and do not, as a rule, translate the participle literally.

### 378. EXERCISES

I. 1. Puer timēns nē capiātur fugit. 2. Aquila irā commōta avīs reliquās interficere cōnāta erat. 3. Militēs ab hostibus pressī tēla iacere nōn potuerunt. 4. Caesar decimam legiōnem laudātūrus ad primum agmen prōgressus est. 5. Imperātor hortātus equitēs ut fortiter pugnārent signum proeliō dedit. 6. Militēs hostīs octō milia passuum insecūtī multīs cum captīvīs ad castra revertērunt. 7. Sōl oriēns multōs interfectōs vīdit. 8. Rōmānī cōsiliū audāx suspicātī barbaris sēsē nōn commiserunt. 9. Nāvis ē portū ēgressa nullō in periculō erat.

II. <sup>3</sup> 1. The army was in very great danger while marching through the enemy's country. 2. Frightened by the length of the way, they longed for home. 3. When the scouts were about to set out, they heard the shouts of victory. 4. When we had delayed many days, we set fire to the buildings and departed. 5. While living at Rome I heard orators much better than these. 6. The soldiers who are fighting across the river are no braver than we.

3. In this exercise use participles for the subordinate clauses.

### Reading Selection

## LESSON LXVII

### THE IRREGULAR VERBS **VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ** · THE ABLATIVE WITH A PARTICIPLE, OR ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

379. Learn the principal parts and conjugation of **volō**, *wish*; **nōlō** (**ne + volō**), *be unwilling*; **mālō** (**magis + volō**), *be more willing, prefer* (§ 497). Note the irregularities in the present indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive, and in the imperfect subjunctive. (Cf. § 354.)

a. These verbs are usually followed by the infinitive with or without a subject accusative; as, **volunt venire**, *they wish to come*; **volunt amicōs venire**, *they wish their friends to come*. The English usage is the same.<sup>1</sup>

1. Sometimes the subjunctive of purpose is used after these verbs. (See § 366.)

380. Observe the following sentences:

1. **Magistrō laudante omnēs puerī diligenter labōrant**, *with the teacher praising, or since the teacher praises, or the teacher praising, all the boys labor diligently*.
2. **Caesare dūcente nēmō prōgredi timet**, *with Cæsar leading, or when Cæsar leads, or if Cæsar leads, or Cæsar leading, no one fears to advance*.
3. **His rēbus cognitīs militēs fūgērunt**, *when this was known, or since this was known, or these things having been learned, the soldiers fled*.
4. **Proeliō commissō multī vulnerātī sunt**, *after the battle had begun, or when the battle had begun, or the battle having been joined, many were wounded*.

a. One of the fundamental ablative relations is expressed in English by the preposition *with* (cf. § 50). In each of the sentences above we have a noun and a participle in agreement in the ablative, and the translation shows that in each instance the ablative expresses *attendant circumstance*. For example, in the first sentence the circumstance attending or accompanying the diligent labor of the boys is the praise of the teacher. This is clearly a *with* relation, and the ablative is the case to use.

b. We observe, further, that the ablative and its participle are absolutely independent grammatically

of the rest of the sentence. If we were to express the thought in English in a similar way, we should use the nominative independent or absolute. In Latin the construction is called the Ablative Absolute, or the Ablative with a Participle. This form of expression is exceedingly common in Latin, but rather rare in English, so we must not, as a rule, employ the English absolute construction to translate the ablative absolute. The attendant circumstance may be one of *time* (when or after), or one of *cause* (since), or one of *concession* (though), or one of *condition* (if). In each case try to discover the precise relation, and translate the ablative and its participle by a clause which will best express the thought.

**381. RULE. Ablative Absolute.** *The ablative of a noun or pronoun with a present or perfect participle in agreement is used to express attendant circumstance.*

NOTE 1. The verb **sum** has no present participle. In consequence we often find two nouns or a noun and an adjective in the ablative absolute with no participle expressed; as, **tē duce**, *you (being) leader, with you as leader*, **patre infirmō**, *my father (being) weak*.

NOTE 2. Be very careful not to put in the ablative absolute a noun and participle that form the subject or object of a sentence. Compare

- a. *The Gauls, having been conquered by Cæsar, returned home*
- b. *The Gauls having been conquered by Cæsar, the army returned home*

In *a* the subject is *The Gauls having been conquered by Cæsar*, and we translate,

**Galli ā Caesare victi domum revertērunt**

In *b* the subject is *the army*. *The Gauls having been conquered by Cæsar* is nominative absolute in English, which requires the ablative absolute in Latin, and we translate,

**Gallis ā Caesare victis exercitus domum revertit**

NOTE 3. The fact that only deponent verbs have a perfect active participle (cf. § 375. *a*) often compels a change of voice when translating from one language to the other. For example, we can translate *Cæsar having encouraged the legions* just as it stands, because **hortor** is a deponent verb. But if we wish to say *Cæsar having conquered the Gauls*, we have to change the voice of the participle to the passive because **vincō** is not deponent, and say, *the Gauls having been conquered by Cæsar* (see translation above).

## 382. EXERCISES

I. 1. Māvīs, nōn vīs, vultis, nolumus. 2. Ut nōlit, ut vellēmus, ut mālit. 3. Nōlī, velle, nōluisse, malle. 4. Vult, māvultis, ut nōllet, nōlīte. 5. Sōle oriente, avēs cantāre incēpērunt. 6. Clāmōribus audītis, barbarī prōgredi recūsābant. 7. Caesare legiōnēs hortātō, mīlitēs paulō fortius pugnāvērunt. 8. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Helvētīī finitimīs persuāsērunt ut sēcum iter facerent. 9. Labōribus cōfectīs, mīlitēs ā Caesare quaerēbant ut sibi praemia daret. 10. Conciliō convocātō, prīncipēs ita respondērunt. 11. Dux plūrīs diēs in Helvētiōrum finibus morāns multōs vicōs incendit. 12. Magnitūdine Germānōrum cognitā, quīdam ex Rōmānis timēbant. 13. Mercātōribus rogātīs, Caesar nihilō plūs reperire potuit.

II. 1. He was unwilling, lest they prefer, they have wished. 2. You prefer, that they might be unwilling, they wish. 3. We wish, they had preferred, that he may prefer. 4. Cæsar, when he heard the rumor (*the rumor having been heard*), commanded (**imperāre**) the legions to advance more quickly. 5. Since Cæsar was leader, the men were willing to make the journey. 6. A few, terrified<sup>2</sup> by the reports which they had heard, preferred to remain at home. 7. After these had been left behind, the rest hastened as quickly as possible. 8. After Cæsar had undertaken the business (*Cæsar, the business having been undertaken*), he was unwilling to delay longer.<sup>3</sup>

2. Would the ablative absolute be correct here?

3. Not **longius**. Why?

Reading Selection

## LESSON LXVIII

### THE IRREGULAR VERB **FĪŌ** · THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT

**383.** The verb **fiō**, *be made, happen*, serves as the passive of **faciō**, *make*, in the present system. The rest of the verb is formed regularly from **faciō**. Learn the principal parts and conjugation (§ 500). Observe that the **i** is long except before **-er** and in **fit**.

a. The compounds of **facio** with prepositions usually form the passive regularly, as,

*Active*    **cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus**

*Passive*   **cōnficior, cōnfici, cōnfectus sum**

**384.** Observe the following sentences:

1. **Terror erat tantus ut omnēs fugerent**, *the terror was so great that all fled*.
2. **Terror erat tantus ut nōn facile mīlitēs sēsē reciperent**, *the terror was so great that the soldiers did not easily recover themselves*.
3. **Terror fēcit ut omnēs fugerent**, *terror caused all to flee* (lit. *made that all fled*).

a. Each of these sentences is complex, containing a principal clause and a subordinate clause.

b. The principal clause names a cause and the subordinate clause states the *consequence* or *result* of this cause.

c. The subordinate clause has its verb in the subjunctive, though it is translated like an indicative. The construction is called the *subjunctive of consequence or result*, and the clause is called a consecutive or result clause.

d. In the last example the clause of result is the object of the verb **fēcit**.

e. The conjunction introducing the consecutive or result clause is **ut** = *so that*; negative, **ut nōn** = *so that not*.

**385. RULE. Subjunctive of Result.** *Consecutive clauses of result are introduced by ut or ut nōn and have the verb in the subjunctive.*

**386. RULE.** *Object clauses of result with ut or ut nōn are found after verbs of effecting or bringing about.*

**387. Purpose and Result Clauses Compared.** There is great similarity in the expression of purpose and of result in Latin. If the sentence is affirmative, both purpose and result clauses may be introduced by **ut**; but if the sentence is negative, the purpose clause has **nē** and the result clause **ut nōn**. Result clauses are often preceded in the main clause by such words as **tam**, **ita**, **sic** (*so*), and these serve to point them out. Compare

- a. **Tam graviter vulnerātus est ut caperētur**      *He was so severely wounded that he was captured*
- b. **Graviter vulnerātus est ut caperētur**      *He was severely wounded in order that he might be captured*

Which sentence contains a result clause, and how is it pointed out?

### 388. EXERCISES

I. 1. Fit, fiet, ut fiat, fiēbāmus. 2. Fiō, fiēs, ut fierent, fierī, fiunt. 3. Fiētis, ut fiāmus, fis, fiemus. 4. Mīlitēs erant tam tardī ut ante noctem in castra nōn pervenirent. 5. Sōl facit ut omnia sint pulchra. 6. Eius modī perīcula erant ut nēmō proficīscī vellet. 7. Equitēs hostium cum equitātū nostrō in itinere contendērunt, ita tamen<sup>1</sup> ut nostrī omnibus in partibus superiōrēs essent. 8. Virtūs mīlitum nostrōrum fēcit ut hostēs nē ūnum quidem<sup>2</sup> impetum sustinērent. 9. Hominēs erant tam audācēs ut nūllō modō continērī possent. 10. Spatium erat tam parvum ut mīlitēs tēla iacere nōn facile possent. 11. Hōc proeliō factō barbarī ita perterritī sunt ut ab ultimīs gentibus lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur. 12. Hoc proelium factum est nē lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur.

1. **ita tamen**, with such a result however.

2. **nē ... quidem**, not even. The emphatic word is placed between.

II. 1. It will happen, they were being made, that it may happen. 2. It happens, he will be made, to happen. 3. They are made, we were being made, lest it happen. 4. The soldiers are so brave that they conquer. 5. The soldiers are brave in order that they may conquer. 6. The fortification was made so strong that it could not be taken. 7. The fortification was made strong in order that it might not be taken. 8. After the town was taken,<sup>3</sup> the townsmen feared that they would be made slaves. 9. What state is so weak that it is unwilling to defend itself?

3. Ablative absolute.

### Reading Selection

## LESSON LXIX

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC OR DESCRIPTION · THE PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE

**389.** Akin to the subjunctive of consequence or result is the use of the subjunctive in clauses of characteristic or description.

This construction is illustrated in the following sentences:

1. **Quis est quī suam domum nōn amet?** *who is there who does not love his own home?*
2. **Erant quī hoc facere nōllent,** *there were (some) who were unwilling to do this.*
3. **Tū nōn is es quī amīcōs trādās,** *you are not such a one as to, or you are not the man to, betray your friends.*
4. **Nihil videō quod timeam,** *I see nothing to fear* (nothing of such as character as to fear it).
  - a. Each of these examples contains a descriptive relative clause which tells what kind of a person or thing the antecedent is. To express this thought the subjunctive is used. A relative clause that merely states a fact and does not describe the antecedent uses the indicative. Compare the sentences

*Cæsar is the man who is leading us, Caesar est is quī nōs dūcit*  
(mere statement of fact, no description, with the indicative)

*Cæsar is the man to lead us, Caesar est is quī nōs dūcat*  
(descriptive relative clause with the subjunctive)

- b. Observe that in this construction a demonstrative pronoun and a relative, as is **quī**, are

translated *such a one as to, the man to*.

c. In which of the following sentences would you use the indicative and in which the subjunctive?

*These are not the men who did this*  
*These are not the men to do this*

**390. RULE. Subjunctive of Characteristic.** *A relative clause with the subjunctive is often used to describe an antecedent. This is called the **subjunctive of characteristic or description**.*

**391.** Observe the sentences

1. Rōmānī **Caesarem cōsulem** fēcērunt, *the Romans made **Cæsar consul**.*
2. **Caesar cōsul** ā Rōmānīs factus est, ***Cæsar** was made **consul** by the Romans.*

a. Observe in 1 that the transitive verb **fēcērunt**, *made*, has two objects: (1) the direct object, **Caesarem**; (2) a second object, **cōsulem**, referring to the same person as the direct object and completing the predicate. The second accusative is called a Predicate Accusative.

b. Observe in 2 that when the verb is changed to the passive both of the accusatives become nominatives, the *direct object* becoming the *subject* and the *predicate accusative* the *predicate nominative*.

**392. RULE. Two Accusatives.** *Verbs of **making, choosing, calling, showing**, and the like, may take a predicate accusative along with the direct object. With the passive voice the two accusatives become nominatives.*

**393.** The verbs commonly found with two accusatives are

<b>creo, creāre, creāvī, creātus</b> , <i>choose</i>	<i>call</i>
<b>appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus</b>	
<b>nōminō, nōmināre, nōmināvī, nōminātus</b>	
<b>faciō, facere, fēcī, factus</b> , <i>make</i>	

#### **394. EXERCISES**

I. 1. In Germāniae silvis sunt<sup>1</sup> multa genera ferārum quae reliquīs in locīs nōn vīsa sint. 2. Erant<sup>1</sup> itinera duo quibus Helvētīi domō discēdere possent. 3. Erat<sup>1</sup> manus nūlla, nūllum oppidum, nūllum praesidium quod sē armīs dēfenderet. 4. Tōtō frūmentō raptō, domī nihil erat quō mortem prohibēre possent. 5. Rōmānī Galbam ducem creāvērunt et summā celeritātē profectī sunt. 6. Neque erat<sup>1</sup> tantae multitudinis quisquam quī morārī vellet. 7. Germānī nōn īi sunt quī adventum Caesaris vereantur. 8. Cōsulibus occīsīs erant quī<sup>2</sup> vellent cum rēgem creāre. 9. Pāce factā erat nēmō quī arma trādere nōllet. 10. Inter Helvētīōs quis erat quī nōbilior illō esset?

II. 1. The Romans called the city Rome. 2. The city was called Rome by the Romans. 3. The better citizens wished to choose him king. 4. The brave soldier was not the man to run. 5. There was no one<sup>3</sup> to call me friend. 6. These are not the men to<sup>4</sup> betray their friends. 7. There were (some) who called him the bravest of all.

1. Remember that when the verb **sum** precedes its subject it is translated *there is, there are, there were*, etc.
2. **erant quī**, *there were* (some) *who*. A wholly indefinite antecedent of **quī** does not need to be expressed.
3. A relative clause of characteristic or description.
4. See § 389.b.

#### Reading Selection

---

### **Eighth Review, Lessons LXI-LXIX, §§ 527-528**

---

#### LESSON LXX

#### **THE CONSTRUCTIONS WITH THE CONJUNCTION *CUM* · THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION**

**395.** The conjunction **cum** has the following meanings and constructions:

**cum** TEMPORAL = *when*, followed by the indicative or the subjunctive  
**cum** CAUSAL = *since*, followed by the subjunctive  
**cum** CONCESSIVE = *although*, followed by the subjunctive

As you observe, the mood after **cum** is sometimes indicative and sometimes subjunctive. The reason for this will be made clear by a study of the following sentences:

1. **Caesarem vīdī tum cum in Galliā eram**, *I saw Cæsar at the time when I was in Gaul.*
2. **Caesar in eōs impetum fēcit cum pācem peterent**, *Cæsar made an attack upon them when they were seeking peace.*
3. **Hoc erat difficile cum paucī sine vulneribus essent**, *this was difficult, since only a few*



were without wounds.

4. **Cum primī ordinēs fūgissent, tamen reliquī fortiter cōsistēbant**, *though the front ranks had fled, yet the rest bravely stood their ground.*

a. The underlying principle is one already familiar to you (cf. § 389.a). When the **cum** clause states a fact and simply *fixes the time* at which the main action took place, the indicative mood is used. So, in the first example, **cum in Galliā eram** fixes the time when I saw Cæsar.

b. On the other hand, when the **cum** clause *describes the circumstances* under which the main act took place, the subjunctive mood is used. So, in the second example, the principal clause states that Cæsar made an attack, and the **cum** clause describes the circumstances under which this act occurred. The idea of *time* is also present, but it is subordinate to the idea of *description*. Sometimes the descriptive clause is one of *cause* and we translate **cum** by *since*; sometimes it denotes *concession* and **cum** is translated *although*.

396. RULE. **Constructions with Cum.** *The conjunction cum means when, since, or although. It is followed by the subjunctive unless it means when and its clause fixes the time at which the main action took place.*

NOTE. **Cum** in clauses of description with the subjunctive is much more common than its use with the indicative.

397. Note the following sentences:

1. **Oppidum erat parvum magnitudīne sed magnum multitudīne hominum**, *the town was small in size but great in population.*

2. **Homō erat corpore infirmus sed validus animō**, *the man was weak in body but strong in courage.*

a. Observe that **magnitudīne**, **multitudīne**, **corpore**, and **animō** tell *in what respect* something is true. The relation is one covered by the ablative case, and the construction is called the *ablative of specification*.

398. RULE. **Ablative of Specification.** *The ablative is used to denote in what respect something is true.*

399. IDIOMS

**aliquem certiōrem facere**, *to inform some one* (lit. *to make some one more certain*)  
**certior fierī**, *to be informed* (lit. *to be made more certain*)  
**iter dare**, *to give a right of way, allow to pass*  
**obsidēs inter sē dare**, *to give hostages to each other*

400. EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvētīi cum patrum nostrōrum tempore domō prefectī essent, cōsulis exercitum in fugam dederant. 2. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, Helvētīi aliōs agrōs petēbant. 3. Caesar cum in citeriōre Gallia esset, tamen dē Helvētīōrum cōsiliīs certior fiēbat. 4. Cum Helvētīi bellō clārissimī essent, Caesar iter per prōvinciam dare recūsāvit. 5. Lēgātus cum haec audīvisset, Caesarem certiōrem fecit. 6. Cum principēs inter sē obsidēs darent, Rōmānī bellum parāvērunt. 7. Caesar, cum id nūntiātum esset, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī. 8. Nē virtūte quidem Gallī erant parēs Germānis. 9. Caesar neque corpore neque animō infirmus erat. 10. Illud bellum tum incēpit cum Caesar fuit cōsul.

Observe in each case what mood follows **cum**, and try to give the reasons for its use. In the third sentence the **cum** clause is concessive, in the fourth and sixth causal.

II. 1. That battle was fought at the time when (**tum cum**) I was at Rome. 2. Though the horsemen were few in number, nevertheless they did not retreat. 3. When the camp had been sufficiently fortified, the enemy returned home. 4. Since the tribes are giving hostages to each other, we shall inform Cæsar. 5. The Gauls and the Germans are very unlike in language and laws.

[Reading Selection](#)

## LESSON LXXI

### VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE · THE PREDICATE GENITIVE

401. Review the word lists in §§ 510, 511.

402. **The Gerund.** Suppose we had to translate the sentence

*By overcoming the Gauls Cæsar won great glory*

We can see that *overcoming* here is a verbal noun corresponding to the English infinitive in *-ing*, and that the thought calls for the ablative of means. To translate this by the Latin infinitive would be impossible, because the infinitive is indeclinable and therefore has no ablative case form. Latin, however, has another verbal noun of corresponding meaning, called the **gerund**, declined as a neuter of the second declension in the *genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular*, and thus supplying the cases that the infinitive lacks.<sup>1</sup> Hence, to decline in Latin the verbal noun *overcoming*, we should use the infinitive for the nominative and the gerund for the other cases, as follows:

Nom.	<b>superāre</b>	<i>overcoming</i> <i>to overcome</i>	INFINITIVE
Gen.	<b>superandī</b> , <i>of overcoming</i>		
Dat.	<b>superandō</b> , <i>for overcoming</i>		GERUND
Acc.	<b>superandum</b> , <i>overcoming</i>		
Abl.	<b>superandō</b> , <i>by overcoming</i>		

Like the infinitive, the gerund governs the same case as the verb from which it is derived. So the sentence given above becomes in Latin

### Superandō Gallōs Caesar magnam glōriam reportāvit

1. Sometimes, however, the infinitive is used as an accusative.

**403.** The gerund<sup>2</sup> is formed by adding **-ndī, -ndō, -ndum, -ndō**, to the present stem, which is shortened or otherwise changed, as shown below:

	PARADIGM OF THE GERUND				
	CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III	CONJ. IV	
Gen.	amandī	monendī	regendī	capiendī	audiendī
Dat.	amandō	monendō	regendō	capiendō	audiendō
Acc.	amandum	monendum	regendum	capiendum	audiendum
Abl.	amandō	monendō	regendō	capiendō	audiendō

a. Give the gerund of **cūrō, dēleō, sūmō, iaciō, veniō**.

b. Deponent verbs have the gerund of the active voice (see § 493). Give the gerund of **cōnor, vereor, sequor, patior, partior**.

2. The gerund is the neuter singular of the future passive participle used as a noun, and has the same formation. (Cf. § 374. d.)

**404. The Gerundive.** The gerundive is the name given to the future passive participle (§ 374. d) when the participle approaches the meaning of a verbal noun and is translated like a gerund. It is the adjective corresponding to the gerund. For example, to translate *the plan of waging war*, we may use the gerund with its direct object and say **cōnsilium gerendī bellum**; or we may use the gerundive and say **cōnsilium bellī gerendī**, which means, literally, *the plan of the war to be waged*, but which came to have the same force as the gerund with its object, and was even preferred to it.

**405.** Compare the following parallel uses of the gerund and gerundive:

	GERUND	GERUNDIVE
Gen.	<b>Spēs faciendī pācem</b> <i>The hope of making peace</i>	<b>Spēs faciendae pācis</b> <i>The hope of making peace</i>
Dat.	<b>Locus idōneus pugnandō</b> <i>A place suitable for fighting</i>	<b>Locus idōneus castrīs pōnendīs</b> <i>A place suitable for pitching camp</i>
Acc.	<b>Misit equitēs ad īsequendum</b> <i>He sent horsemen to pursue</i>	<b>Misit equitēs ad īsequendōs hostīs</b> <i>He sent horsemen to pursue the enemy</i>
Abl.	<b>Nārrandō fābulās magister puerīs placuit</b> <i>The teacher pleased the boys by telling stories</i>	<b>Nārrandīs fābulīs magister puerīs placuit</b> <i>The teacher pleased the boys by telling stories</i>

a. We observe

(1) That the gerund is a noun and the gerundive an adjective.

(2) That the gerund, being a noun, may stand alone or with an object.

(3) That the gerundive, being an adjective, is used only in agreement with a noun.

**406. RULE. Gerund and Gerundive.** 1. *The Gerund is a verbal noun and is used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The constructions of these cases are in general the same as those of other nouns.*

2. *The Gerundive is a verbal adjective and must be used instead of gerund + object excepting in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition. Even in these instances the gerundive construction is more usual.*

**407. RULE. Gerund or Gerundive of Purpose.** *The accusative of the gerund or gerundive with ad, or the genitive with causā<sup>3</sup> (= for the sake of), is used to express purpose.*

GERUND	GERUNDIVE
<b>Ad audiendum vēnērunt</b> or <b>Audiendī causā vēnērunt</b> <i>They came to hear</i>	<b>Ad urbem videndam vēnērunt</b> or <b>Urbis videndae causā vēnērunt</b> <i>They came to see the city</i>

3. **causā** always follows the genitive.

NOTE. These sentences might, of course, be written with the subjunctive of purpose,—**vēnērunt ut audirent; vēnērunt ut urbem vidērent**. In short expressions, however, the gerund and gerundive of purpose are rather more common.

**408.** We have learned that the word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the genitive, as, **equus Galbae**, *Galba's horse*. If, now, we wish to express the idea *the horse is Galba's*, Galba remains the possessor, and hence in the genitive as before, but now stands in the predicate, as, **equus est Galbae**. Hence this is called the predicate genitive.

**409. RULE. Predicate Genitive.** *The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate, especially after the forms of **sum**, and is then called the predicate genitive.*

**410. IDIOMS**

**alicui negotium dare**, *to employ someone* (lit. *to give business to some one*)  
**novis rebus studere**, *to be eager for a revolution* (lit. *to be eager for new things*)  
**rei militaris peritissimus**, *very skillful in the art of war*  
**se suaque omnia**, *themselves and all their possessions*

**411. EXERCISES**

I. 1. Caesar cum in Galliā bellum gereret, militibus decimae legiōnis maximē fāvit quia rei militāris peritissimī erant. 2. Sociīs negotium dedit rei frumentāriae cūrandaē. 3. Lēgāti nōn solum audiendī causā sed etiam dicendī causā vērunt. 4. Imperātor iussit explorātōres locum idōneum mūindō reperire. 5. Nuper hae gentēs novis rēbus studēbant; mox iis persuādēbō ut Caesarī sē suaque omnia dēdant. 6. Iubere est reginae<sup>1</sup> et pārere est multitudinis.<sup>4</sup> 7. Hōc proeliō factō quidam ex hostibus ad pācem petendam venērunt. 8. Erant quī arma trādere nōllent. 9. Hostēs tam celeriter prōgressī sunt ut spatium pīla in hostīs iaciendī non darētur. 10. Spatium neque arma capiendī<sup>5</sup> neque auxiliī petendī<sup>2</sup> datum est.

II. 1. These ornaments<sup>6</sup> belong to Cornelia. 2. Men very skillful in the art of war were sent<sup>7</sup> to capture the town. 3. The scouts found a hill suitable for fortifying very near to the river. 4. Soon the cavalry will come<sup>8</sup> to seek supplies. 5. The mind of the Gauls is eager for revolution and for undertaking wars. 6. To lead the line of battle<sup>8</sup> belongs to the general. 7. <sup>10</sup>Whom shall we employ to look after the grain supply?

4. Predicate genitive.
5. Which of these expressions is gerund and which gerundive?
6. *belong to = are of.*
7. Use the gerundive with **ad**.
8. Use the genitive with **causā**. Where should **causā** stand?
9. Compare the first sentence.
10. Compare the second sentence in the Latin above.

Reading Selection

LESSON LXXII

THE IRREGULAR VERB **EŌ** · INDIRECT STATEMENTS

**412.** Learn the principal parts and the conjugation of **eō**, *go* (§ 499).

a. Notice that **i-**, the root of **eō**, is changed to **e-** before a vowel, excepting in **iēns**, the nominative of the present participle. In the perfect system **-v-** is regularly dropped.

**413.** Learn the meaning and principal parts of the following compounds of **eō** with prepositions:

**ad' eō, adī' re, ad' iī, ad' itus**, *go to, visit*, with the accusative  
**ex' eō, exī' re, ex' iī, ex' itus**, *go forth*, with **ex** or **dē** and the ablative of the place from which  
**in' eō, inī' re, in' iī, in' itus**, *begin, enter upon*, with the accusative  
**red' eō, redī' re, red' iī, red' itus**, *return*, with **ad** or **in** and the accusative of the place to which  
**trāns' eō, trānsī' re, trāns' iī, trāns' itus**, *cross*, with the accusative

**414. Indirect Statements in English.** Direct statements are those which the speaker or writer makes himself or which are quoted in his exact language. Indirect statements are those reported in a different form of words from that used by the speaker or writer. Compare the following direct and indirect statements:

Direct statements	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The Gauls are brave</li> <li>2. The Gauls were brave</li> <li>3. The Gauls will be brave</li> </ol>
Indirect statements after a verb in the present tense	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>He says</i> that the Gauls <i>are</i> brave</li> <li>2. <i>He says</i> that the Gauls <i>were</i> brave</li> <li>3. <i>He says</i> that the Gauls <i>will be</i> brave</li> </ol>
Indirect statements after a verb in a past tense	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>He said</i> that the Gauls <i>were</i> brave</li> <li>2. <i>He said</i> that the Gauls <i>had been</i> brave</li> <li>3. <i>He said</i> that the Gauls <i>would be</i></li> </ol>

We see that in English

- a. The indirect statement forms a clause introduced by the conjunction *that*.
- b. The verb is finite (cf. § 173) and its subject is in the nominative.
- c. The tenses of the verbs originally used are changed after the past tense, *He said*.

**415. Indirect Statements in Latin.** In Latin the direct and indirect statements above would be as follows:

DIRECT STATEMENTS	1. <b>Galli sunt fortēs</b> 2. <b>Galli erant fortēs</b> 3. <b>Galli erunt fortēs</b>
INDIRECT STATEMENTS	1. <b>Dīcit</b> or <b>Dīxit Gallōs esse fortīs</b> ( <i>He says or He said the Gauls to be brave</i> ) <sup>1</sup> 2. <b>Dīcit</b> or <b>Dīxit Gallōs fuisse fortīs</b> ( <i>He says or He said the Gauls to have been brave</i> ) <sup>1</sup> 3. <b>Dīcit</b> or <b>Dīxit Gallōs futūrōs esse fortīs</b> ( <i>He says or He said the Gauls to be about to be brave</i> ) <sup>1</sup>

1. These parenthetical renderings are not inserted as translations, but merely to show the literal meaning of the Latin.

Comparing these Latin indirect statements with the English in the preceding section, we observe three marked differences:

- a. There is no conjunction corresponding to *that*.
- b. The verb is in the infinitive and its subject is in the accusative.
- c. The tenses of the infinitive are not changed after a past tense of the principal verb.

**416. RULE. Indirect Statements.** *When a direct statement becomes indirect, the principal verb is changed to the infinitive and its subject nominative becomes subject accusative of the infinitive.*

**417. Tenses of the Infinitive.** When the sentences in § 415 were changed from the direct to the indirect form of statement, **sunt** became **esse**, **erant** became **fuisse**, and **erunt** became **futūrōs esse**.

**418. RULE. Infinitive Tenses in Indirect Statements.** *A present indicative of a direct statement becomes present infinitive of the indirect, a past indicative becomes perfect infinitive, and a future indicative becomes future infinitive.*

NOTE. When translating into Latin an English indirect statement, first decide what tense of the indicative would have been used in the direct form. That will show you what tense of the infinitive to use in the indirect.

**419. RULE. Verbs followed by Indirect Statements.** *The accusative-with-infinitive construction in indirect statements is found after verbs of **saying, telling, knowing, thinking, and perceiving**.*

**420.** Verbs regularly followed by indirect statements are:

- a. Verbs of saying and telling:  
**dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, say**  
**negō, negāre, negāvī, negātus, deny, say not**  
**nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus, announce**  
**respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōsus, reply**
- b. Verbs of knowing:  
**cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, learn, (in the perf.) know**  
**sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, know**
- c. Verbs of thinking:  
**arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum, think, consider**  
**existimō, existimāre, existimāvī, existimātus, think, believe**  
**iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus, judge, decide**  
**putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus, reckon, think**  
**spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus, hope**
- d. Verbs of perceiving:  
**audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus, hear**  
**sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel, perceive**  
**videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, see**  
**intelligō, intelligere, intelligēxī, intelligētus, understand, perceive**

Learn such of these verbs as are new to you.

**421. IDIOMS**

**postrīdiē eius diēi, on the next day** (lit. *on the next day of that day*)  
**initā aestāte, at the beginning of summer**  
**memoriā tenēre, to remember** (lit. *to hold by memory*)  
**per explorātōrēs cognōscere, to learn through scouts**

422. EXERCISES

I. 1. It, ĩmus, ĩte, ĩre. 2. Euntĭ, ĩsse *or*ĭsse, ĩbunt, eunt. 3. Eundi, ut eant, ĩbitis, ĩs. 4. Nĕ ĩrent, ĩ, ĩbant, ĩerat. 5. Caesar per explorĀtores cognōvit Gallōs flūmen trānsisse. 6. Rōmānĭ audĭvĕrunt Helvĕtiōs ĩnitā aestĀte dĕ finibus suīs exitūrōs esse. 7. LegĀtĭ respondĕrunt nĕminem ante Caesarem ĩllam ĩnsulam adisse. 8. Prĭncĭpĕs Gallōrum dĭcunt sĕ nūllum cōnsĭlium contrā Caesaris ĩmperium ĩnitūrōs esse. 9. Arbitrāmur potentiam rĕgĭnae esse maiōrem quam cĭvium. 10. Rōmānĭ negant se libertātem Gallĭs ĕreptūrōs esse. 11. Hĭs rĕbus cognitĭs sĕnsimus lĕgĀtōs non vĕnisse ad pĀcem petendam. 12. Helvĕtĭi sciunt Rōmānōs priōrĕs victōriās memoriā tenĕre. 13. Sociĭ cum ĩntellegĕrent multōs vulnerĀrĭ, statuĕrunt in suōs finis redĭre. 14. Aliquis nūntiĀvit Mārcum cōnsulem creĀtum esse.

II. 1. The boy is slow. He says that the boy is, was, (and) will be slow. 2. The horse is, has been, (and) will be strong. He judged that the horse was, had been, (and) would be strong. 3. We think that the army will go forth from the camp at the beginning of summer. 4. The next day we learned through scouts that the enemy's town was ten miles off.<sup>2</sup> 5. The king replied that the ornaments belonged to<sup>3</sup> the queen.

2. *to be off, to be distant, abesse.*

3. Latin, *were of* (§ 409).

Reading Selection



TUBA

LESSON LXXIII

VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE IRREGULAR VERB *FERŌ* · THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

423. Review the word lists in §§ 513, 514.

424. Learn the principal parts and conjugation of the verb **ferō**, *bear* (§ 498).

1. Learn the principal parts and meanings of the following compounds of *ferō*, *bear*:

**ad** 'ferō, **adfer** 're, **at** 'tulī, **adlā** 'tus, *bring to; report*  
**cōn** 'ferō, **cōnfer** 're, **con** 'tulī, **conlā** 'tus, *bring together, collect*  
**dĕ** 'ferō, **dĕfer** 're, **dĕ** 'tulī, **dĕlā** 'tus, *bring to; report; grant, confer*  
**ĭn** 'ferō, **ĭnfer** 're, **ĭn** 'tulī, **ĭnlā** 'tus, *bring in, bring against*  
**re** 'ferō, **refer** 're, **ret** 'tulī, **relā** 'tus, *bear back, report*

425. The dative is the case of the indirect object. Many intransitive verbs take an indirect object and are therefore used with the dative (cf. § 153). Transitive verbs take a direct object in the accusative; but sometimes they have an indirect object or dative as well. *The whole question, then, as to whether or not a verb takes the dative, depends upon its capacity for governing an indirect object.* A number of verbs, some transitive and some intransitive, which in their simple form would not take an indirect object, when compounded with certain prepositions, have a meaning which calls for an indirect object. Observe the following sentences:

1. **Haec rĕs exercitūi magnam calamitātem attulit**, *this circumstance brought great disaster to the army.*
2. **Germānĭ Gallĭs bellum ĭnferunt**, *the Germans make war upon the Gauls.*
3. **Hae cōpĭae proeliō nōn ĭntererant**, *these troops did not take part in the battle.*
4. **Equitēs fugientibus hostibus occurrunt**, *the horsemen meet the fleeing enemy.*
5. **Galba cōpiīs filium praefĕcit**, *Galba put his son in command of the troops.*

In each sentence there is a dative, and in each a verb combined with a preposition. In no case would the simple verb take the dative.

426. RULE. **Dative with Compounds.** *Some verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, dĕ, ĭn, ĭnter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, admit the dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative.*

NOTE 1. Among such verbs are <sup>1</sup>

**ad** 'ferō, **adfer** 're, **at** 'tulī, **adlā** 'tus, *bring to; report*  
**ad** 'sum, **ades** 'se, **ad** 'fuī, **adfutū** 'rus, *assist; be present*  
**dĕ** 'ferō, **dĕfer** 're, **dĕ** 'tulī, **dĕlātus**, *report; grant, confer*  
**dĕ** 'sum, **dees** 'se, **dĕ** 'fuī, —, *be wanting, be lacking*  
**ĭn** 'ferō, **ĭnfer** 're, **ĭn** 'tulī, **ĭnlā** 'tus, *bring against, bring upon*  
**ĭnter** 'sum, **ĭnteres** 'se, **ĭnter** 'fuī, **ĭnterfutū** 'rus, *take part in*  
**occur** 'rō, **occur** 'rere, **occur** 'rĭ, **occur** 'sus, *run against, meet*  
**praefĭ** 'ciō, **praefĭ** 'cere, **praefĕ** 'cĭ, **praefec** 'tus, *appoint over, place in command of*  
**prae** 'sum, **praees** 'se, **prae** 'fuī, —, *be over, be in command*

1. But the accusative with **ad** or **in** is used with some of these, when the idea of *motion to* or *against* is strong.

#### 427. IDIOMS

**graviter** or **molestē ferre**, *to be annoyed at, to be indignant at*, followed by the accusative and infinitive

**sē cōnferre ad** or **in**, with the accusative, *to betake one's self to*

**alicui bellum inferre**, *to make war upon some one*

**pedem referre**, *to retreat* (lit. *to bear back the foot*)

#### 428. EXERCISES

I. 1. Fer, ferent, ut ferant, ferunt. 2. Ferte, ut ferrent, tulisse, tulerant. 3. Tulimus, ferēns, lātus esse, ferre. 4. Cum nāvīgia insulae adpropinquārent, barbarī terrōre commōtī pedem referre cōnātī sunt. 5. Gallī molestē ferēbant Rōmānōs agrōs vastāre. 6. Caesar sociīs imperāvit nē finitimis suīs bellum inferrent. 7. Explorātōrēs, qui Caesarī occurrerunt, dixerunt exercitum hostium vulneribus dēfessum sēsē in alium locum contulisse. 8. Hostes sciēbant Rōmānōs frūmentō egēre et hanc rem Caesarī summum perīculum adlātūram esse. 9. Impedimentīs in ūnum locum conlātis, aliquī militum flūmen quod nōn longē aberat trānsiērunt. 10. Hōs rēx hortātus est ut ōrāculum adīrent et rēs audītās ad sē referrent. 11. Quem imperātor illī legiōnī praefēcit? Pūblius illī legiōnī pracerat. 12. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, crēbrī ad eum<sup>2</sup> rūmōrēs adferēbantur litterisque quoque certior fiēbat Gallōs obsidēs inter sē dare.

II. 1. The Gauls will make war upon Cæsar's allies. 2. We heard that the Gauls would make war upon Cæsar's allies. 3. Publius did not take part in that battle. 4. We have been informed that Publius did not take part in that battle. 5. The man who was in command of the cavalry was wounded and began to retreat. 6. Cæsar did not place you in command of the cohort to bring<sup>3</sup> disaster upon the army.

2. Observe that when **adferō** denotes *motion to*, it is not followed by the dative; cf. footnote, p. 182.

3. Not the infinitive. (Cf. § 352.)

#### Reading Selection

### LESSON LXXIV

#### VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS

429. Review the word lists in §§ 517, 518.

430. When we report a statement instead of giving it directly, we have an indirect statement. (Cf. § 414.) So, if we report a question instead of asking it directly, we have an indirect question.

DIRECT QUESTION

INDIRECT QUESTION

*Who conquered the Gauls? He asked who conquered the Gauls*

a. An indirect question depends, usually as object, upon a verb of asking (as **petō**, **postulō**, **quaerō**, **rogō**) or upon some verb or expression of saying or mental action. (Cf. § 420.)

431. Compare the following direct and indirect questions:

DIRECT

INDIRECT

**Quis Gallōs vincit?**

*Who is conquering the Gauls?*

a. **Rogat quis Gallōs vincat**

*He asks who is conquering the Gauls*

b. **Rogavit quis Gallōs vinceret**

*He asked who was conquering the Gauls*

**Ubi est Rōma?**

*Where is Rome?*

a. **Rogat ubi sit Rōma**

*He asks where Rome is*

b. **Rogāvit ubi esset Rōma**

*He asked where Rome was*

**Caesare Gallōs vicit?**

*Did Cæsar conquer the Gauls?*

a. **Rogat num Caesar Gallōs vicerit**

*He asks whether Cæsar conquered the Gauls*

b. **Rogāvit num Caesar Gallōs viciisset**

*He asked whether Cæsar had conquered the Gauls*

a. The verb in a direct question is in the indicative mood, but the mood is subjunctive in an indirect question.

b. The tense of the subjunctive follows the rules for tense sequence.

c. Indirect questions are introduced by the same interrogative words as introduce direct questions, excepting that *yes-or-no* direct questions (cf. § 210) on becoming indirect are usually introduced by **num**, *whether*.

432. RULE. **Indirect Questions.** *In an indirect question the verb is in the subjunctive and its tense is determined by the law for tense sequence.*

#### 433. IDIOMS

**dē tertiā vigiliā**, *about the third watch*  
**iniuriās alicui inferre**, *to inflict injuries upon some one*  
**facere verba prō**, with the ablative, *to speak in behalf of*  
**in reliquum tempus**, *for the future*

#### 434. EXERCISES

I. 1. Rēx rogāvit quid lēgātī postulārent et cūr ad sē vēnissent. 2. Quaesivit quoque num nec recentis iniuriās nec dubiam Rōmānōrum amicitiam memoriā tenērent. 3. Vidētisne quae oppida hostēs oppugnāverint? 4. Nōne scītis cūr Gallī sub montem sēse contulerint? 5. Audīvimus quās iniurias tibi Germānī intulissent. 6. Dē tertiā vigiliā imperātor mīsit hominēs qui cognōscerent quae esset nātūra montis. 7. Prō hīs orātor verba fēcit et rogāvit cūr cōsulēs nāvīs ad plēnem summī periculī locum mittere vellent. 8. Lēgātis convocātis dēmōstrāvit quid fieri vellet. 9. Nūntius referēbat quid in Gallōrum conciliō dē armīs trādendis dictum esset. 10. Moneō nē in reliquum tempus peditēs et equitēs trāns flūmen dūcās.

II. 1. What hill did they seize? I see what hill they seized. 2. Who has inflicted these injuries upon our dependents? 3. They asked who had inflicted those injuries upon their dependents. 4. Whither did you go about the third watch? You know whither I went. 5. At what time did the boys return home? I will ask at what time the boys returned home.

[Reading Selection](#)

### LESSON LXXV

#### VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE, OR END FOR WHICH

435. Review the word lists in §§ 521, 522.

436. Observe the following sentences:

1. **Explōrātōrēs locum castrīs dēlēgērunt**, *the scouts chose a place for a camp.*
2. **Hoc erat magnō impedimentō Gallis**, *this was (for) a great hindrance to the Gauls.*
3. **Duās legiōnēs praesidiō castrīs reliquit**, *he left two legions as (lit. for) a guard to the camp.*

In each of these sentences we find a dative expressing the *purpose or end for which* something is intended or for which it serves. These datives are **castrīs**, **impedimentō**, and **praesidiō**. In the second and third sentences we find a second dative expressing the *person or thing affected* (**Gallis** and **castrīs**). As you notice, these are true datives, covering the relations of *for which* and *to which*. (Cf. § 43.)

437. **RULE. Dative of Purpose or End.** *The dative is used to denote the purpose or end for which, often with another dative denoting the person or thing affected.*

#### 438. IDIOMS

**cōsiliū omittere**, *to give up a plan*  
**locum castrīs dēligere**, *to choose a place for a camp*  
**alicui magnō ūsuī esse**, *to be of great advantage to some one* (lit. *for great advantage to some one*)

#### 439. EXERCISES

I. 1. Rogāvit cūr illae cōpiae relictæ essent. Respondērunt illās cōpiās esse praesidiō castrīs. 2. Caesar mīsit explōrātōrēs ad locum dēligendum castrīs. 3. Quisque exīstimāvit ipsum nōmen Caesaris magnō terrōri barbarīs futurum esse. 4. Primā lūce idem exercitus proelium ācre commisit, sed gravia suōrum vulnera magnæ cūrae imperātōri erant. 5. Rēx respondit amicitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnamentō et praesidiō dēbere esse. 6. Quis praerat equitātūi quem auxiliō Caesarī sociī miserant? 7. Aliquibus rēs secundae sunt summae calamitātī et rēs adversae sunt mirō ūsuī. 8. Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō quod equitātus ā dextrō cornū premēbat. 9. Memoria prīstinae virtūtis nōn minus quam metus hostium erat nostrīs magnō ūsuī. 10. Tam dēnsa erat silva ut prōgredi nōn possent.

II. 1. I advise you <sup>1</sup>to give up the plan <sup>2</sup>of making war upon the brave Gauls. 2. Do you know <sup>3</sup>where the cavalry has chosen a place for a camp? 3. The fear of the enemy will be of great advantage to you. 4. Cæsar left three cohorts as (for) a guard to the baggage. 5. In winter the waves of the lake are so great <sup>4</sup>that they are (for) a great hindrance to ships. 6. Cæsar inflicted severe <sup>5</sup>punishment on those who burned the public buildings.

1. Subjunctive of purpose. (Cf. § 366.)
2. Express by the genitive of the gerundive.
3. Indirect question.
4. A clause of result.
5. **gravis, -e.**

[Reading Selection](#)

## VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF QUALITY OR DESCRIPTION

440. Review the word lists in §§ 524, 525.

441. Observe the English sentences

- (1) *A man **of** great courage*, or (2) *A man **with** great courage*  
 (3) *A forest **of** tall trees*, or (4) *A forest **with** tall trees*

Each of these sentences contains a phrase of quality or description. In the first two a man is described; in the last two a forest. The descriptive phrases are introduced by the prepositions *of* and *with*.

In Latin the expression of quality or description is very similar.

The prepositions *of* and *with* suggest the genitive and the ablative respectively, and we translate the sentences above

- (1) **Vir magnae virtūtis**, or (2) **Vir magnā virtūte**  
 (3) **Silva altārum arborum**, or (4) **Silva altis arboribus**

There is, however, one important difference between the Latin and the English. In English we may say, for example, *a man of courage*, using the descriptive phrase without an adjective modifier. *In Latin, however, an adjective modifier must always be used*, as above.

*a. Latin makes a distinction between the use of the two cases in that numerical descriptions of measure are in the genitive and descriptions of physical characteristics are in the ablative. Other descriptive phrases may be in either case.*

## 442. EXAMPLES

1. **Fossa duodecim pedum**, *a ditch of twelve feet.*
2. **Homō magnīs pedibus et parvō capite**, *a man with big feet and a small head.*
3. **Rēx erat vir summā audāciā** or **rēx erat vir summae audāciae**, *the king was a man of the greatest boldness.*

443. RULE. **Genitive of Description.** *Numerical descriptions of measure are expressed by the genitive with a modifying adjective.*

444. RULE. **Ablative of Description.** *Descriptions of physical characteristics are expressed by the ablative with a modifying adjective.*

445. RULE. **Genitive or Ablative of Description.** *Descriptions involving neither numerical statements nor physical characteristics may be expressed by either the genitive or the ablative with a modifying adjective.*

## 446. IDIOMS

- Helvētiīs in animō est**, *the Helvetii intend*, (lit. *it is in mind to the Helvetians*)  
**in mātirimōnium dare**, *to give in marriage*  
**nihil posse**, *to have no power*  
**fossam perdūcere**, *to construct a ditch* (lit. *to lead a ditch through*)

## 447. EXERCISES

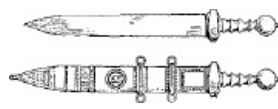
I. 1. Militēs fossam decem pedum per eōrum finis perdūxērunt. 2. Prīnceps Helvētiōrum, vir summae audāciae, prīncipibus gentium finitimārum sorōrēs in mātirimōnium dedit. 3. Eōrum amicitiam cōfirmāre voluit quō facilius Rōmānis bellum inferret. 4. Germanī et Gallī nōn erant eiusdem gentis. 5. Omnēs ferē Germānī erant magnīs corporum viribus.<sup>1</sup> 6. Gallī qui oppidum fortiter dēfendēbant saxa ingentis magnitudinis dē mūrō iaciēbant. 7. Cum Caesar ab explōrātōribus quaereret quī illud oppidum incolerent, explōrātōrēs respondērunt eōs esse homines summā virtūte et magnō cōsiliō. 8. Moenia vīgintī pedum ā sinistrā parte, et ā dextrā parte flūmen magnae altitudinis oppidum dēfendēbant. 9. Cum Caesar in Galliam pervēnisset, erat rūmor Helvētiīs in animō esse iter per prōvinciam Rōmānam facere. 10. Caesar, ut eōs ab finibus Rōmānis prohiberet, mūnitiōnem<sup>2</sup> multa mīlia passuum longam fēcit.

II. 1. Cæsar was a general of much wisdom and great boldness, and very skillful in the art of war. 2. The Germans were of great size, and thought that the Romans had no power. 3. Men of the highest courage were left in the camp as (for) a guard to the baggage. 4. The king's daughter, who was given in marriage to the chief of a neighboring state, was a woman of very beautiful appearance. 5. The soldiers will construct a ditch of nine feet around the camp. 6. A river of great width was between us and the enemy.

1. From **vīs**. (Cf. § 468.)

2. Genitives and ablatives of description are adjective phrases. When we use an *adverbial* phrase to tell *how long* or *how high* or *how deep* anything is, we must use the accusative of extent. (Cf. § 336.) For example, in the sentence above **multa mīlia passuum** is an adverbial phrase (accusative of extent) modifying **longam**. If we should omit **longam** and say *a fortification of many miles*, the genitive of description (an adjective phrase) modifying **mūnitiōnem** would be used, as **mūnitiōnem multōrum mīlium passuum**.





## GLADII

### LESSON LXXVII

#### REVIEW OF AGREEMENT, AND OF THE GENITIVE, DATIVE, AND ACCUSATIVE

**448.** There are four agreements:

1. That of the predicate noun or of the appositive with the noun to which it belongs (§§ 76, 81).
2. That of the adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle with its noun (§ 65).
3. That of a verb with its subject (§ 28).
4. That of a relative pronoun with its antecedent (§ 224).

**449.** The relation expressed by the **genitive** is, in general, denoted in English by the preposition *of*. It is used to express

1. Possession | a. As attributive (§ 38).  
| b. In the predicate (§ 409).
2. The whole of which a part is taken (partitive genitive) (§ 331).
3. Quality or description (§§ 443, 445).

**450.** The relation expressed by the **dative** is, in general, denoted in English by the prepositions *to* or *for* when they do not imply motion through space. It is used to express

1. The indirect object | a. With intransitive verbs and with transitive verbs in connection with a direct object in the accusative (§ 45).  
| b. With special intransitive verbs (§ 154).  
| c. With verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super** (§ 426).
2. The object to which the quality of an adjective is directed (§ 143).
3. The purpose, or end for which, often with a second dative denoting the person or thing affected (§ 437).

**451.** The **accusative** case corresponds, in general, to the English objective. It is used to express

1. The direct object of a transitive verb (§ 37).
2. The predicate accusative together with the direct object after verbs of *making, choosing, falling, showing*, and the like (§ 392).
3. The subject of the infinitive (§ 214).
4. The object of prepositions that do not govern the ablative (§ 340).
5. The duration of time and the extent of space (§ 336).
6. The place to which (§§ 263, 266).

#### **452. EXERCISES**

I. 1. Militēs quōs vīdimus dīxērunt imperium bellī esse Caesaris imperātōris. 2. Helvētī statuērunt quam<sup>1</sup> maximum numerum equōrum et carrōrum cōgere. 3. Tōtīus Galliae Helvētī plūrimum valuērunt. 4. Multās hōrās ācritēr pugnātum est neque quisquam poterat vidēre hostem fugientem. 5. Virī summae virtūtis hostīs decem mīlia passuum īsecūtī sunt. 6. Caesar populō Rōmānō persuāsīt ut sē cōsulem creāret. 7. Victōria exercitūs erat semper imperātōrī grātīssīma. 8. Trīduum iter fēcērunt et Genāvam, in oppidum<sup>2</sup> hostium, pervēnērunt. 9. Caesar audīvit Germānōs bellum Gallīs intulisse. 10. Magnō ūsuī mīlitibus Caesaris erat quod priōribus proeliīs sēsē exercuerant.

II. 1. One<sup>3</sup> of the king's sons and many of his men were captured. 2. There was no one who wished<sup>4</sup> to appoint her queen. 3. The grain supply was always a care (for a care) to Cæsar, the general. 4. I think that the camp is ten miles distant. 5. We marched for three hours through a very dense forest. 6. The plan<sup>5</sup> of making war upon the allies was not pleasing to the king. 7. When he came to the hill he fortified it<sup>6</sup> by a twelve-foot wall.

1. What is the force of **quam** with superlatives?
2. **urbs** or **oppidum**, appositive to a name of a town, takes a preposition.
3. What construction is used with numerals in preference to the partitive genitive?
4. What mood? (Cf. § 390.)
5. Use the gerund or gerundive.
6. Latin, *by a wall of twelve feet*.

## REVIEW OF THE ABLATIVE

**453.** The relations of the ablative are, in general, expressed in English by the prepositions *with* (or *by*), *from* (or *by*), and *in* (or *at*). The constructions growing out of these meanings are

**I. Ablative rendered *with* (or *by*):**

1. Cause (§ 102)
2. Means (§ 103)
3. Accompaniment (§ 104)
4. Manner (§ 105)
5. Measure of difference (§ 317)
6. With a participle (ablative absolute) (§ 381)
7. Description or quality (§§ 444, 445)
8. Specification (§ 398)

**II. Ablative rendered *from* (or *by*):**

1. Place from which (§§ 179, 264)
2. Ablative of separation (§ 180)
3. Personal agent with a passive verb (§ 181)
4. Comparison without **quam** (§ 309)

**III. Ablative rendered *in* (or *at*):**

1. Place at or in which (§§ 265, 266)
2. Time when or within which (§ 275)

**454. EXERCISES**

I. 1. Gallī locīs superiōribus occupātīs itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. 2. Omnēs oppidānī ex oppidō ēgressī salūtem fugā petere incēpērunt. 3. Caesar docet sē militum vitam suā salūte habēre multō cāriōrem. 4. Cum celerius omnium opīniōne pervēnisset, hostēs ad eum obsidēs misērunt. 5. Vicus in valle positus montibus altissimis undique continētur. 6. Plūrimum inter Gallōs haec gēns et virtūte et hominum numerō valēbat. 7. Secundā vigiliā nullō certō ordine neque imperiō ē castrīs ēgressī sunt. 8. Duābus legiōnibus Genāvae relictīs, proximō diē cum reliquīs domum profectus est. 9. Erant itinera duo quibus itineribus Helvētīi domō exire possent. 10. Rēx erat summā audāciā et magnā apud populum potentiā. 11. Gallī timōre servitūtis commōtī bellum parābant. 12. Caesar monet lēgātōs ut contineant militēs, nē studiō pugnandī aut spē praedae longius<sup>1</sup> prōgrediantur. 13. Bellum ācerrimum ā Caesare in Gallōs gestum est.

II. 1. The lieutenant after having seized the mountain restrained his (men) from battle. 2. All the Gauls differ from each other in laws. 3. This tribe is much braver than the rest. 4. This road is <sup>2</sup>ten miles shorter than that. 5. In summer Cæsar carried on war in Gaul, in winter he returned to Italy. 6. At midnight the general set out from the camp with three legions. 7. I fear that you cannot protect<sup>3</sup> yourself from these enemies. 8. <sup>4</sup>After this battle was finished peace was made by all the Gauls.

1. **longius**, *too far*. (Cf. § 305.)

2. Latin, *by ten thousands of paces*.

3. **dēfendere**.

4. Ablative absolute.

## LESSON LXXIX

## REVIEW OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE, THE INFINITIVE, AND THE SUBJUNCTIVE

**455.** The gerund is a verbal noun and is used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The constructions of these cases are in general the same as those of other nouns (§§ 402; 406.1).

**456.** The gerundive is a verbal adjective and must be used instead of gerund + object, excepting in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition. Even in these instances the gerundive construction is more usual (§ 406.2).

**457.** The infinitive is used:

I. As in English.

a. As subject or predicate nominative (§ 216).

b. To complete the predicate with verbs of incomplete predication (complementary infinitive) (§ 215).

c. As object with subject accusative after verbs of *wishing*, *commanding*, *forbidding*, and the like (§ 213).

II. In the principal sentence of an indirect statement after verbs of *saying* and *mental action*. The subject is in the accusative (§§ 416, 418, 419).

**458.** The subjunctive is used:

1. To denote purpose (§§ 349, 366, 372).
2. To denote consequence or result (§§ 385, 386).
3. In relative clauses of characteristic or description (§ 390).
4. In **cum** clauses of time, cause, and concession (§ 396).
5. In indirect questions (§ 432).

#### 459. EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar, cum pervēnisset, militēs hortābātur nē cōsiliū oppidī capiendi omitterent. 2. Rēx, castrīs prope oppidū positīs, mīsit explorātōrēs quī cognōscerent ubi exercitus Rōmanus esset. 3. Nēmo relinquēbātur quī arma ferre posset. 4. Nūntiī vidērunt ingentem armōrum multitudinem dē mūrō in fossanī iactam esse. 5. Dux suōs trānsire flūmen iussit. Trānsire autem hoc flūmen erat difficillimum. 6. Rōmānī cum hanc calamitātem molestē ferrant, tamen terga vertere recūsāvērunt. 7. Hōc rūmōre auditō, tantus terror omnium animōs occupāvit ut nē fortissimī quidem proelium committere vellent. 8. Erant quī putārent tempus annī idōneum nōn esse itinerī faciendō. 9. Tam ācriter ab utraque parte pugnābātur ut multa mīlia hominum occīderentur. 10. Quid timēs? Timeō nē Rōmānīs in animō sit tōtam Galliam superāre et nōbīs iniūriās inferre.

II. 1. Do you not see who is standing on the wall? 2. We hear that the plan of taking the town has been given up. 3. Since the Germans thought that the Romans could not cross the Rhine, Cæsar ordered a bridge to be made. 4. When the bridge was finished, the savages were so terrified that they hid themselves. 5. They feared that Cæsar would pursue them. 6. Cæsar <sup>1</sup>asked the traders what the size of the island was. 7. The traders advised him not <sup>2</sup>to cross the sea. 8. He sent scouts <sup>3</sup>to choose a place for a camp.

1. **quaerere ab.**
2. Not infinitive.
3. Use the gerundive with **ad.**

## READING MATTER

### INTRODUCTORY SUGGESTIONS

**How to Translate.** You have already had considerable practice in translating simple Latin, and have learned that the guide to the meaning lies in the endings of the words. If these are neglected, no skill can make sense of the Latin. If they are carefully noted and accurately translated, not many difficulties remain. Observe the following suggestions:

1. Read the Latin sentence through to the end, noting endings of nouns, adjectives, verbs, etc.
2. Read it again and see if any of the words you know are nominatives or accusatives. This will often give you what may be called the backbone of the sentence; that is, subject, verb, and object.
3. Look up the words you do not know, and determine their use in the sentence from their endings.
4. If you cannot yet translate the sentence, put down the English meanings of all the words *in the same order as the Latin words*. You will then generally see through the meaning of the sentence.
5. Be careful to
  - a. Translate adjectives with the nouns to which they belong.
  - b. Translate together prepositions and the nouns which they govern.
  - c. Translate adverbs with the words that they modify.
  - d. *Make sense.* If you do not make sense, you have made a mistake. One mistake will spoil a whole sentence.
6. When the sentence is correctly translated, read the Latin over again, and try to understand it as Latin, without thinking of the English translation.

**The Parts of a Sentence.** You will now meet somewhat longer sentences than you have had before. To assist in translating them, remember, first of all, that every sentence conveys a meaning and either tells us something, asks a question, or gives a command. Every sentence must have a subject and a verb, and the verb may always have an adverb, and, if transitive, will have a direct object.

However long a sentence is, you will usually be able to recognize its subject, verb, and object or predicate complement without any difficulty. These will give you the leading thought, and they must never be lost sight of while making out the rest of the sentence. The chief difficulty in translating arises from the fact that instead of a single adjective, adverb, or noun, we often have a phrase or a clause taking the place of one of these; for Latin, like English, has adjective, adverbial, and substantive clauses and phrases. For example, in the sentence *The idle boy does not study*, the word *idle* is an adjective. In *The boy wasting his time does not study*, the words *wasting his time* form an adjective phrase modifying *boy*. In the sentence *The boy who wastes his time does not study*, the words *who wastes his time* form an adjective clause modifying *boy*, and the sentence is complex. These sentences would show the same structure in Latin.

In translating, it is important to keep the parts of a phrase and the parts of a clause together and not let them become confused with the principal sentence. To distinguish between the subordinate clauses and the principal sentence is of the first importance, and is not difficult if you remember that a clause regularly contains a word that marks it as a clause and that this word usually stands first. These words join clauses to the words they depend on, and are called *subordinate conjunctions*. They are not very numerous, and you will soon learn to recognize them. In Latin they are the equivalents for such words as *when, while, since, because, if, before, after, though, in order that, that*, etc. Form the habit of memorizing the Latin subordinate conjunctions as you meet them, and of noting carefully the mood of the verb in the clauses which they introduce.



HERCULES

### THE LABORS OF HERCULES

Hercules, a Greek hero celebrated for his great strength, was pursued throughout his life by the hatred of Juno. While yet an infant he strangled some serpents sent by the goddess to destroy him. During his boyhood and youth he performed various marvelous feats of strength, and on reaching manhood he succeeded in delivering the Thebans from the oppression of the Minyæ. In a fit of madness, sent upon him by Juno, he slew his own children; and, on consulting the Delphic oracle as to how he should cleanse himself from this crime, he was ordered to submit himself for twelve years to Eurystheus, king of Tiryns, and to perform whatever tasks were appointed him. Hercules obeyed the oracle, and during the twelve years of his servitude accomplished twelve extraordinary feats known as the Labors of Hercules. His death was caused, unintentionally, by his wife Deianira. Hercules had shot with his poisoned arrows a centaur named Nessus, who had insulted Deianira. Nessus, before he died, gave some of his blood to Deianira, and told her it would act as a charm to secure her husband's love. Some time after, Deianira, wishing to try the charm, soaked one of her husband's garments in the blood, not knowing that it was poisoned. Hercules put on the robe, and, after suffering terrible torments, died, or was carried off by his father Jupiter.

#### LIII. <sup>1</sup> THE INFANT HERCULES AND THE SERPENTS

Dī<sup>2</sup> grave supplicium sūmmit de malīs, sed ī quī lēgibus<sup>3</sup> deōrum pārent, etiam post mortem cūrantur. Illa vīta dīs<sup>2</sup> erat grātissima quae hominibus miserīs ūtilissima fuerat. Omnium autem praemiōrum summum erat immortālītās. Illud praemium Herculi datum est.

Herculis pater fuit Iuppiter, māter Alcmēna, et omnium hominum validissimus fuisse dīcitur. Sed Iūnō, rēgīna deōrum, eum, adhūc infantem, interficere studēbat; nam eī<sup>4</sup> et<sup>5</sup> Herculēs et Alcmēna erant invīsī. Itaque mīsīt duās serpentīs, utramque saevissimam, quae mediā nocte domum<sup>6</sup> Alcmēnae vērunt. Ibi Herculēs, cum frātre suō, nōn in lectulō sed in scūtō ingentī dormiēbat. Iam audācēs serpentēs adpropinquāverant, iam scūtum movēbant. Tum frāter, terrōre commōtus, magnā vōce mātrem vocāvit, sed Herculēs ipse, fortior quam frāter, statim ingentīs serpentīs manibus suīs rapuit et interfēcīt.



1. This number refers to the lesson after which the selection may be read.

2. **Dī** and **dīs** are from **deus**. Cf. § 468.

3. **lēgibus**, § 501. 14.

4. **eī**, *to her*, referring to Juno.

5. **et ... et**, *both ... and*.

6. **domum**, § 501. 20.

#### LIV. HERCULES CONQUERS THE MINYÆ

Herculēs ā puerō<sup>1</sup> corpus suum gravissimīs et difficillimīs labōribus exercēbat et hōc modō virēs<sup>2</sup> suās cōfirmāvit. Iam adulēscēns Thēbīs<sup>3</sup> habitābat. Ibi Creōn quīdam erat rēx. Minyæ, gēns validissima, erant finitimī Thēbānīs, et, quia ōlim Thēbānōs vīcerant, quotannis lēgātōs mittēbant et vectīgal postulābant. Herculēs autem cōstituit cīvis suōs hōc vectīgālī liberāre et dixit rēgī, “Dā mihi exercitum tuum et ego hōs superbōs hostīs superābō.” Hanc condiōnem rēx nōn recūsāvit, et Herculēs nūntiōs in omnīs partis dīmīsīt et cōpiās coēgit.<sup>4</sup> Tum tempore opportūnissimō proelium cum Minyīs commīsīt. Diū pugnātum est, sed dēnique illī impetum Thēbānōrum sustinēre nōn potuērunt et terga vertērunt fugamque cēpērunt.

1. **ā puerō**, *from boyhood*.

2. **virēs**, from **vīs**. Cf. § 468.

3. **Thēbīs**, § 501. 36. 1.

4. **coēgit**, from **cōgō**.

#### HE COMMITS A CRIME AND GOES TO THE DELPHIAN ORACLE TO SEEK EXPIATION

Post hoc proelium Creōn rēx, tantā victōriā laetus, filiam suam Herculi in mātirimōnium dedit. Thēbīs Herculēs cum uxōre suā diū vivēbat et ab omnibus magnopere amābātur; sed post multōs annōs subitō<sup>1</sup> in furōrem incidit et ipse suā manū liberōs suōs interfēcīt. Post breve tempus<sup>2</sup> ad sānitātem reductus tantum scelus expiāre cupiēbat et cōstituit ad ōrāculum Delphicum iter facere. Hoc autem ōrāculum erat omnium clārissimum. Ibi sedēbat fēmina quaedam quae Pŷthia appellābātur. Ea cōsiliū dabat iīs quī ad ōrāculum veniēbant.

1. **in furōrem incidit**, *went mad*.

2. **ad sānitātem reductus**, lit. *led back to sanity*. What in good English?



HERCULES LEONEM SUPERAT

#### LV. HERCULES BECOMES SUBJECT TO EURYSTHEUS<sup>1</sup> · HE STRANGLES THE NEMEAN LION

Itaque Herculēs Pŷthiae tōtam rem dēmonstrāvit nec scelus suum abdidit. Ubi iam Herculēs finem fēcīt, Pŷthia iussit eum ad urbem Tīrynthā<sup>2</sup> discēdere et ibi rēgī Eurystheō sēsē committere. Quae<sup>3</sup> ubi audīvit, Herculēs ad illam urbem statim contendit et Eurystheō sē in servitūtem trādīdit et dixit, “Quid prīmum, Ō rēx, mē facere iubēs?” Eurystheus, quī perterrēbātur vī et corpore ingentī Herculis et eum occidī<sup>4</sup> studēbat, ita respondit: “Audī, Herculēs! Multa mira<sup>5</sup> narrantur dē leōne saevissimō quī hōc tempore in valle Nemeaē omnia vāstat. Iubeō tē, virōrum omnium fortissimum, illō mōnstrō hominēs liberāre.” Haec verba Herculi maximē placuērunt. “Properābo,” inquit, “et parēbō imperiō<sup>6</sup> tuō.” Tum in silvās in quibus leō habitābat statim iter fēcīt. Mox feram vīdit et plūrīs impetūs fēcīt; frūstrā tamen, quod neque sagittīs neque ūllō aliō tēlō mōnstrum vulnerāre potuit. Dēnique Herculēs saevum leōnem suīs ingentibus bracchiīs rapuit et faucīs eius omnibus viribus compressit. Hōc modō brevī tempore eum interfēcīt. Tum corpus leōnis ad oppidum in umerīs reportāvit et pellem postea prō<sup>7</sup> veste gerēbat. Omnēs autem quō eam regiōnem incolēbant, ubi fāmam dē morte leōnis ingentis accēpērunt, erant laetissimī et Herculem laudābant verbīs amplissimīs.

1. **Eu-rys'theus** (pronounced *U-ris'thūs*) was king of *Tīryns*, a Grecian city, whose foundation goes back to prehistoric times.

2. **Tīrynthā**, the acc. case of **Tīryns**, a Greek noun.

3. **Quae**, obj. of **audivit**. It is placed first to make a close connection with the preceding sentence. This is called a connecting relative.
4. **occīdī**, pres. pass. infin.
5. **mīra**, *marvelous things*, the adj. being used as a noun. Cf. **omnia**, in the next line.
6. **imperīō**, § 501. 14.
7. **prō**, *for, instead of*.

#### LVI. SLAYING THE LERNE´AN HYDRA

Deinde Herculēs ab Eurystheō iussus est Hydram occīdere. Itaque cum amīcō Iolāō<sup>1</sup> contendit ad palūdem Lernaeam ubi Hydra incolēbat. Hoc autem mōnstrum erat serpēns ingēns quae novem capita habēbat. Mox is mōnstrum repperit et summō<sup>2</sup> cum perīculō collum eius sinistrā manū rapuit et tenuit. Tum dextrā manū capita novem abscīdere incēpit, sed frūstrā labōrābat, quod quotiēns hoc fēcerat totiēns alia nova capita vidēbat. Quod<sup>3</sup> ubi vīdit, statuit capita ignī cremāre. Hōc modō octō capita dēlēvit, sed extrēmum caput vulnerārī nōn potuit, quod erat immortāle. Itaque illud sub ingentī saxō Herculēs posuit et ita victōriam reportāvit.

1. **Iolāō**, abl. of *I-o-lā´us*, the hero’s best friend.
2. Note the emphatic position of this adjective.
3. **Quod ubi**, *when he saw this*, another instance of the connecting relative. Cf. p. 199, l. 3.

#### LVII. THE ARCADIAN STAG AND THE ERYMANTHIAN BOAR

Postquam Eurystheō mors Hydrae nuntiata est, summus terror animum eius occupavit. Itaque iussit Herculem capere et ad sē reportāre cervum quendam; nam minimē cupīvit tantum virum in rēgnō suō tenēre. Hie autem cervus dīcēbātur aurea cornua et pedēs multō<sup>1</sup> celerīōrēs ventō<sup>2</sup> habēre. Prīmum Herculēs vestīgia animālis petīvit, deinde, ubi cervum ipsum vīdit, omnibus vīribus currere incēpit. Per plūrimōs diēs contendit nec noctū cessāvit. Dēnique postquam per tōtum annum cucurrerat—ita dicitur—cervum iam dēfessum cēpit et ad Eurystheum portāvit.

Tum vērō iussus est Herculēs aprum quendam capere quī illō tempore agrōs Erymanthiōs vāstābat et hominēs illius locī magnopere perterrēbat. Herculēs laetē negōtium suscēpit et in Arcadiam celeriter sē recēpit. Ibi mox aprum repperit. Ille autem; simul atque Herculem vīdit, statim quam<sup>3</sup> celerrimē fūgit et metū perterritus in fossam altam sēsē abdidit. Herculēs tamen summā cum difficultāte eum extrāxit, nec aper ūllō modō sēsē liberāre potuit, et vīvus ad Eurystheum portātus est.

1. **multō**, § 501. 27.
2. **ventō**, § 501. 34.
3. **quam**. What is the force of **quam** with a superlative?

#### LVIII. HERCULES CLEANS THE AUGE´AN STABLES AND KILLS THE STYMPHALIAN BIRDS

Deinde Eurystheus Herculi hunc labōrem multō graviōrem imperāvit. Augēās<sup>1</sup> quīdam, quī illō tempore rēgnum Ēlidis<sup>2</sup> obtinēbat, tria mīlia boum<sup>3</sup> habēbat. Hī<sup>4</sup> ingentī stabulō continēbantur. Hoc stabulum, quod per trīgintā annōs nōn pūrgātum erat, Herculēs intrā spatium ūniūs diēi pūrgāre iussus est. Ille negōtium alacriter suscēpit, et prīmum labōre gravissimō maximam fossam fōdit per quam flūminis aquam dē montibus ad mūrū stabulī dūxit. Tum partem parvam mūrī dēlēvit et aquam in stabulum immīsīt. Hōc modō finm operis fēcīt ūnō diē facillimē.

Post paucōs diēs Herculēs ad oppidum Stymphālum iter fēcīt; nam Eurystheus iusserat eum avis Stymphālīdēs occīdere. Hae avēs rōstra ferrea habēbant et hominēs miserōs dēvorābant. Ille, postquam ad locum pervēnit, lacum vīdit in quō avēs incolēbant. Nullō tamen modō Herculēs avibus adpropinquāre potuit; lacus enim nōn ex aquā sed ē limō cōstitit.<sup>5</sup> Dēnique autem avēs<sup>6</sup> dē aliquā causā perterritae in aurās volāvērunt et magna pars eārum sagittīs Herculis occīsa est.

1. **Augēās**, pronounced in English *Aw-jē´as*.
2. **Ēlidis**, gen. case of **Ēlis**, a district of Greece.
3. **boum**, gen. plur. of **bōs**. For construction see § 501. 11.
4. **ingentī stabulō**, abl. of means, but in our idiom we should say *in a huge stable*.
5. **cōstitit**, from **consto**.
6. **dē aliquā causā perterritae**, *frightened for some reason*.



HERCULES ET TAURUS

LIX. HERCULES CAPTURES THE CRETAN BULL AND CARRIES HIM LIVING TO EURYSTHEUS

Tum Eurystheus iussit Herculem portāre vīvum ex īnsulā Crētā taurum quendam saevissimum. Ille igitur nāvem cōscendit—nam ventus erat idōneus—atque statim solvit. Postquam trīduum nāvīgavit, incolumis īnsulae adpropinquāvit. Deinde, postquam omnia parāta sunt, contendit ad eam regiōnem quam taurus vexābat. Mox taurum vidit ac sine ūllō metū cornua eius corripuit. Tum ingentī labōre mōnstrum ad nāvem trāxit atque cum hāc praedā ex īnsulā discessit.

THE FLESH-EATING HORSES OF DIOMEDES

Postquam ex īnsulā Crētā domum pervēnit, Hercules ab Eurystheō in Thrāciam missus est. Ibi Diomēdēs quīdam, vir saevissimus, rēgnum obtinēbat et omnīs ā finibus suis prohibēbat. Herculēs iussus erat equōs Diomedis rapere et ad Eurystheum dūcere. Hī autem equī hominēs miserrimōs dēvorābant dē quibus rēx supplicium sūmere cupiēbat. Herculēs ubi pervēnit, prīmum equōs ā rēge postulāvit, sed rēx eōs dēdere recūsāvit. Deinde ille irā commōtus rēgem occīdit et corpus eius equīs trādīdit. Itaque is quī antea multōs necāverat, ipse eōdem supplicio necātus est. Et equī, nūper saevissima animālia, postquam dominī suī corpus dēvorāvērunt, mānsuētī erant.

LX. THE BELT OF HIPPOLYTE, QUEEN OF THE AMAZONS

Gēns Amāzonum<sup>1</sup> dīcitur<sup>2</sup> omnīnō ex mulieribus fuisse. Hae cum virīs proelium committere nōn verēbantur. Hippolytē, Amāzonum rēgīna, balteum habuit pulcherrimum. Hunc balteum possidēre filia Eurystheī vehementer cupiēbat. Itaque Eurystheus iussit Herculem impetum in Amāzonēs facere. Ille multis cum cōpiīs nāvem cōscendit et paucis diēbus in Amāzonum finīs pervēnit, ac balteum postulāvit. Eum trādere ipsa Hipporytē quidem cupīvit; reliquīs tamen Amāzonibus<sup>3</sup> persuādēre nōn potuit. Postrīdiē Herculēs proelium commisit. Multās hōrās utrimque quam fortissimē pugnātum est Dēnique tamen mulieres terga vertērunt et fugā salutē petiērunt. Multae autem captae sunt, in quō numerō erat ipsa Hippolytē. Herculēs postquam balteum accēpit, omnibus captivīs libertātem dedit.

1. A fabled tribe of warlike women living in Asia Minor.
2. **omnīnō**, etc., *to have consisted entirely of women*.
3. **Amāzonibus**, § 501. 14.

THE DESCENT TO HADES AND THE DOG CERBERUS

Iamque ūnus modo ē duodecim labōribus relinquēbātur sed inter omnīs hic erat difficillimus. Iussus est enim canem Cerberum<sup>4</sup> ex Orcō in lūcem trahere. Ex Orcō autem nēmō antea reverterat. Praeterea Cerberus erat mōnstrum maximē horribile et tria capita habēbat. Herculēs postquam imperia Eurystheī accēpit, statim profectus est et in Orcum dēscendit. Ibi verō nōn sine summō periculō Cerberum manibus rapuit et ingentī cum labōre ex Orcō in lūcem et ad urbem Eurystheī trāxit.

Sic duodecim laborēs illī<sup>5</sup> intrā duodecim annōs cōfectī sunt. Dēnum post longam vītam Herculēs ā deīs receptus est et Iuppiter filiō suō dedit immortalitātem.

4. The dog Cerberus guarded the gate of Orcus, the abode of the dead.
5. **illī**, *those famous*.



HERCULES ET CERBERUS

## LXI. PUBLIUS IS BORN NEAR POMPE II

P. Cornēlius Lentulus,<sup>2</sup> adulēscēns Rōmānus, amplissimā familiā<sup>3</sup> nātus est; nam pater eius, Mārcus, erat dux perītissimus, cuius virtūte<sup>4</sup> et cōnsiliō multae victōriae reportatae erant; atque mater eius, Iūlia, ā clārissimīs maiōribus orta est. Nōn vērō in urbe sed rūri<sup>5</sup> Pūblius nātus est, et cum mātrem habitābat in villā quae in maris litore et sub radicibus magnī montis sita erat. Mōns autem erat Vesuvius et parva urbs Pompēii octō milia<sup>6</sup> passuum<sup>7</sup> aberat. In Italiā antiqūā erant plūrimae quidem villae et pulchrae, sed inter hās omnīs nūlla erat pulchrior quam villa Mārci Iūliaeque. Frōns villae mūrō a maris fluctibus mūniēbātur. Hinc mare et litora et insulae longē lātēque cōspici<sup>8</sup> ac saepe nāvēs longae et onerāriae poterant. Ā tergō et ab utrōque latere agrī ferācissimī patēbant. Undique erat magna variōrum flōrum cōpia et multa ingentium arborum genera quae aestāte<sup>9</sup> umbram dēfessīs agricolīs grātissimam adferēbant. Praeterea erant<sup>1</sup> in agrīs stabulisque multa animālium genera, nōn solum equī et bovēs sed etiam rārae avēs. Etiam erat<sup>10</sup> magna piscina plēna piscium; nam Rōmānī piscis diligenter colēbant.



PUERI ROMANI

1. This story is fiction with certain historical facts in Cæsar's career as a setting. However, the events chronicled might have happened, and no doubt did happen to many a Roman youth.
2. A Roman had three names, as, **Pūblius** (given name), **Cornēlius** (name of the *gēns* or clan), **Lentulus** (family name).
3. Abl. of source, which is akin to the abl. of separation (§ 501. 32).
4. **virtūte**, § 501. 24.
5. **rūri**, § 501. 36. 1.
6. **milia**, § 501. 21.
7. **passuum**, § 501. 11.
8. **cōspici**, infin. with poterant, § 215. Consult the map of Italy for the approximate location of the villa.
9. **aestāte**, § 501. 35.
10. How are the forms of **sum** translated when they precede the subject?

## LXII. HIS LIFE ON THE FARM

Huius villae Dāvus, servus Mārci, est vilicus<sup>1</sup> et cum Lesbiā uxōre omnia cūrat. Vilicus et uxor in casā humilī, mediīs in agrīs sitā, habitant. Ā primā lūce ūsque ad vesperum sē<sup>2</sup> gravibus labōribus exercent ut omnī rēs bene gerant.<sup>3</sup> Plūrima enim sunt officia Dāvī et Lesbiae. Vilicus servōs regit nē tardī sint<sup>4</sup>; mittit aliōs quī agrōs arent,<sup>4</sup> aliōs quī hortōs inrigent,<sup>4</sup> et opera in<sup>5</sup> tōtum diem impōnit. Lesbia autem omnibus vestīmenta parat, cibum coquit, pānem facit.

Nōn longē ab hōrum casā et in summō colle situm surgēbat domicilium ipsius domini dominaeque amplissimum. Ibi plūris annōs<sup>6</sup> Pūblius cum mātrem vitam fēlicem agēbat; nam pater eius, Mārcus, in terrīs longinquīs gravia rei pūblicae bella gerēbat nec domum<sup>7</sup> revertī poterat. Neque puerō quidem molestum est rūri<sup>8</sup> vivere. Eum multae rēs dēlectant. Magnopere amat silvās, agrōs, equōs, bovēs, gallinās, avīs, reliquaque animālia. Saepe plūris hōrās<sup>9</sup> ad mare sedet quō<sup>9</sup> melius fluctūs et nāvīs spectet. Nec omninō sine comitibus erat, quod Lȳdia, Dāvī filia, quae erat eiusdem aetātis, cum eō adhūc infante lūdēbat, inter quōs cum annīs amicitia crēscēbat. Lȳdia nūllum alium ducem dēligēbat et Pūblius ab puellae latere rārō discēdēbat. Itaque sub clārō Italiae sōle Pūblius et Lȳdia, amīcī fidēlissimī, per campōs collisque cotidiē vagābantur. Modo in silvā finitimā lūdebant ubi Pūblius sagittīs<sup>10</sup> celeribus avis dēiciēbat et Lȳdia corōnīs variōrum flōrum comās suās ōrnābat; modo aquam et cibum portābant ad Dāvum servōsque dēfessōs quī agrōs colēbant: modo in casā parvā aut hōrās lactās in lūdō cōnsūmēbant aut auxilium dabant Lesbiae, quae cibum virō et servīs parābat vel aliās rēs domesticās agēbat.



CASA ROMANA

1. The **vilicus** was a slave who acted as overseer of a farm. He directed the farming operations and the sale of the produce.
2. **se**, reflexive pron., object of **exercent**.



3. For the construction, see § 501. 40.
4. **in**, *for*.
5. **annōs**, § 501. 21.
6. **domum**, § 501. 20.
7. **rūrī**, § 501. 36. 1.
8. **hōrās**, cf. **annōs**, line 17.
9. **quō ... spectet**, §§ 349, 350.
10. **sagittis**, § 501. 24.

LXIII. MARCUS LENTULUS, THE FATHER OF PUBLIUS, IS SHIPWRECKED · JULIA RECEIVES A LETTER FROM HIM

Iam Pūblius<sup>1</sup> decem annōs habēbat cum M. Cornēlius Lentulus, pater eius, quī quīnque annōs<sup>2</sup> grave bellum in Asiā gerēbat, non sine glōriā domum<sup>3</sup> revertēbātur. Namque multa secunda proelia fēcerat, maximās hostium cōpiās dēlēverat, multās urbīs populo<sup>4</sup> Rōmānō inimicās cēperat. Primum nūntius pervēnit quī ā Lentulō<sup>5</sup> missus erat<sup>6</sup> ut profectiōnem suam nūntiāret. Deinde plūrīs diēs<sup>7</sup> reditum virī optimī māter filiusque exspectābant et animīs<sup>8</sup> sollicitis deōs immortalīs frūstrā colēbant. Tum dēmum hās litterās summo cum gaudiō accēpērunt:

9“Mārcus Iūliae suac salūtem dicit. Sī valēs, bene est; ego valeō. Ex Graeciā, quō<sup>10</sup> praeter spem et opīniōnem hodiē pervēnī, hās litterās ad tē scribō. Namque nāvis nostra frācta est; nōs autem —<sup>11</sup>dīs est gratia—incolumes sumus. Ex Asiae<sup>12</sup> portū nāvem lēnī ventō solvimus. Postquam<sup>13</sup> altum mare tenuimus<sup>14</sup> nec iam ūllae terrae appāruērunt, caelum undique et undique fluctūs, subitō magna tempestās coorta est et nāvem vehementissimē adflīxit. Ventīs fluctibusque adflīctātī<sup>15</sup> nec sōlem discernere nec cursum tenēre poterāmus et omnia praesentem mortem intentābant. Trīs diēs<sup>16</sup> et trīs noctīs<sup>16</sup> sine rēmīs vēlisque agimur. Quārtō diē<sup>17</sup> primum terra vīsa est et violenter in saxa, quae nōn longē ā litore aberant, dēiectī sumus. Tum vērō maiōra perīcula timēbāmus; sed nauta quīdam, vir fortissimus, ex nāve in fluctūs irātōs dēsiliuit<sup>18</sup> ut fūnem ad litus portāret; quam rem summō labōre vix effēcit. Ita omnēs servātī sumus. Grātiās igitur et honōrem Neptūnō dēbēmus, quī deus nōs ē periculō eripuit. Nunc Athēnīs<sup>19</sup> sum, quō cōnfūgi ut mihi paucās hōrās ad quiētem darem.<sup>20</sup> Quam primum autem aliam nāvem condūcam ut iter ad Italiam reliquum cōnficiam et domum<sup>21</sup> ad meōs cārōs revertar. Salūtā nostrum Pūblium amīcissimē et valētūdinem tuam cūrā dīligerter. <sup>22</sup>Kalendīs Mārtiīs.”

1. *was ten years old.*
2. **annōs**, § 501. 21.
3. **domum**, § 501. 20.
4. **populō**, dat. with inimicās, cf. § 501. 16.
5. **Lentulō**, § 501. 33.
6. **ut ... nūntiāret**, § 501. 40.
7. **diēs**, cf. annōs, 1. 9.
8. **animīs**, abl. of manner. Do you see one in line 15?
9. This is the usual form for the beginning of a Latin letter. First we have the greeting, and then the expression Sī valēs, etc. The date of the letter is usually given at the end, and also the place of writing, if not previously mentioned in the letter.
10. **quō**, *where*.
11. **dīs est grātia**, *thank God*, in our idiom.
12. Asia refers to the Roman province of that name in Asia Minor.
13. **altum mare tenuimus**, *we were well out to sea*.
14. **nec iam**, *and no longer*.
15. **adflīctātī**, perf. passive part. *tossed about*.
16. What construction?
17. **diē**, § 501. 35.
18. **ut ... portāret**, § 501. 40.
19. **Athēnīs**, § 501. 36. 1.
20. **darem**, cf. **portāret**, l. 6.
21. Why not **ad domum**?
22. **Kalendīs Mārtiīs**, *the Calends* or *first of March*; abl. of time, giving the date of the letter.

LXIV. LENTULUS REACHES HOME · PUBLIUS VISITS POMPEII WITH HIS FATHER

Post paucōs diēs nāvis M. Cornēli Lentulī portum Mīsēnī<sup>1</sup> petiit, quī portus nōn longē ā Pompēiīs situs est; quō in portū classis Rōmānā pōnēbātur et ad pugnās nāvālīs ornābātur. Ibi nāvēs omnium generum cōspicī poterant. Iamque incredibilī celeritāte nāvis longa quā Lentulus vehēbātur litorī adpropinquāvit; nam nōn solum ventō sed etiam rēmīs impellēbātur. In altā puppe stābat gubernātor et nōn procul aliquī militēs Rōmānī cum armīs splendidīs, inter quōs clārissimus erat Lentulus. Deinde servī rēmīs contendere cessāvērunt<sup>2</sup>; nautae vēlum contrāxērunt et ancorās iēcērunt. Lentulus statim ē nāvī ēgressus est et<sup>3</sup> ad villam suam

properāvit. Eum Iūlia, Pūblius, tōtaque familia excēpērunt. <sup>4</sup>Quī complexūs, quanta gaudia fuērunt!

Postrīdiē eius diēi Lentulus filiō suō dixit, “Venī, mī Pūblī, mēcum. Pompēiōs iter hodiē faciam. Māter tua suādet<sup>5</sup> ut frūctūs et cibāria emam. Namque plūrīs amicōs ad cēnam vocāvimus et multīs rēbus<sup>6</sup> egēmus. Ea hortātur ut quam primum proficiscāmur.” “Libenter, mī pater,” inquit Pūblius. “Tēcum esse mihi semper est grātum; nec Pompēiōs umquam vidī. Sine morā proficiscī parātus sum.” Tum celeriter currum cōnscondērunt et ad urbis mūrōs vectī sunt. Stabiānā portā<sup>7</sup> urbem ingressī sunt. Pūblius strātās viās mīrātur et saxa altiōra quae in mediō disposita erant et altās orbitās quās rotae inter haec saxa fēcerant. Etiam strepitum mīrātur, multitudinem, carrōs, fontīs, domōs, tabernās, forum<sup>8</sup> cum statuīs, templīs, reliquīsque aedificiīs publicīs.

1. Misenum had an excellent harbor, and under the emperor Augustus became the chief naval station of the Roman fleet. See map of Italy.

2. Why is the infinitive used with **cessāvērunt**?

3. See Plate I, Frontispiece.

4. Observe that these words are exclamatory.

5. What construction follows **suādeō**? § 501. 41.

6. **rēbus**, § 501. 32.

7. This is the abl. of the *way by which* motion takes place, sometimes called the abl. of route. The construction comes under the general head of the abl. of means. For the scene here described, see Plate II, p. 53, and notice especially the stepping-stones for crossing the street (**saxa quae in mediō disposita erant**).

8. The forum of Pompeii was surrounded by temples, public halls, and markets of various sorts. Locate Pompeii on the map.

#### LXV. A DAY AT POMPEII

Apud forum ē currū dēscendērunt et Lentulus dixit, “Hīc sunt multa tabernārum genera, mī Pūblī. Ecce, trāns viam est popīna! <sup>1</sup>Hoc genus tabernārum cibāria vēndit. Frūctūs quoque ante iānuam stant. Ibi cibāria mea emam.” “Optimē,” respondit Pūblius. “At ubi, mī pater, crūstula emere possumus? Namque māter nōbīs imperāvit <sup>2</sup>ut haec quoque parārēmus. Timeō ut <sup>3</sup>ista popīna vēndat crūstula.” “Bene dīcis,” inquit Lentulus. “At nōnne vidēs illum fontem ā dextrā ubi aqua per leōnis caput fluit? In illō ipsō locō est taberna pīstōris quī sine dubiō vēndit crūstula.”

Brevī tempore<sup>4</sup> omnia erant parāta, iamque <sup>5</sup>quīnta hōra erat. Deinde Lentulus et filius ad caupōnam properāvērunt, quod famē<sup>6</sup> et siti<sup>7</sup> urgēbantur. Ibi sub arboris umbrā sēdērunt et puerō imperāvērunt ut sibi<sup>8</sup> cibum et vīnum daret. Huic imperiō<sup>9</sup> puer celeriter pārui. Tum laeti sē<sup>10</sup> ex labōre refēcērunt.

Post prandium prefectī sunt ut alia urbis spectācula vidērent. Illō tempore fuērunt Pompēiīs<sup>11</sup> multa templa, duo theātra, thermae magnumque amphitheātrum, quae omnia post paucōs annōs flammīs atque incendiīs Vesuvī et terrae mōtū dēlēta sunt. Ante hanc calamitātem autem hominēs <sup>1</sup>nihil dē monte veritī sunt. In amphitheātrō quidem Pūblius morārī cupīvit ut spectācula gladiātōria vidēret, quae in<sup>13</sup> illum ipsum diem prōscripta erant et iam <sup>15</sup>rē vērā incēperant. Sed Lentulus dixit, “Morārī, Pūblī, <sup>16</sup>vereor ut possīmus. Iam decima hōra est et via est longa. Tempus suādet ut quam primum domum revertāmur.” Itaque servō imperāvit ut equōs iungeret, et sōlis occāsū<sup>16</sup> ad vīllam pervēnērunt.

1. We say, *this kind of shop*; Latin, *this kind of shops*.

2. **ut ... parārēmus**, § 501. 41.

3. How is **ut** translated after a verb of fearing? How **nē**? Cf. § 501. 42.

4. **tempore**, § 501. 35.

5. **quīnta hōra**. The Romans numbered the hours of the day consecutively from sunrise to sunset, dividing the day, whether long or short, into twelve equal parts.

6. **famē** shows a slight irregularity in that the abl. ending **-e** is long.

7. **sitis**, *thirst*, has **-im** in the acc. sing., **-ī** in the abl. sing., and no plural.

8. Observe that the reflexive pronoun **sibi** does not here refer to the subject of the subordinate clause in which it stands, but to the subject of the main clause. This so-called *indirect* use of the reflexive is often found in object clauses of purpose.

9. What case? Cf. § 501. 14.

10. **sē**, cf. p. 205, l. 7, and *note*.

11. **Pompēiīs**, § 501. 36. 1.

12. **nihil ... veritī sunt**, *had no fears of the mountain*.

13. **in**, *for*.

14. **rē vērā**, *in fact*.

15. **vereor ut**, § 501. 42.

16. **occāsū**, § 501. 35.

#### LXVI. LENTULUS ENGAGES A TUTOR FOR HIS SON

Ā prīmīs annīs quidem Iūlia ipsa filium suum docuerat, et Pūblius nōn solum <sup>1</sup>pūrē et Latīnē loquī

poterat sed etiam commodē legēbat et scribēbat. Iam Ennium<sup>2</sup> aliōsque poētās lēgerat. Nunc vērō Pūblius<sup>3</sup> duodecim annōs habēbat; itaque ei pater bonum magistrum, <sup>4</sup>virum omnī doctrīnā et virtūte ornātissimum, parāvit, <sup>5</sup>quī Graeca, mūsicam, aliāsque artīs doceret. <sup>6</sup>Namque illīs temporibus omnēs ferē gentēs Graecē loquēbantur. Cum Pūbliō aliī puerī, Lentulī amicōrum filiī, <sup>7</sup>discēbant. Nam saepe apud Rōmānōs mōs erat <sup>8</sup>nōn in lūdum filiōs mittere sed domī per magistrum docere. Cotīdiē discipulī cum magistrō in peristylō<sup>9</sup> Mārcī domūs sedēbant. Omnēs puerī bullam auream, orīginis honestae signum, in collō gerēbant, et omnēs togā praetextā amictī erant, <sup>10</sup>quod nōndum sēdecim annōs<sup>11</sup> nātī sunt.

1. **pūrē ... poterat**, freely, *could speak Latin well*. What is the literal translation?
2. **Ennium**, the father of Latin poetry.
3. **duodecim ... habēbat**, cf. p. 206, l. 8, and [note](#).
4. **virum**, etc., *a very well-educated and worthy man*. Observe the Latin equivalent.
5. **quī ... doceret**, a relative clause of purpose. Cf. §§ 349, 350.
6. In Cæsar's time Greek was spoken more widely in the Roman world than any other language.
7. **filiī**, in apposition with **puerī**.
8. **nōn ... mittere**. This infinitive clause is the subject of **erat**. Cf. § 216. The same construction is repeated in the next clause, **domī ... docere**. The object of **docere** is **filiōs** understood.
9. The peristyle was an open court surrounded by a colonnade.
10. At the age of sixteen a boy laid aside the *bullā* and the *toga praetexta* and assumed *toga virilis* or manly gown.
11. **annōs**, § 501. 21. The expression **nōndum sēdecim annōs nātī sunt** means literally, *they were born not yet sixteen years*. This is the usual expression for age. What is the English equivalent?

#### SCENE IN SCHOOL · AN EXERCISE IN COMPOSITION

DISCIPULI. Salvē, magister.

MAGISTER. Vōs quoque omnēs, salvēte. <sup>1</sup>Tabulāsne portāvistis et stilōs?

D. Portāvimus.

M. Iam fābulam Aesōpī<sup>2</sup> discēmus. Ego legam, vōs in tabulis scribite. Et tū, Pūbli, dā mihi ē capsā<sup>3</sup> Aesōpī volūmen. <sup>4</sup>Iam audite omnēs: *Vulpēs et Ūva*.

Vulpēs ōlim famē coācta ūvam dēpendentem vīdit. Ad ūvam saliēbat, sūmere cōnāns. Frūstrā diū cōnāta, tandem irāta erat et salire cessāns dīxit: "Illa ūva est acerba; acerbam ūvam <sup>5</sup>nihil moror."

Omnia ne scripsistis, puerī?

D. Omnia, magister.

1. Tablets were thin boards of wood smeared with wax. The writing was done with a stylus, a pointed instrument like a pencil, made of bone or metal, with a knob at the other end. The knob was used to smooth over the wax in making erasures and corrections.
2. **Aesōpī**, the famous Greek to whom are ascribed most of the fables current in the ancient world.
3. A cylindrical box for holding books and papers, shaped like a hatbox.
4. Ancient books were written on rolls made of papyrus.
5. **nihil moror**, *I care nothing for*.



TABULA ET STILUS

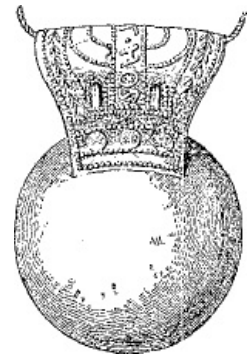
#### LXVII. PUBLIUS GOES TO ROME TO FINISH HIS EDUCATION

Iamque Pūblius, <sup>1</sup>quīndecim annōs nātus, <sup>2</sup>prīmīs litterārum elementīs cōfectis, Rōmam petere voluit ut scholās grammaticōrum et philosophōrum frequentāret. Et facillimē patri<sup>3</sup> suō, qui ipse philosophiae studiō tenēbātur, persuāsit. Itaque <sup>4</sup>omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis, pater filiusque equīs animōsis vectī<sup>5</sup> ad magnam urbem profectī sunt. Eōs proficiscentīs Iūlia tōtaque familia vōtis precibusque prōsecūtāe sunt. Tum per loca<sup>6</sup> plāna et collis silvīs vestītōs viam ingressī sunt ad Nōlam, quod oppidum eōs hospitīō modicō excēpit. Nōlae<sup>7</sup> duās hōrās morātī sunt, quod sōl meridīānus ardēbat. Tum rēctā viā<sup>8</sup> circiter vīgintī milia<sup>9</sup> passuum<sup>9</sup> Capuam,<sup>9</sup> ad īnsignem Campāniae urbem, contendērunt. Eō<sup>10</sup> multā nocte dēfessī pervēnērunt. <sup>11</sup>Postrīdiē eius diēi, somnō et cibō recreātī, Capuā discessērunt et <sup>13</sup>viam Appiam ingressī, quae Capuam tangit et ūsque ad urbem Rōmam dūcit, ante meridīem Sinuessam pervēnērunt, quod oppidum tangit mare. Inde primā lūce proficiscentēs Formiās<sup>13</sup> properāvērunt, ubi Cicerō, ōrātor clarissimus, quī forte apud villam suam erat, eōs benignē excēpit. Hinc <sup>14</sup>itinere vīgintī quīnque milium passuum factō, Tarracīnam, oppidum in saxīs altissimis situm, vīdērunt. Iamque nōn longē aberant palūdēs magnae, quae multa milia passuum undique patent. Per eās pedestris via est gravis et in nāve viātōrēs vehuntur. Itaque <sup>15</sup>equīs relictīs Lentulus et Pūblius nāvem cōscendērunt, et, unā nocte in trānsitū cōsumptā, Forum Appī vērunt. Tum brevī tempore Arīcia eōs excēpit. Hoc oppidum, in colle situm, ab urbe Romā sēdecim milia passuum abest. Inde dēclivis via ūsque ad latum campum dūcit ubi Rōma stat. Quem ad locum ubi Pūblius vēnit et Rōmam adhūc remōtam, maximam tōtius orbis terrārum urbem, cōspēxit, summā admirātiōne et gaudiō adfectus est. Sine morā dēscendērunt, et, mediō intervāllō quam celerrimē superātō, urbem portā Capēnā ingressī sunt.

1. **quīndecim**, etc., cf. p. 210, l. 5, and [note](#).
2. **primis ... cōfectis**, abl. abs. Cf. § 501. 28.
3. **patrī**, dat. with **persuāsit**.
4. **omnibus ... comparātis**, cf. note 2.
5. **vectī**, perf. pass. part. of **vehō**.
6. What is there peculiar about the gender of this word?
7. **Nōlae**, locative case, § 501. 36.2.
8. **viā**, cf. **portā**, p. 208, l. 7, and [note](#).
9. What construction?
10. **Eō**, adv. *there*.
11. **Postriđiē eius diēi**, *on the next day*.
12. **viam Appiam**, the most famous of all Roman roads, the great highway from Rome to Tarentum and Brundisium, with numerous branches. Locate on the map the various towns that are mentioned in the lines that follow.
13. **Formiās**, *Formiæ*, one of the most beautiful spots on this coast, and a favorite site for the villas of rich Romans.
14. **itinere ... factō**, abl. abs. The gen. **mīlium** modifies **itinere**.
15. **equis relictis**. What construction? Point out a similar one in the next line.

#### LXVIII. PUBLIUS PUTS ON THE TOGA VIRILIS

Pūblius iam tōtum annum Rōmae morābātur<sup>1</sup> multaque urbis spectācula viderat et multōs sibi<sup>2</sup> amicōs parāverat. Eī<sup>3</sup> omnēs favēbant; <sup>4</sup>dē eō omnēs bene spērāre poterant. Cotidiē Pūblius scholas philosophōrum et grammaticōrum tantō studiō frequentābat <sup>5</sup>ut aliīs clārum exemplum praebēret. Saepe erat cum patre in cūriā<sup>6</sup>; quae rēs effēcit <sup>7</sup>ut summōs rei pūblicae virōs et audiret et vidēret. Ubi <sup>8</sup>sēdecim annōs natus est, bullam<sup>9</sup> auream et togam praetextam mōre Rōmānō dēposuit atque virilem togam sūmpsit. Virilis autem toga erat omnīnō alba, sed praetexta clāvum purpureum in margine habēbat. <sup>10</sup>Dēpōnere togam praetextam et sūmere togam virilem erat rēs grātissima puerō Rōmānō, quod postea vir et civis Rōmānus habēbātur.



BULLA

<sup>11</sup>His rēbus gestis Lentulus ad uxōrem suam hās litterās scrīpsit:

<sup>12</sup>“Mārcus Iūliae suae salūtem dicit. Sī valēs, bene est; ego valeō. Accēpī tuās litterās. Hās nunc Rōmā per servum fidēlissimum mittō ut dē Pūbliō nostrō quam celerrimē sciās. Nam hodiē eī togam virilem dedī. Ante lucem surrēxī<sup>13</sup> et primum bullam auream dē collō eius remōvī. Hāc Laribus<sup>14</sup> cōsecrātā et sacrīs factis, eum togā virilī vestivī. Interim plūrēs amicī cum multitudine optimōrum cīvium et honestōrum clientium pervēnerant <sup>15</sup>quī Pūblium domō in forum dēdūcerent. Ibi in civitātem receptus est et nōmen, Pūblius Cornēlius Lentulus, apud cīvīs Rōmānōs ascriptum est. Omnēs eī amicissimī fuērunt et magna<sup>16</sup> de eō praedicunt. Sapientior enim aequālibus<sup>17</sup> est et magnum ingenium habet. <sup>18</sup>Cūrā ut valeās.”

1. **morābātur**, translate as if pluperfect.
2. **sibi**, *for himself*.
3. **Eī**, why dat.?
4. **dē ... poterant**, in English, *all regarded him as a very promising youth*; but what does the Latin say?
5. **ut ... praebēret**, § 501. 43.
6. **cūriā**, a famous building near the Roman Forum.
7. **ut ... audiret et vidēret**, § 501. 44.
8. **sēdecim**, etc., cf. p. 210, l. 5, and [note](#).
9. **bullam**, cf. p. 210, l. 3, and [note 4](#).
10. These infinitive clauses are the subject of **erat**. Cf. § 216.
11. **His rēbus gestis**, i.e. the assumption of the *toga virilis* and attendant ceremonies.
12. Compare the beginning of this letter with the one on page 206.
13. **surrēxī**, from **surgō**.
14. The Lares were the spirits of the ancestors, and were worshiped as household gods. All that the house contained was confided to their care, and sacrifices were made to them daily.
15. **quī ... dēdūcerent**, § 350.
16. **magna**, *great things*, a neuter adj. used as a noun.
17. **aequālibus**, § 501. 34.
18. **Cūrā ut valeās**, *take good care of your health*. How does the Latin express this idea?

#### LXIX. PUBLIUS JOINS CÆSAR'S ARMY IN GAUL

Pūblius iam adulēscēns postquam togam virilem sūmpsit, aliīs rēbus studēre incēpit et praesertim ūsū<sup>1</sup> armōrum sē<sup>2</sup> diligenter exercuit. Magis magisque amāvit illās artis quae mīlitārem animum dēlectant. Iamque erant<sup>3</sup> quī eī cursum mīlitārem praedīcerent. Nec sine causā, quod certē patris īsigne exemplum<sup>4</sup> ita multum trahēbat. <sup>5</sup>Paucīs ante annīs C. Iūlius Caesar, ducum Rōmānōrum maximus, cōsul creātus erat et hōc tempore in Galliā bellum grave gerēbat. Atque in exercitū eius plūrēs adulēscētēs mīlitābant, apud quōs erat amīcus quīdam Pūblī. Ille Pūblium crēbrīs litterīs vehemēter hortābātur<sup>6</sup> ut iter in Galliam faceret. Neque Pūblius recūsāvit, et, multīs amīcīs ad portam urbis prōsequentibus, ad Caesaris castra profectus est. Quārtō diē postquam iter ingressus est, ad Alpīs, montīs altissimōs, pervēnit. Hīs summā difficultāte superātis, tandem Gallōrum in finibus erat. Prīmō autem veritus est ut<sup>7</sup> castrīs Rōmānīs adpropinquāre posset, quod Gallī, maximīs cōpiīs coactīs, Rōmānōs obsidēbant et viās omnīs iam cluserant. Hīs rēbus commōtus Pūblius vestem Gallicam induit nē ā Gallīs caperētur, et ita per hostium cōpiās incolumis ad castra pervenire potuit. Intrā mūnitiōnes acceptus, ā Caesare benignē exceptus est. Imperātor fortem adulēscēntem amplissimīs verbīs laudāvit et eum<sup>8</sup> tribūnum mīlitum creāvit.

1. Abl. of means.

2. **sē**, reflexive object of **exercuit**.

3. **quī ... praedīcerent**, § 501. 45.

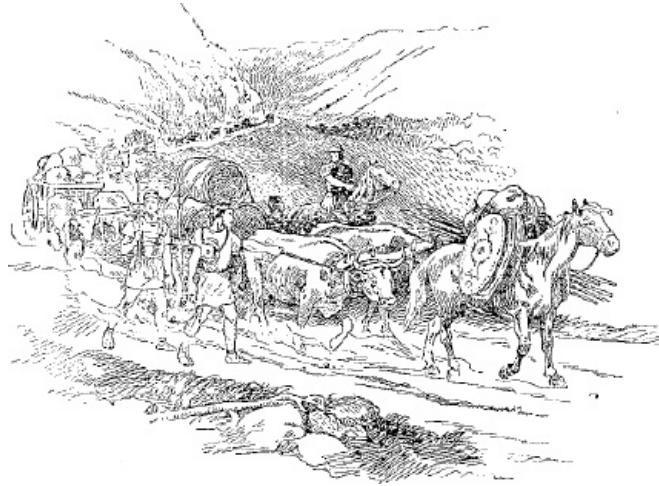
4. **ita multum trahēbat**, *had a great influence in that direction*.

5. **Paucīs ante annīs**, *a few years before*; in Latin, *before by a few years*, **ante** being an adverb and **annīs** abl. of degree of difference.

6. **ut ... faceret**, § 501. 41.

7. **ut**, how translated here? See § 501. 42.

8. The *military tribune* was a commissioned officer nearly corresponding to our rank of colonel. The tribunes were often inexperienced men, so Caesar did not allow them much responsibility.



IMPEDIMENTA

#### HOW THE ROMANS MARCHED AND CAMPED

Exercitus quī in hostium finibus bellum genit multīs perīcūis circumdatus est. <sup>1</sup>Quae perīcula ut vitāret, Rōmāni summam cūram adhibēre solēbant. Adpropinquanteēs cōpiīs hostium agmen ita dispōnēbant<sup>2</sup> ut imperātor ipse cum plāribus legiōnibus expeditis<sup>3</sup> prīmum agmen dūceret. Post eās cōpiās impedimenta<sup>4</sup> tōtius exercitūs conlocābant. <sup>5</sup>Tum legiōnēs quae proximē cōscrip̄tae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant. Equitēs quoque in omnis partis dimittēbantur quī loca explorārent; et centuriōnēs praemittēbantur ut locum castrīs idōneum dēligerent. Locus habēbatur idōneus castrīs<sup>6</sup> quī facile dēfendī posset et prope aquam esset. Quā dē causā castra<sup>7</sup> in colle ab utrāque parte arduō, ā fronte lēniter dēclivī saepe pōnēbantur; vel locus palūdidibus cinctus vel in flūminis rīpīs situs dēligēbātur. Ad locum postquam exercitus pervēnit, aliī militum<sup>8</sup> in armīs erant, aliī castra mūnīre incipiēbant. Nam<sup>9</sup> quō tūtiōrēs ab hostibus militēs essent, nēve incauti et imparātī opprimerentur, castra fossā lātā et vāllō altō mūniēbant. In castrīs portae quattuor erant ut ēruptiō militum omnīs in partis fierī posset. In angulis castrōrum erant turrēs dē quibus tēla in hostīs coniciēbantur. <sup>10</sup>Tālibus in castrīs quālia dēscripsimus Pūblius ā Caesare exceptus est.

1. **Quae perīcula**, object of **vitārent**. It is placed first to make a proper connection with the preceding sentence.

2. **ut ... dūceret**, § 501. 43.

3. **expeditis**, i.e. without baggage and ready for action.

4. **impedimenta**. Much of the baggage was carried in carts and on beasts of burden, as is shown above; but, besides this, each soldier (unless **expeditus**) carried a heavy pack. See also picture, p. 159.

5. The newest legions were placed in the rear, because they were the least reliable.

6. **quī ... posset ... esset**, § 501. 45.

7. **castra**, subject of **pōnēbantur**.
8. **in armīs erant**, *stood under arms*.
9. **quō ... essent**. When is **quō** used to introduce a purpose clause? See § 350. I.
10. **Tālibus in castrīs quālia**, *in such a camp as*. It is important to remember the correlatives **tālis ... quālis**, *such ... as*.

#### LXX. THE RIVAL CENTURIONS

Illis in castrīs erant duo centuriōnēs,<sup>1</sup> fortissimī virī, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus, quōrum neuter alterī virtūte<sup>2</sup> cēdere volēbat. Inter eōs iam multōs annōs infēnsū certāmen gerēbātur. Tum dēnum finis contrōversiae hōc modō<sup>3</sup> factus est. Diē tertiō postquam Pūblius pervēnit, hostēs, maiōribus cōpiīs coāctīs, ācerrimū impetum in castra fēcērunt. Tum Pullō, <sup>4</sup>cum Rōmānī tardiōrēs<sup>5</sup> vidērentur, “Cūr dubitās,” inquit, “Vorēne? Quam commodiōrem occāsionem exspectās? Hic diēs dē virtūte nostrā iūdicābit.” Haec<sup>6</sup> cum dīxisset, extrā mūnitiōnēs prōcessit et in eam hostium partem quae cōfertissima<sup>7</sup> vidēbātur inrūpit. Neque Vorēnus quidem tum vāllō<sup>8</sup> sēsē continet, sed Pullōnem subsequitur. Tum Pullō pīlum in hostīs immittit atque ūnum ex multītūdine prōcurrentem trāicit. Hunc percussū et exanimātum hostēs scūtīs prōtegunt et in Pullōnem omnēs tēla coniciunt. Eius scūtum trānsfigitur et tēlum in balteō dēfigitur. Hic cāsus vāgīnam āvertit et dextram manū eius gladium ēdūcere cōnantis<sup>9</sup> morātur. Eum ita impeditū hostēs circumstant.



CENTURIO

Tum vēro<sup>10</sup> eī labōrantī Vorēnus, cum sit inimicus, tamen auxilium dat. Ad hunc cōnfestim<sup>11</sup> ā Pullōne omnis multītūdō sē convertit. Gladiō cominus pugnat Vorēnus, atque, ūnō interfectō, reliquōs paulum prōpellit. Sed instāns cupidius<sup>12</sup> infēlix, <sup>13</sup>pede sē fallente, concidit.

Huic rūsus circumventō auxilium dat Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs, plūribus interfectīs, summā cum laude intrā mūnitiōnēs sē recipiunt. Sic inimicōrum alter alterī auxilium dedit nec de eōrum virtūte quisquam iūdicāre potuit.

1. A centurion commanded a company of about sixty men. He was a common soldier who had been promoted from the ranks for his courage and fighting qualities. The centurions were the real leaders of the men in battle. There were sixty of them in a legion. The centurion in the picture (p. 216) has in his hand a staff with a crook at one end, the symbol of his authority.
2. **virtūte**, § 501. 30.
3. Abl. of manner.
4. **cum ... vidērentur**, § 501. 46.
5. **tardiōrēs**, *too slow*, a not infrequent translation of the comparative degree.
6. **Haec**, obj. of **dīxisset**. It is placed before **cum** to make a close connection with the preceding sentence. What is the construction of **dīxisset**?
7. **vidēbatur**, **inrūpit**. Why is the imperfect used in one case and the perfect in the other? Cf. § 190.
8. **vāllō**, abl. of means, but in English we should say *within the rampart*. Cf. **ingentī stabulō**, p. 201, l. 13, and note.
9. **cōnantis**, pres. part. agreeing with **eius**.
10. **eī labōrantī**, indir. obj. of dat.
11. **ā Pullōne**, *from Pullo*, abl. of separation.
12. **cupidius**, *too eagerly*.
13. **pede sē fallente**, lit. *the foot deceiving itself*; in our idiom, *his foot slipping*.

#### LXXI. THE ENEMY BESIEGING THE CAMP ARE REPULSED

Cum iam sex hōrās pugnatū esset<sup>1</sup> ac nōn solum virēs sed etiam tēla Rōmānōs dēficerent<sup>1</sup>, atque hostēs ācrius instārent,<sup>1</sup> et vāllum scindere fossamque complēre incēpissent,<sup>1</sup> Caesar, vir rei militāris peritissimus, suīs imperāvit ut proelium paulisper intermitterent,<sup>2</sup> et, signō datō, ex castrīs ērumperent.<sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>Quod iussī sunt faciunt, et subitō ex omnibus portīs ērumpunt. Atque tam celeriter militēs concurrerunt et tam propinquī erant hostēs<sup>4</sup> ut spatium pīla coniciendī<sup>5</sup> nōn darētur. Itaque reiectīs pilīs<sup>6</sup> cominus gladiīs pugnatū est. Diū et audācter hostēs restitērunt et in extrēmā spē salutis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut ā dextrō cornū vehementer<sup>7</sup> multītūdine suōrum aciem Rōmanam premerent. <sup>8</sup>Id imperātor cum animadvertisset, Pūblium adulescentem cum equitātū mīsīt quī labōrantibus<sup>9</sup> auxilium daret. Eius impetum sustinēre nōn potuerunt hostēs<sup>10</sup> et omnēs terga vertērunt. Eōs in fugam datōs Pūblius subsecūtus est usque ad flūmen Rhēnum, quod ab eō locō quīnque mīlia passuum aberat. Ibi paucī salutem sibi reppererunt. Omnibus reliquīs interfectīs, Pūblius et equitēs in castra sēsē recēperunt. Dē hāc calamitāte finitimae gentēs cum certiōrēs factae essent, ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsērunt et sē suaque omnia dēdidērunt.

1. **pugnatū esset**, **dēficerent**, **instārent**, **incēpissent**. These are all subjunctives with **cum**. Cf. § 501. 46.
2. **intermitterent**, **ērumperent**. What use of the subjunctive?
3. **Quod**, etc., *they do as ordered*. The antecedent of **quod** is **id** understood, which would be the

object of **faciunt**.

4. **ut ... darētur**. Is this a clause of purpose or of result?

5. **coniciendī**, § 402.

6. **comminus gladiis pugnātum est**, *a hand-to-hand conflict was waged with swords*.

7. **multitudine suōrum**, *by their numbers*. **suōrum** is used as a noun. What is the literal translation of this expression?

8. **Id imperātor**. **Id** is the obj. and **imperātor** the subj. of **animadvertisset**.

9. **labōrantibus**. This participle agrees with **iīs** understood, the indir. obj. of **daret**; **qui ... daret** is a purpose clause, § 501. 40.

10. **hostēs**, subj. of **potuērunt**.

#### LXXII. PUBLIUS GOES TO GERMANY · ITS GREAT FORESTS AND STRANGE ANIMALS

Initā aestāte Caesar litterīs certior fiēbat et per explorātōrēs cognōscēbat plūrīs civitatēs Galliae novīs rēbus studēre,<sup>1</sup> et contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre<sup>1</sup> obsidēsque<sup>2</sup> inter sē dare,<sup>1</sup> atque cum hīs Germānōs quōsdam quoque sēsē coniūctūrōs esse.<sup>1</sup> Hīs litterīs nūntiisque commōtus Caesar cōstituit quam celerrimē in Gallōs proficiscī,<sup>3</sup> ut eōs inopinantis opprimeret, et Labiēnum lēgātum cum duābus legiōnibus peditum et duōbus milibus equitum in Germānōs mittere.<sup>3</sup> Itaque rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra mōvit. Ab utrōque<sup>5</sup> rēs bene gesta est; nam Caesar tam celeriter in hostium finis pervēnit ut spatium<sup>6</sup> cōpiās cōgendī nōn darētur<sup>7</sup>; et Labiēnus dē Germānis tam grave supplicium sūmpsit ut nēmō ex eā gente in reliquum tempus Gallis auxilium dare audēret.<sup>7</sup>

Hoc iter in Germāniam Pūblius quoque fēcit et,<sup>8</sup> cum ibi morārētur, multa mirābilia vīdit. Praesertim vērō ingentem silvam mirābātur, quae tantae magnitudinis esse dicēbātur<sup>9</sup> ut nēmō eam trānsire posset, nec quisquam scīret aut initium aut finem. Quā dē rē plūra cognōverat ā milite quōdam quī ōlim captus ā Germānis multōs annōs ibi incoluit. Ille<sup>10</sup> dē silvā dicēns, “Infinītae magnitudinis est haec silva,” inquit; “nec quisquam est<sup>11</sup> huius Germāniae<sup>12</sup> quī initium eius sciat aut ad finem adierit. Nāscuntur illīc multa tālia animālium genera quālia reliquis in locis nōn inveniuntur. Sunt bovēs quī ūnum<sup>13</sup> cornū habent; sunt etiam animālia quae appellantur alcēs. Hae nullōs crūrum<sup>14</sup> articulōs habent. Itaque, sī forte concidērunt, sēsē ērigere nullō modō possunt. Arborēs habent prō<sup>15</sup> cubilibus; ad eās sē applicant atque ita reclīnatae quiētem capiunt. Tertium est genus eōrum quī ūrī appellantur. Hī sunt paulō minōrēs elephantīs.<sup>16</sup> Magna vis eōrum est et magna vėlōcītās. Neque hominī neque ferae parcunt.<sup>17</sup>”

1. Observe that all these infinitives are in indirect statements after **certior fiēbat**, *he was informed*, and **cognōscēbat**, *he learned*. Cf. § 501.48, 49.

2. **inter sē**, *to each other*.

3. **proficiscī**, **mittere**. These infinitives depend upon **cōstituit**.

4. Before beginning a campaign, food had to be provided. Every fifteen days grain was distributed. Each soldier received about two pecks. This he carried in his pack, and this constituted his food, varied occasionally by what he could find by foraging.

5. Abl. of personal agent, § 501. 33.

6. **cōpiās cōgendī**, § 501. 37. 1.

7. **darētur**, **audēret**, § 501. 43. **audēret** is not from **audiō**.

8. **cum ... morārētur**, § 501. 46.

9. **ut ... posset**, **... scīret**, § 501. 43.

10. **Ille**, subj. of **inquit**.

11. **huius Germāniae**, *of this part of Germany*.

12. **quī ... sciat ... adierit**, § 501. 45.

13. **ūnum**, *only one*.

14. **crūrum**, from **crūs**.

15. **prō**, *for, in place of*.

16. **elephantīs**, § 501. 34.

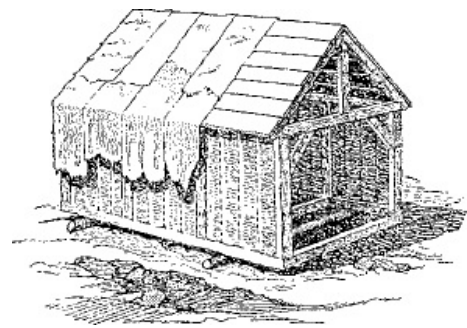
17. **parcunt**. What case is used with this verb?

#### LXXIII. THE STORMING OF A CITY

Pūblius plūrīs diēs in Germāniā morātus<sup>1</sup> in Galliam rediit, et ad Caesaris castra sē contulit. Ille quia molestē ferēbat Gallōs<sup>2</sup> eius regiōnis obsidēs dare recūsāvisse et exercitū frūmentum praebere nōluisse, cōstituit eis<sup>3</sup> bellum inferre. Agrīs vāstātis, vicīs incēnsis, pervēnit ad oppidum validissimum quod et nātūrā et arte mūnitum erat. Cingēbātur mūrō vīginti quinque pedēs<sup>4</sup> altō. Ā lateribus duōsitum, praeruptō fastigiō ad plānitiem vergēgat; ā quārtō tantum<sup>5</sup> latere aditus erat facilis. Hoc oppidum oppugnāre, <sup>6</sup>cum opus esset difficillimum, tamen cōstituit Caesar. Et castris mūnitīs Pūbliō negōtium dedit ut rēs <sup>7</sup>ad oppugnandum necessāriās parāret.

Rōmānōrum autem oppugnātiō est haec.<sup>8</sup> Prīmum turrēs aedificantur quibus militēs in summum mūrū evādere possint<sup>9</sup>; vineae<sup>10</sup> fiunt quibus tēctī militēs ad mūrū succēdant; plutei<sup>11</sup> parantur post quōs militēs tormenta<sup>12</sup> administrent; sunt

quoque arietēs quī mūrū et portās discutiant. His omnibus rēbus comparātis, deinde <sup>13</sup>agger ab eā parte ubi aditus est facillimus exstruitur et cum vineīs ad ipsum oppidum agitur. Tum turris in aggere prōmovētur; arietibus quī sub vineīs conlocātī erant mūrus et portae discutiantur; ballistis, catapultis, reliquisque tormentis lapidēs et tēla in oppidum coniciuntur. Postremō cum iam turris et agger altitudinem mūrī adaequant et arietēs moenia perfrēgērunt, <sup>14</sup> signō datō milītēs inruunt et oppidum expugnant.

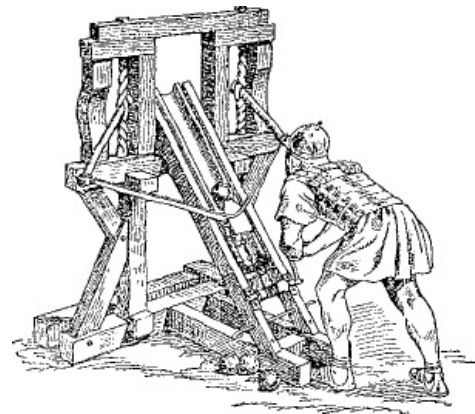


VINEA

1. **morātus**. Is this part. active or passive in meaning?
2. **Gallōs**, subj. acc. of the infins. **recūsāvissē** and **nōluisse**. The indirect statement depends upon **molestē ferēbat**.
3. **eīs**, § 501. 15.
4. **pedēs**, § 501. 21.
5. **tantum**, adv. *only*.
6. **cum ... esset**, a clause of concession, § 501. 46.
7. **ad oppugnandum**, a gerund expressing purpose.
8. **haec**, *as follows*.
9. **possint**, subjv. of purpose. Three similar constructions follow.
10. **vineae**. These **vineae** were wooden sheds, open in front and rear, used to protect men who were working to take a fortification. They were about eight feet high, of like width, and double that length, covered with raw hides to protect them from being set on fire, and moved on wheels or rollers.
11. **plutei**, large screens or shields with small wheels attached to them. These were used to protect besiegers while moving up to a city or while serving the engines of war.
12. **tormenta**. The engines of war were chiefly the catapult for shooting great arrows, and the ballista, for hurling large stones. They had a range of about two thousand feet and were very effective.
13. The **agger**, or mound, was of chief importance in a siege. It was begun just out of reach of the missiles of the enemy, and then gradually extended towards the point to be attacked. At the same time its height gradually increased until on a level with the top of the wall, or even higher. It was made of earth and timber, and had covered galleries running through it for the use of the besiegers. Over or beside the **agger** a tower was moved up to the wall, often with a battering-ram (*aries*) in the lowest story. (See picture, p. 221.)
14. **perfrēgērunt**, from **perfringō**.

#### LXXIV. THE CITY IS TAKEN · THE CAPTIVES ARE QUESTIONED

Omnibus rēbus necessāriis ad oppugnandum ā Pūbliō comparātis, dēliberātur in conciliō quod cōnsilium <sup>1</sup>oppidī expugnandī ineant. <sup>2</sup>Tum ūnus <sup>3</sup>ex centuriōnibus, vir rei militāris perītissimus, “Ego suādēō,” inquit, “ut ab eā parte, ubi aditus sit <sup>4</sup>facillimus, aggerem exstruāmus <sup>5</sup>et turrim prōmoveāmus <sup>5</sup>atque ariete admōtō simul mūrū discutere cōnemur.” <sup>6</sup>Hoc cōnsilium cum omnibus placēret, Caesar concilium dīmisit. Deinde milītēs hortātus ut priōrēs victōriās memoriā <sup>7</sup>tenērent, iussit aggerem exstruī, turrim et arietem admovērī. Neque oppidānis <sup>8</sup>cōnsilium dēfuit. Aliī ignem et omne genus tēlōrum dē mūrō in turrim coniecērunt, aliī ingentia saxa in vineās et arietem dēvolvērunt. Diū utrimque ācerrimē pugnātum est. Nē vulnerātī quidem pedem rettulērunt. Tandem, <sup>9</sup>dē tertiā vigiliā, Pūblius, quem Caesar illī operī <sup>10</sup>praefēcerat, nūntiāvit partem <sup>11</sup>mūrī ictibus arietis labefactam concidisse. Quā rē audītā Caesar signum dat; milītēs inruunt et magnā cum caede hostium oppidum capiunt.



BALLISTA

1. **oppidī expugnandī**. Is this a gerund or a gerundive construction? Cf. § 501. 37.
2. **ineant**. § 501. 50.
3. **ūnus**. subj. of **inquit**.
4. **sit**. This is a so-called subjunctive by attraction, which means that the clause beginning with **ubi** stands in such close connection with the subjv. clause beginning with **ut**, that its verb is attracted into the same mood.
5. All these verbs are in the same construction.
6. **Hoc cōnsilium**, subj. of **placēret**. For the order cf. **Haec cum**, etc., p. 215, l. 22, and note; **Id imperātor cum**, p. 217, l. 8.
7. **memoriā**, abl. of means.



8. **oppidānis**, § 501. 15.

9. Between twelve and three o'clock in the morning. The night was divided into four watches.

10. **operī**, § 501. 15.

11. **partem**, subj. acc. of **concidisse**.

Postriđiē eius diēi, hōc oppidō expugnātō, <sup>12</sup>captīvōrum quī nōbilissimī sunt ad imperātōrem ante praetōrium <sup>13</sup> addūcuntur. Ipse, lōricā aurātā et paludamentō purpureō insignis, captīvōs per interpretem in hunc modum interrogat: <sup>14</sup> Vōs quī estis <sup>15</sup>?

INTERPRES. Rogat imperātōr quī sītis.

CAPTĪVĪ. Filīū rēgis sumus.

INTERPRES. Dīcunt sē filiōs esse rēgis.

IMPERĀTOR. Cūr mihi tantās iniūriās intulistis?

INTERPRES. Rogat cūr sibi tantās iniūriās intuleritis.

CAPTĪVĪ. Iniūriās eī nōn intulimus sed prō patriā bellum gessimus. Semper voluimus Rōmānis esse amīcī, sed Rōmānī sine causā nōs domō patriāque expellere cōnātī sunt.

INTERPRES. <sup>16</sup>Negant sē iniūriās tibi intulisse, sed prō patriā bellum gessisse. <sup>17</sup>Semper sē voluisse amīcōs Rōmānis esse, sed Rōmānōs sine causā sē domō patriāque expellere cōnātōs esse.

IMPERĀTOR. <sup>18</sup>Manēbitisne in reliquum tempus in fidē, hāc rebellīōne condōnātā?

Tum vērō captīvī multīs cum lacrimīs iūrāvērunt sē in fidē mānsūrōs esse, et Caesar eōs incolumīs domum dīmisit.

12. **captīvōrum ... sunt**, *the noblest of the captives*.

13. The general's headquarters.

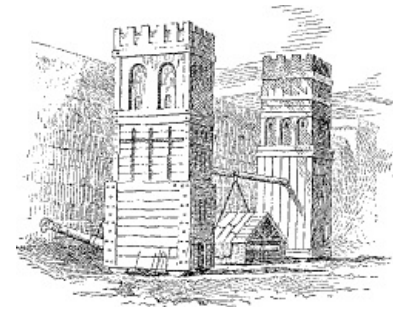
14. Study carefully these direct questions, indirect questions, and indirect statements.

15. See Plate III, p. 148.

16. **Negant**, etc., *they say that they have not*, etc. **Negant** is equivalent to **dīcunt nōn**, and the negative modifies **intulisse**, but not the remainder of the indirect statement.

17. **Semper**, etc., *that they have always*, etc.

18. **Manēbitisne in fidē**, *will you remain loyal?*



TURRES, ARIETES, VINEA

#### LXXV. CIVIL WAR BREAKS OUT BETWEEN CÆSAR AND POMPEY · THE BATTLE OF PHARSALIA

Nē cōnfectō <sup>1</sup> quidem bellō Gallicō, <sup>2</sup>bellum cīvile inter Caesarem et Pompēium exortum est. Nam Pompēius, quī summum imperium petēbat, senātuī persuāserat ut Caesarem reī publicae hostem <sup>3</sup> iūdicāret et exercitum eius dīmittī iubēret. Quibus cognitīs rēbus Caesar exercitum suum dīmittere recūsāvit, atque, hortātus militēs ut ducem totiēns victōrem ab inimicōrum iniūriīs dēfenderent, imperāvit ut sē Rōmam sequerentur. Summā cum alacritāte militēs pārūrunt, et trānsitō Rubicōne <sup>4</sup> initium bellī cīvīlis factum est.

Italiae urbēs quidem omnēs ferē <sup>5</sup> rēbus Caesaris favēbant et eum benignē excēpērunt. Quā rē commōtus Pompēius ante Caesaris adventum Rōmā excessit et Brundisium <sup>6</sup> pervēnit, inde <sup>7</sup> paucīs post diēbus cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Ēpīrum mare trānsiit. Eum Caesar cum septem legiōnibus et quīngentīs equitibus secūtus est, et insignis inter Caesaris comitātum erat Pūblius.

Plūribus leviōribus proeliīs factīs, tandem cōpiae adversae ad Pharsālum <sup>8</sup> in Thessaliā sitam castra posuērunt. Cum Pompei exercitus esset bis tantus quantus Caesaris, tamen erant multī quī veterānās legiōnēs quae Gallōs et Germānōs superāverant vehementer timēbant. Quōs <sup>9</sup> <sup>10</sup> ante proelium commissum Labiēnus <sup>11</sup> lēgātus, quī ab Caesare nūper dēfēcerat, ita adlocūtus est: “<sup>12</sup>Nōlīte exīstimāre hunc esse exercitum veterānōrum militum. Omnibus interfuī proeliīs <sup>13</sup> neque temerē incognitam rem prōnūntiō. Perexigua pars illius exercitūs quī Gallōs superāvit adhūc superest. Magna pars occīsa est, multī domum discessērunt, multī sunt relictī in Italiā. Hae cōpiae quās vidētis in <sup>14</sup>citeriōre Galliā nūper cōnscrip̄tae sunt.” Haec <sup>15</sup> cum dīxisset, iūrāvit sē nisi victōrem in castra nōn reversūrum esse. <sup>16</sup>Hoc idem Pompēius et omnēs reliquī iūrāvērunt, et magnā spē et laetitīā, sicut certam ad victōriam, cōpiae ē castris exiērunt.

Item Caesar, animō <sup>17</sup> ad dīmicandum parātus, exercitum suum ēdūxit et septem cohortibus <sup>18</sup> praesidiō castrīs relictīs cōpiās triplicī aciē instrūxit. Tum, militibus studiō pugnae ārdentibus, tubā signum dedit. Militēs prōcurrērunt et pīlis missis gladiōs strīnxērunt. Neque vērō virtūs hostibus dēfuit. Nam et tela missa sustinuerunt et impetum gladiōrum excēpērunt et ordinēs cōservāvērunt. Utrimque diū et ācriter pugnātum est nec quisquam pedem rettulit. Tum equitēs Pompei aciem Caesaris circumīre cōnātī sunt. Quod <sup>19</sup> ubi Caesar animadvertit, tertiam aciem, <sup>20</sup> quae ad id tempus quiēta fuerat, prōcurrere iussit. Tum vērō integrōrum impetum <sup>21</sup> dēfessī hostēs sustinēre nōn potuērunt et omnēs terga vertērunt. Sed Pompēius dē fortūnis suis dēspērāns sē in castra equō contulit, inde mox cum paucīs equitibus effūgit.

1. With **nē ... quidem** the emphatic word stands between the two.

2. The Civil War was caused by the jealousy and rivalry between Cæsar and Pompey. It resulted in the defeat and subsequent death of Pompey and the elevation of Cæsar to the lordship of the Roman world.

3. **hostem**, predicate accusative, § 501. 22.
4. The Rubicon was a small stream in northern Italy that marked the boundary of Cæsar's province. By crossing it with an armed force Cæsar declared war upon Pompey and the existing government. Cæsar crossed the Rubicon early in the year 49 B.C.
5. **rēbus Caesaris favēbant**, *favoured Cæsar's side*. In what case is **rēbus**?
6. **Brundisium**, a famous port in southern Italy whence ships sailed for Greece and the East. See map.
7. **paucis post diēbus**, *a few days later*; literally, *afterguards by a few days*. Cf. **paucis ante annis**, p. 213, l. 12, and note.
7. The battle of Pharsalia was fought on August 9, 48 B.C. In importance it ranks as one of the great battles of the world.
8. **Quōs**, obj. of **adlocūtus est**.
10. **ante proelium commissum**, *before the beginning of the battle*.
11. **Labienus**, Cæsar's most faithful and skillful lieutenant in the Gallic War. On the outbreak of the Civil War, in 49 B.C., he deserted Cæsar and joined Pompey. His defection caused the greatest joy among the Pompeian party; but he disappointed the expectations of his new friends, and never accomplished anything of importance. He fought against his old commander in several battles and was slain at the battle of Munda in Spain, 45 B.C.
12. **Nōlite existimāre**, *don't think*.
13. **proeliis**, § 501. 15.
14. **citeriōre Galliā**. This name is applied to Cisalpine Gaul, or Gaul south of the Alps.
15. **Haec**, obj. of **dixisset**.
16. **Hoc idem**, obj. of **iūrāvērunt**.
17. **animō**, § 501. 30.
18. **praesidiō castris**, § 501. 17.
19. **Quod**, obj. of **animadvertit**.
20. **aciem**, subj. of **prōcurrere**.
21. **impetum**, obj. of **sustinēre**.

#### LXXVI. THE TRIUMPH OF CAESAR



SIGNIFER

Pompēiō amīcisque eius superātis atque omnibus hostibus ubīque victis, Caesar imperātor Rōmam rediit et <sup>1</sup>extrā moenia urbis in campō Mārtiō castra posuit. Tum vērō amplissimis honōribus adfectus est. Dictātor creātus est, et eī triumphus ā senātū est dēcrētus. <sup>2</sup>Quō diē de Gallis triumphum ēgit, tanta multitudō hominum in urbem undique cōflūxit <sup>3</sup>ut omnia loca essent cōnferta. Tempa patēbant, ārae fūmābant, columnae sertis ōrnātae erant. <sup>4</sup>Cum vērō pompa urbem intrāret, quantus hominum fremitus ortus est! Prīmum per portam ingressi sunt senātus et magistrātūs. Secūtī sunt tībīcinēs, signiferī, peditēs laureā corōnāti canentēs: “Ecce Caesar nunc triumphat, quī subēgit Galliam,” et “Mille, mille, mille Gallōs trucidāvimus.” Multi praedam captārum urbium portābant, arma, omnia bellī instrūmenta. Secūtī sunt equitēs, animōsis atque splendidissimē ōrnātis equis vectī, inter quōs Pūblius adulēscēns fortissimus habēbātur. Addūcēbantur taurī, arietēs, <sup>5</sup>quī dīs immortalibus immolārentur. Ita longō agmine prōgrediēns exercitus <sup>6</sup>sacrā viā per forum in Capitōlium perrēxit.

Imperātor ipse cum urbem intrāret, undique laetō clāmōre multitudinis salūtātus est. Stābat in currū aureō quem quattuor albī equī vehēbant. Indūtus <sup>7</sup>togā pictā, alterā manū habēnās et lauream tenēbat, alterā eburneum scēptrum. Post eum servus in currū stāns auream corōnam super caput eius tenēbat. Ante currum miserrimī captīvī, rēgēs prīncipēsque superātārum gentium, catēnis vīctī, prōgrediēbantur; et vīginti quattuor lictōrēs <sup>8</sup>laureatās fascīs ferentēs et signiferī currum Caesaris comitābantur. Conclūdit agmen multitudō captīvōrum, quī, in servitūtem redactī, <sup>9</sup>dēmissō vultū, vīctis <sup>10</sup>bracchiīs, sequuntur; quibuscum veniunt longissimō ordine militēs, etiam hī praedam vel insignia militāria ferentēs.

Caesar cum Capitōlium ascendisset, in templō Iovī Capitōlinō sacra fēcit. Simul <sup>11</sup>captivōrum quī nōbilissimī erant, abductī in carcerem, <sup>12</sup>interfectī sunt. Sacris factis Caesar dē Capitōliō dēscendit et in forō mīitibus suis honōrēs militāris dedit eisque pecūniam ex bellī praedā distribuit.

His omnibus rēbus cōnfectis, Pūblius Caesarem valēre <sup>13</sup>iussit et quam celerrimē ad villam contendit ut patrem mātremque salūtāret.

<sup>15</sup>Dē rēbus gestis P. Cornēli Lentulī hāctenus.

1. A victorious general with his army was not allowed to enter the city until the day of his triumph. A triumph was the greatest of all military honors.

2. **Quō diē**, *on the day that*, abl. of time.
3. **ut ... essent**, § 501. 43.
4. **Cum ... intrāret**, § 501. 46.
5. **quī ... immolārentur**, § 501. 40.
6. The Sacred Way was a noted street running along one side of the Forum to the base of the Capitoline Hill, on whose summit stood the magnificent temple of Jupiter Capitolinus. This route was always followed by triumphal processions.
7. The **toga picta** worn by a general in his triumph was a splendid robe of Tyrian purple covered with golden stars. See Plate IV, p. 213.
8. The lictors were a guard of honor that attended the higher magistrates and made a way for them through the streets. On their shoulders they carried the *fascēs*, a bundle of rods with an ax in the middle, symbolizing the power of the law.
9. **dēmissō vultū**, *with downcast countenance*.
10. **vīctis**, from **vinciō**.
12. **Simul**, etc., *At the same time those of the captives who were the noblest*.
12. The prison was a gloomy dungeon on the lower slopes of the Capitoline Hill.
13. **valēre iussit**, *bade farewell to*.
14. This sentence marks the end of the story.



LICTORES CUM FASCIBUS

## APPENDIX I

### DECLENSIONS, CONJUGATIONS, NUMERALS, ETC.

#### NOUNS

**460.** Nouns are inflected in five declensions, distinguished by the final letter of the stem and by the termination of the genitive singular.

FIRST DECLENSION—**Ā**-stems, Gen. Sing. **-ae**

SECOND DECLENSION—**O**-stems, Gen. Sing. **-ī**

THIRD DECLENSION—Consonant stems and **I**-stems, Gen. Sing. **-is**

FOURTH DECLENSION—**U**-stems, Gen. Sing. **-ūs**

FIFTH DECLENSION—**Ē**-stems, Gen. Sing. **-ēī**

#### 461. FIRST DECLENSION. **Ā**-STEMS

		<b>domina, lady</b> STEM <b>dominā-</b> BASE <b>domin-</b>	
		SINGULAR	PLURAL
		TERMINATIONS	TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	domina	<b>-a</b>	dominae <b>-ae</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	dominae	<b>-ae</b>	dominārum <b>-ārum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	dominae	<b>-ae</b>	dominīs <b>-īs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	dominam	<b>-am</b>	dominās <b>-ās</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	dominā	<b>-ā</b>	dominīs <b>-īs</b>

a. **Dea** and **filia** have the termination **-ābus** in the dative and ablative plural.

#### 462. SECOND DECLENSION. **O**-STEMS

a. MASCULINES IN **-us**

		<b>dominus, master</b> STEM <b>domino-</b> BASE <b>domin-</b>	
		SINGULAR	PLURAL
		TERMINATIONS	TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	dominus	<b>-us</b>	dominī <b>-ī</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	dominī	<b>-ī</b>	dominōrum <b>-ōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	dominō	<b>-ō</b>	dominīs <b>-īs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	dominum	<b>-um</b>	dominōs <b>-ōs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	dominō	<b>-ō</b>	dominīs <b>-īs</b>

1. Nouns in **-us** of the second declension have the termination **-e'** in the vocative singular, as **domine**.

2. Proper names in **-ius**, and **filius**, end in **-ī** in the vocative singular, and the accent rests on the penult, as **Vergī 'li, fili**.

b. NEUTERS IN **-um**

	<b>pīlum, spear</b> STEM		<b>pīlo-</b> BASE <b>pīl-</b>	
	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	TERMINATIONS		TERMINATIONS	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>pīlum</b>	<b>-um</b>	<b>pīla</b>	<b>-a</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>pīlī</b>	<b>-ī</b>	<b>pīlōrum</b>	<b>-ōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>pīlō</b>	<b>-ō</b>	<b>pīlīs</b>	<b>-īs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>pīlum</b>	<b>-um</b>	<b>pīla</b>	<b>-a</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>pīlō</b>	<b>-ō</b>	<b>pīlīs</b>	<b>-īs</b>

1. Masculines in **-ius** and neuters in **-ium** end in **-ī** in the genitive singular, *not* in **-īi**, and the accent rests on the penult.

c. MASCULINES IN **-er** AND **-ir**

	<b>puer, boy</b>	<b>ager, field</b>	<b>vir, man</b>	
STEMS	<b>puero-</b>	<b>agro-</b>	<b>viro-</b>	
BASES	<b>puer-</b>	<b>agr-</b>	<b>vir-</b>	
	SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>puer</b>	<b>ager</b>	<b>vir</b>	—
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>puerī</b>	<b>agrī</b>	<b>virī</b>	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>puerō</b>	<b>agrō</b>	<b>virō</b>	<b>-ō</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>puerum</b>	<b>agrū</b>	<b>virum</b>	<b>-um</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>puerō</b>	<b>agrō</b>	<b>virō</b>	<b>-ō</b>
	PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>puerī</b>	<b>agrī</b>	<b>virī</b>	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>puerōrum</b>	<b>agrōrum</b>	<b>virōrum</b>	<b>-ōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>puerīs</b>	<b>agrīs</b>	<b>virīs</b>	<b>-īs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>puerōs</b>	<b>agrōs</b>	<b>virōs</b>	<b>-ōs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>puerīs</b>	<b>agrīs</b>	<b>virīs</b>	<b>-īs</b>

463. THIRD DECLENSION.

CLASSIFICATION	I.	1. Stems that add <b>-s</b> to the base to form the nominative singular: masculines and feminines only. 2. Stems that add no termination in the nominative singular: <i>a.</i> masculines and feminines; <i>b.</i> neuters.
	CONSONANT STEMS	
	II. I-STEMS.	Masculines, feminines, and neuters.

464. I. CONSONANT STEMS

1. Nouns that add **-s** to the base to form the nominative singular: masculines and feminines only

	<b>prīnceps, m., chief</b>	<b>mīles, m., soldier</b>	<b>lapis, m., stone</b>	
BASES OR STEMS	<b>prīncip-</b>	<b>mīlit-</b>	<b>lapid-</b>	
	SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>prīnceps</b>	<b>mīles</b>	<b>lapis</b>	<b>-s</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>prīn'cipis</b>	<b>mīlitis</b>	<b>lapidis</b>	<b>-is</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>prīn'cipī</b>	<b>mīlitī</b>	<b>lapidī</b>	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>prīn'cipem</b>	<b>mīlitem</b>	<b>lapidem</b>	<b>-em</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>prīn'cipe</b>	<b>mīlite</b>	<b>lapide</b>	<b>-e</b>
	PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>prīn'cipēs</b>	<b>mīlitēs</b>	<b>lapidēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>prīn'cipum</b>	<b>mīlitum</b>	<b>lapidum</b>	<b>-um</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>prīnci'pibus</b>	<b>mīlitibus</b>	<b>lapidibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>prīn'cipēs</b>	<b>mīlitēs</b>	<b>lapidēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>prīnci'pibus</b>	<b>mīlitibus</b>	<b>lapidibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>

	<b>rēx, m., king</b>	<b>iūdex, m., judge</b>	<b>virtūs, f., manliness</b>	
BASES OR STEMS	<b>rēg-</b>	<b>iūdic-</b>	<b>virtūt-</b>	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>rēx</b>	<b>iūdex</b>	<b>virtūs</b>	<b>-s</b>

<i>Gen.</i>	rēgīs	iūdicīs	virtū'tīs	<b>-is</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgī	iūdicī	virtū'tī	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgem	iūdicem	virtū'tem	<b>-em</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	rēge	iūdice	virtū'te	<b>-e</b>
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	rēgēs	iūdicēs	virtū'tēs	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgum	iūdicum	virtū'tum	<b>-um</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgibus	iūdicibus	virtū'tibus	<b>-ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgēs	iūdicēs	virtū'tēs	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	rēgibus	iūdicibus	virtū'tibus	<b>-ibus</b>

NOTE. For consonant changes in the nominative singular, cf. § 233. 3.

## 2. Nouns that have no termination in the nominative singular

### a. MASCULINES AND FEMININES

	<b>cōnsul</b> , m., <i>consul</i>	<b>legiō</b> , f., <i>legion</i>	<b>ōrdō</b> , m., <i>row</i>	<b>pater</b> , m., <i>father</i>	
BASES OR STEMS	<b>cōnsul-</b>	<b>legiōn-</b>	<b>ōrdin-</b>	<b>patr-</b>	
			SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	cōnsul	legiō	ōrdō	pater	—
<i>Gen.</i>	cōnsul <b>is</b>	legiō <b>nis</b>	ōrdin <b>is</b>	patr <b>is</b>	<b>-is</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	cōsul <b>ī</b>	legiō <b>nī</b>	ōrdin <b>ī</b>	patr <b>ī</b>	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	cōnsul <b>em</b>	legiō <b>nem</b>	ōrdin <b>em</b>	patr <b>em</b>	<b>-em</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	cōnsul <b>e</b>	legiō <b>ne</b>	ōrdin <b>e</b>	patr <b>e</b>	<b>-e</b>
			PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	cōnsul <b>ēs</b>	legiō <b>nēs</b>	ōrdin <b>ēs</b>	patr <b>ēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	cōnsul <b>um</b>	legiō <b>num</b>	ōrdin <b>um</b>	patr <b>um</b>	<b>-um</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	cōnsul <b>ibus</b>	legiō <b>nibus</b>	ōrdin <b>ibus</b>	patr <b>ibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	cōnsul <b>ēs</b>	legiō <b>nēs</b>	ōrdin <b>ēs</b>	patr <b>ēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	cōnsul <b>ibus</b>	legiō <b>nibus</b>	ōrdin <b>ibus</b>	patr <b>ibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>

NOTE. For vowel and consonant changes in the nominative singular, cf. § 236. 1-3.

### b. NEUTERS

	<b>flūmen</b> , n., <i>river</i>	<b>tempus</b> , n., <i>time</i>	<b>opus</b> , n., <i>work</i>	<b>caput</b> , n., <i>head</i>	
BASES OR STEMS	<b>flūmin-</b>	<b>tempor-</b>	<b>oper-</b>	<b>capit-</b>	
			SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	flūmen	tempus	opus	caput	—
<i>Gen.</i>	flūmin <b>is</b>	tempor <b>is</b>	oper <b>is</b>	capit <b>is</b>	<b>-is</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	flūmin <b>ī</b>	tempor <b>ī</b>	oper <b>ī</b>	capit <b>ī</b>	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	flūmen	tempus	opus	caput	—
<i>Abl.</i>	flūmin <b>e</b>	tempor <b>e</b>	oper <b>e</b>	capit <b>e</b>	<b>-e</b>
			PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	flūmin <b>a</b>	tempor <b>a</b>	oper <b>a</b>	capit <b>a</b>	<b>-a</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	flūmin <b>um</b>	tempor <b>um</b>	oper <b>um</b>	capit <b>um</b>	<b>-um</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	flūmin <b>ibus</b>	tempor <b>ibus</b>	oper <b>ibus</b>	capit <b>ibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	flūmin <b>a</b>	tempor <b>a</b>	oper <b>a</b>	capit <b>a</b>	<b>-a</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	flūmin <b>ibus</b>	tempor <b>ibus</b>	oper <b>ibus</b>	capit <b>ibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>

NOTE. For vowel and consonant changes in the nominative singular, cf. § 238. 2, 3.

## 465. II. I-STEMS

### a. MASCULINES AND FEMININES

	<b>caedēs</b> , f., <i>slaughter</i>	<b>hostis</b> , m., <i>enemy</i>	<b>urbs</b> , f., <i>city</i>	<b>cliēns</b> , m., <i>retainer</i>	
STEMS	<b>caedi-</b>	<b>hosti-</b>	<b>urbi-</b>	<b>clienti-</b>	
BASES	<b>caed-</b>	<b>host-</b>	<b>urb-</b>	<b>client-</b>	
			SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	caed <b>ēs</b>	host <b>is</b>	urb <b>is</b>	cliē <b>ns</b>	<b>-s, -is, or</b> <b>-ēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	caedi <b>is</b>	host <b>is</b>	urb <b>is</b>	client <b>is</b>	<b>-is</b>

<i>Dat.</i>	caedī	hostī	urbī	clientī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	caedem	hostem	urbem	clientem	-em (-im)
<i>Abl.</i>	caede	hoste	urbe	cliente	-e (-ī)
PLURAL					
<i>Nom.</i>	caedēs	hostēs	urbēs	clientēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	caedium	hostium	urbium	clientium	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	caedibus	hostibus	urbibus	clientibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	caedis, -ēs	hostis, -ēs	urbis, -ēs	clientis, -ēs	-is, -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	caedibus	hostibus	urbibus	clientibus	-ibus

1. **Avis, cīvis, finis, ignis, nāvis**, have the abl. sing. in **-ī** or **-e**.

2. **Turris** has accusative **turrim** and ablative **turri** or **turre**.

*b.* NEUTERS

	<b>īnsigne</b> , n., <i>decoration</i>	<b>animal</b> , n., <i>animal</i>	<b>calcar</b> , n., <i>spur</i>	
STEMS	<b>īnsigni-</b>	<b>animāli-</b>	<b>calcāri-</b>	
BASES	<b>īnsign-</b>	<b>animāl-</b>	<b>calcār-</b>	
		SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	īnsigne	animal	calcar	<b>-e or —</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	īsignis	animālis	calcāris	<b>-is</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	īsignī	animālī	calcārī	<b>-ī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	īnsigne	animal	calcar	<b>-e or —</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	īsignī	animālī	calcārī	<b>-ī</b>
		PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	īsignia	animālia	calcāria	<b>-ia</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	īsignium	animālium	calcārium	<b>-ium</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	īsignibus	animālibus	calcāribus	<b>-ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	īsignia	animālia	calcāria	<b>-ia</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	īsignibus	animālibus	calcāribus	<b>-ibus</b>

**466. THE FOURTH DECLENSION. U-STEMS**

	<b>adventus</b> , m., <i>arrival</i>	<b>cornū</b> , n., <i>horn</i>		
STEMS	<b>adventu-</b>	<b>cornu-</b>		
BASES	<b>advent-</b>	<b>corn-</b>		
		SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS
			MASC.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	adventus	cornū	<b>-us</b>	<b>-ū</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	adventūs	cornūs	<b>-ūs</b>	<b>-ūs</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	adventuī (ū)	cornū	<b>-uī (ū)</b>	<b>-ū</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	adventum	cornū	<b>-um</b>	<b>-ū</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	adventū	cornū	<b>-ū</b>	<b>-ū</b>
		PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	adventūs	cornua	<b>-ūs</b>	<b>-ua</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	adventuum	cornuum	<b>-uum</b>	<b>-uum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	adventibus	cornibus	<b>-ibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	adventūs	cornua	<b>-ūs</b>	<b>-ua</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	adventibus	cornibus	<b>-ibus</b>	<b>-ibus</b>

**467. THE FIFTH DECLENSION. Ē-STEMS**

	<b>diēs</b> , m., <i>day</i>	<b>rēs</b> , f. <i>thing</i>	
STEMS	<b>diē-</b>	<b>rē-</b>	
BASES	<b>di-</b>	<b>r-</b>	
		SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	rēs	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	diēī	reī	<b>-ēī</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	diēī	reī	<b>-ēī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	rem	<b>-em</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	rē	<b>-ē</b>
		PLURAL	

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>diērum</b>	<b>rērum</b>	<b>-ērum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>diēbus</b>	<b>rēbus</b>	<b>-ēbus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>diēbus</b>	<b>rēbus</b>	<b>-ēbus</b>

**468. SPECIAL PARADIGMS**

	<b>deus, m., god</b>	<b>domus, f., house</b>	<b>vīs, f., strength</b>	<b>iter, n., way</b>
STEMS	<b>deo-</b>	<b>domu-</b>	<b>vī- and vīri-</b>	<b>iter- and itiner-</b>
BASES	<b>de-</b>	<b>dom-</b>	<b>v- and vīr-</b>	<b>iter- and itiner-</b>
	SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>deus</b>	<b>domus</b>	<b>vīs</b>	<b>iter</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>deī</b>	<b>domūs</b>	<b>vīs (rare)</b>	<b>itineris</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>deō</b>	<b>domuī, -ō</b>	<b>vī (rare)</b>	<b>itinerī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>deum</b>	<b>domum</b>	<b>vim</b>	<b>iter</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>deō</b>	<b>domō, -ū</b>	<b>vī</b>	<b>itinere</b>
	PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>deī, dī</b>	<b>domūs</b>	<b>vīrēs</b>	<b>itinerā</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>deōrum, deum</b>	<b>domuum, -ōrum</b>	<b>vīrium</b>	<b>itinerum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>deīs, dīs</b>	<b>domibus</b>	<b>vīribus</b>	<b>itineribus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>deōs</b>	<b>domōs, -ūs</b>	<b>vīrīs, -ēs</b>	<b>itinerā</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>deīs, dīs</b>	<b>domibus</b>	<b>vīribus</b>	<b>itineribus</b>

- a. The vocative singular of **deus** is like the nominative.  
 b. The locative of **domus** is **domī**.

ADJECTIVES

**469. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. Ō- AND Ā-STEMS**

a. ADJECTIVES IN **-us**

	<b>bonus, good</b>	STEMS <b>bono-</b> m. and n., <b>bona-</b> f.	BASE <b>bon-</b>
	SINGULAR		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>bonus</b>	<b>bona</b>	<b>bonum</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>bonī</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bonī</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>bonō</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bonō</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>bonum</b>	<b>bonam</b>	<b>bonum</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>bonō</b>	<b>bonā</b>	<b>bonō</b>
	PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>bonī</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bona</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>bonōrum</b>	<b>bonārum</b>	<b>bonōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>bonōs</b>	<b>bonās</b>	<b>bona</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>

b. ADJECTIVES IN **-er**

	<b>liber, free</b>	STEMS <b>libero-</b> m. and n., <b>liberā-</b> f.	BASE <b>liber-</b>
	SINGULAR		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>liber</b>	<b>libera</b>	<b>liberum</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>liberī</b>	<b>liberae</b>	<b>liberī</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>liberō</b>	<b>liberae</b>	<b>liberō</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>liberum</b>	<b>liberam</b>	<b>liberum</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>liberō</b>	<b>liberā</b>	<b>liberō</b>
	PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>liberī</b>	<b>liberae</b>	<b>libera</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>liberōrum</b>	<b>liberārum</b>	<b>liberōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>liberīs</b>	<b>liberīs</b>	<b>liberīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>liberōs</b>	<b>liberās</b>	<b>libera</b>

<i>Abl.</i>	<b>liberīs</b>	<b>liberīs</b>	<b>liberīs</b>
<b>pulcher, pretty</b> STEMS <b>pulchro-</b> m. and n., <b>pulchrā-</b> f. BASE <b>pulchr-</b>			
		SINGULAR	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>pulcher</b>	<b>pulchra</b>	<b>pulchrum</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>pulchrī</b>	<b>pulchrae</b>	<b>pulchrī</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>pulchrō</b>	<b>pulchrae</b>	<b>pulchrō</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>pulchrum</b>	<b>pulchram</b>	<b>pulchrum</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>pulchrō</b>	<b>pulchrā</b>	<b>pulchrō</b>
		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>pulchrī</b>	<b>pulchrae</b>	<b>pulchra</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>pulchrōrum</b>	<b>pulchrārum</b>	<b>pulchrōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>pulchrīs</b>	<b>pulchrīs</b>	<b>pulchrīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>pulchrōs</b>	<b>pulchrās</b>	<b>pulchra</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>pulchrīs</b>	<b>pulchrīs</b>	<b>pulchrīs</b>

**470. THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES**

<b>alius, another</b> STEMS <b>alio-</b> m. and n., <b>aliā-</b> f. BASE <b>ali-</b>						
	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>alius</b>	<b>alia</b>	<b>aliud</b>	<b>aliī</b>	<b>aliae</b>	<b>alia</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>aliūs</b>	<b>aliūs</b>	<b>aliūs</b>	<b>aliōrum</b>	<b>aliārum</b>	<b>aliōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>aliī</b>	<b>aliī</b>	<b>aliī</b>	<b>aliīs</b>	<b>aliīs</b>	<b>aliīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>aliūm</b>	<b>aliām</b>	<b>aliud</b>	<b>aliōs</b>	<b>aliās</b>	<b>alia</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>aliō</b>	<b>aliā</b>	<b>aliō</b>	<b>aliīs</b>	<b>aliīs</b>	<b>aliīs</b>

<b>ūnus, one, only</b> STEMS <b>ūno-</b> m. and n., <b>ūnā-</b> f. BASE <b>ūn-</b>						
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>ūnus</b>	<b>ūna</b>	<b>ūnum</b>	<b>ūnī</b>	<b>ūnae</b>	<b>ūna</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>ūniūs</b>	<b>ūniūs</b>	<b>ūniūs</b>	<b>ūnōrum</b>	<b>ūnārum</b>	<b>ūnōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>ūnī</b>	<b>ūnī</b>	<b>ūnī</b>	<b>ūnīs</b>	<b>ūnīs</b>	<b>ūnīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>ūnum</b>	<b>ūnam</b>	<b>ūnum</b>	<b>ūnōs</b>	<b>ūnās</b>	<b>ūna</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>ūnō</b>	<b>ūnā</b>	<b>ūnō</b>	<b>ūnīs</b>	<b>ūnīs</b>	<b>ūnīs</b>

a. For the complete list see § 108.

**471. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. I-STEMS**

I. THREE ENDINGS

<b>ācer, ācris, ācre, keen, eager</b>			STEM <b>ācri-</b>	BASE <b>ācr-</b>		
	SINGULAR		PLURAL			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>ācer</b>	<b>ācris</b>	<b>ācre</b>	<b>ācrēs</b>	<b>ācrēs</b>	<b>ācria</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>ācris</b>	<b>ācris</b>	<b>ācris</b>	<b>ācrium</b>	<b>ācrium</b>	<b>ācrium</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>ācrī</b>	<b>ācrī</b>	<b>ācrī</b>	<b>ācribus</b>	<b>ācribus</b>	<b>ācribus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>ācrem</b>	<b>ācrem</b>	<b>ācre</b>	<b>ācrīs, -ēs</b>	<b>ācrīs, -ēs</b>	<b>ācria</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>ācrī</b>	<b>ācrī</b>	<b>ācrī</b>	<b>ācribus</b>	<b>ācribus</b>	<b>ācribus</b>

II. TWO ENDINGS

<b>omnis, omne, every, all</b>		STEM <b>omni-</b>	BASE <b>omn-</b>
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>omnis</b>	<b>omne</b>	<b>omnēs</b> <b>omnia</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>omnis</b>	<b>omnis</b>	<b>omnium</b> <b>omnium</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>omnī</b>	<b>omnī</b>	<b>omnibus</b> <b>omnibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>omnem</b>	<b>omne</b>	<b>omnīs, -ēs</b> <b>omnia</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>omnī</b>	<b>omnī</b>	<b>omnibus</b> <b>omnibus</b>



### III. ONE ENDING

	<b>pār, equal</b> STEM <b>pari-</b>		BASE <b>par-</b>	
	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	pār	pār	parēs	paria
<i>Gen.</i>	paris	paris	parium	parium
<i>Dat.</i>	parī	parī	paribus	paribus
<i>Acc.</i>	parem	pār	parīs, -ēs	paria
<i>Abl.</i>	parī	parī	paribus	paribus

1. Observe that all i-stem adjectives have **-ī** in the ablative singular.

This sentence appears to be a footnote, but there is no footnote tag on the page.

#### 472. PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

	<b>amāns, loving</b> STEM <b>amanti-</b>		BASE <b>amant-</b>	
	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
<i>Gen.</i>	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
<i>Dat.</i>	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
<i>Acc.</i>	amantem	amāns	amantis, -ēs	amantia
<i>Abl.</i>	amante, -ī	amante, -ī	amantibus	amantibus

	<b>iēns, going</b> STEM <b>ienti-, eunti-</b>		BASE <b>ient-, eunt-</b>	
	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	iēns	iēns	euntēs	euntia
<i>Gen.</i>	euntis	euntis	euntium	euntium
<i>Dat.</i>	euntī	euntī	euntibus	euntibus
<i>Acc.</i>	euntem	iēns	euntis, -ēs	euntia
<i>Abl.</i>	eunte, -ī	eunte, -ī	euntibus	euntibus

#### 473. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE		SUPERLATIVE		
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
altus (alto-)	altior	altius	altissimus	-a	-um
liber (libero-)	liberior	liberius	liberrimus	-a	-um
pulcher (pulchro-)	pulchrior	pulchrius	pulcherrimus	-a	-um
audāx (audāci-)	audācior	audācius	audācissimus	-a	-um
brevis (brevi-)	brevior	brevius	brevissimus	-a	-um
ācer (ācri-)	ācrior	ācrius	ācerrimus	-a	-um

#### 474. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

	<b>altior, higher</b>			
	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
<i>Gen.</i>	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
<i>Abl.</i>	altiōre	altiōre	altiōribus	altiōribus
		<b>plūs, more</b>		
<i>Nom.</i>	---	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i>	---	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i>	---	---	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i>	---	plūs	plūrīs (-ēs)	plūra
<i>Abl.</i>	---	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

#### 475. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
----------	-------------	-------------

bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius, <i>better</i>	optimus, -a, -um, <i>best</i>
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>	peior, peius, <i>worse</i>	pessimus, -a, -um, <i>worst</i>
magnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i>	maior, maius, <i>greater</i>	maximus, -a, -um, <i>greatest</i>
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i>	—, plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimus, -a, -um, <i>most</i>
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i>	minor, minus, <i>smaller</i>	minimus, -a, -um, <i>smallest</i>
senex, senis, <i>old</i>	senior	maximus nātū
iuvenis, -e, <i>young</i>	iūnior	minimus nātū
vetus, veteris, <i>old</i>	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um
facilis, -e, <i>easy</i>	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, <i>difficult</i>	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e, <i>similar</i>	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, <i>dissimilar</i>	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e, <i>low</i>	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, -e, <i>slender</i>	gracilior, -ius	gracillimus, -a, -um
exterus, <i>outward</i>	exterior, <i>outer, exterior</i>	extrēmus
		extimus
		īnfimus
		īmus
īferus, <i>below</i>	īferior, <i>lower</i>	postrēmus
		postumus
posterus, <i>following</i>	posterior, <i>later</i>	suprēmus
		summus
superus, <i>above</i>	superior, <i>higher</i>	citimus, <i>hithermost</i>
[cis, citrā, <i>on this side</i> ]	citerior, <i>hither</i>	intimus, <i>inmost</i>
[in, intrā, <i>in, within</i> ]	interior, <i>inner</i>	p̄rimus, <i>first</i>
[prae, prō, <i>before</i> ]	prior, <i>former</i>	proximus, <i>next</i>
[prope, <i>near</i> ]	propior, <i>nearer</i>	ultimus, <i>furthest</i>
[ultrā, <i>beyond</i> ]	ulterior, <i>further</i>	

#### 476. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārē (cārus), <i>dearly</i>	cārius	cārissimē
miserē (miser), <i>wretchedly</i>	miserius	miserimē
ācritēr (ācer), <i>sharply</i>	ācrius	ācerimē
facile (facilis), <i>easily</i>	facilius	facillimē

#### 477. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
diū, <i>long, a long time</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
bene (bonus), <i>well</i>	melius, <i>better</i>	optimē, <i>best</i>
male (malus), <i>ill</i>	peius, <i>worse</i>	pessimē, <i>worst</i>
magnopere, <i>greatly</i>	magis, <i>more</i>	maximē, <i>most</i>
multum (multus), <i>much</i>	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimum, <i>most</i>
parum, <i>little</i>	minus, <i>less</i>	minimē, <i>least</i>
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius	saepissimē

#### 478. NUMERALS

The cardinal numerals are indeclinable excepting ūnus, duo, trēs, the hundreds above one hundred, and mille used as a noun. The ordinals are declined like bonus, -a, -um.

CARDINALS (How many)		ORDINALS (In what order)	
1, ūnus, -a, -um,	one	p̄rimus, -a, -um	first
2, duo, duae, duo	two	secundus (or alter)	second
3, trēs, tria	three,	tertius	third,
4, quattuor	etc.	quārtus	etc.
5, quīnque		quīntus	
6, sex		sextus	
7, septem		septimus	
8, octō		octāvus	
9, novem		nōnus	

10, decem	decimus
11, ūndecim	ūndecimus
12, duodecim	duodecim
13, tredecim (decem (et) trēs)	tertius decimus
14, quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15, quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16, sēdecim	sextus decimus
17, septendecim	septimus decimus
18, duodēvīgintī (octōdecim)	duodēvīcēsimus
19, ūndēvīgintī (novendecim)	ūndēvīcēsimus
20, vīgintī	vīcēsimus
21, vīgintī ūnus <i>or</i> ūnus et vīgintī, etc.	vīcēsimus prīmus <i>or</i> ūnus et vīcēsimus, etc.
30, trīgintā	trīcēsimus
40, quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50, quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
60, sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
70, septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
80, octōgintā	octōgēsimus
90, nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
100, centum	centum
101, centum (et) ūnus, etc.	centum (et) ūnus, etc.
120, centum (et) vīgintī	centum (et) vīgintī
121, centum (et) vīgintī ūnus, etc.	centum (et) vīgintī ūnus, etc.
200, ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentī, -ae, -a
300, trecentī	trecentī
400, quadringentī	quadringentī
500, quīngentī	quīngentī
600, sescentī	sescentī
700, septingentī	septingentī
800, octingentī	octingentī
900, nōngentī	nōngentī
1000, mille	mille

**479.** Declension of **duo**, *two*, **trēs**, *three*, and **mille**, *a thousand*.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i>	<b>duo</b>	<b>duae</b>	<b>duo</b>	<b>trēs</b>	<b>trīa</b>	<b>mille</b>	<b>mīlia</b>
<i>G.</i>	<b>duōrum</b>	<b>duārum</b>	<b>duōrum</b>	<b>trīum</b>	<b>trīum</b>	<b>mille</b>	<b>mīlium</b>
<i>D.</i>	<b>duōbus</b>	<b>duābus</b>	<b>duōbus</b>	<b>tribus</b>	<b>tribus</b>	<b>mille</b>	<b>mīlibus</b>
<i>A.</i>	<b>duōs</b> <i>or</i> <b>duo</b>	<b>duās</b>	<b>duo</b>	<b>trīs</b> <i>or</i> <b>trēs</b>	<b>trīa</b>	<b>mille</b>	<b>mīlia</b>
<i>A.</i>	<b>duōbus</b>	<b>duābus</b>	<b>duōbus</b>	<b>tribus</b>	<b>tribus</b>	<b>mille</b>	<b>mīlibus</b>

NOTE. **Mille** is used in the plural as a noun with a modifying genitive, and is occasionally so used in the nominative and accusative singular. For the declension of **ūnus** cf. § 470.

PRONOUNS

**480. PERSONAL**

	<b>ego, I</b>		<b>tū, you</b>		<b>suī, of himself, etc.</b>	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	—	—
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	nostrum, -trī	tuī	vestrum, -trī	suī	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē

Note that **suī** is always reflexive.

**481. DEMONSTRATIVE**

Demonstratives belong to the first and second declensions, but have the pronominal endings **-īus** and **-ī** in the gen. and dat. sing.

**ipse, self**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsī'us	ipsī'us	ipsī'us	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

**hic, this (here), he**

<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

**iste, this, that (of yours), he**

<i>Nom.</i>	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
<i>Gen.</i>	istī'us	istī'us	istī'us	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

**ille, that (yonder), he**

<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illī'us	illī'us	illī'us	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

**is, this, that, he**

<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	iī, eī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs

**īdem, the same**

<i>Nom.</i>	īdem	e'adem	īdem	iī'dem eī'dem	eae'dem	e'adem
<i>Gen.</i>	eius'dem	eius'dem	eius'dem	eōrun'dem	eārun'dem	eōrun'dem
<i>Dat.</i>	eī'dem	eī'dem	eī'dem	iīs'dem eīs'dem	iīs'dem eīs'dem	iīs'dem eīs'dem
<i>Acc.</i>	eun'dem	ean'dem	īdem	eōs'dem	eās'dem	e'adem
<i>Abl.</i>	eō'dem	eā'dem	eō'dem	iīs'dem eīs'dem	iīs'dem eīs'dem	iīs'dem eīs'dem

NOTE. In the plural of **is** and **īdem** the forms with two i's are preferred, the two i's being pronounced as one.

**482. RELATIVE**

**quī, who, which, that**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

**483. INTERROGATIVE**

**quis, substantive, who, what**

SINGULAR	PLURAL
----------	--------

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid	qui	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

The interrogative adjective **quī, quae, quod**, is declined like the relative.

#### 484. INDEFINITES

**quis** and **quī**, as declined above,<sup>1</sup> are used also as indefinites (*some, any*). The other indefinites are compounds of **quis** and **quī**.

#### quisque, each

	SUBSTANTIVE		ADJECTIVE		
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quisque	quidque	quisque	quaeque	quodque
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius'que	cuius'que	cuius'que	cuius'que	cuius'que
<i>Dat.</i>	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique
<i>Acc.</i>	quemque	quidque	quemque	quamque	quodque
<i>Abl.</i>	quōque	quōque	quōque	quāque	quōque

1. **qua** is generally used instead of **quae** in the feminine nominative singular and in the neuter nominative and accusative plural.

#### 485. quīdam, a certain one, a certain

Observe that in the neuter singular the adjective has **quoddam** and the substantive **quiddam**.

	SINGULAR		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quoddam quiddam ( <i>subst.</i> )
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius'dam	cuius'dam	cuius'dam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
<i>Acc.</i>	quendam	quandam	quoddam quiddam ( <i>subst.</i> )
<i>Abl.</i>	quōdam	quādam	quōdam
	PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrun'dam	quārun'dam	quōrun'dam
<i>Dat.</i>	quibus'dam	quibus'dam	quibus'dam
<i>Acc.</i>	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
<i>Abl.</i>	quibus'dam	quibus'dam	quibus'dam

#### 486. quisquam, substantive, any one (at all)

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quisquam	quicquam (quidquam)
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius'quam	cuius'quam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuiquam	cuiquam
<i>Acc.</i>	quemquam	quicquam (quidquam)
<i>Abl.</i>	quōquam	quōquam

#### 487. aliquis, substantive, some one. aliquī, adjective, some

	SINGULAR				
	SUBSTANTIVE		ADJECTIVE		
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquis	aliquid	aliquī	aliqua	aliquod
<i>Gen.</i>	alicu'ius	alicu'ius	alicu'ius	alicu'ius	alicu'ius
<i>Dat.</i>	alicui	alicui	alicui	alicui	alicui
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquem	aliquid	aliquem	aliquam	aliquod
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquō	aliquō	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

	PLURAL FOR BOTH SUBSTANTIVE AND ADJECTIVE		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
<i>Gen.</i>	aliquō'rum	aliquā'rum	aliquō'rum

<i>Dat.</i>	ali'quibus	ali'quibus	ali'quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
<i>Abl.</i>	ali'quibus	ali'quibus	ali'quibus

a. **quis (quī)**, *any one, any*, is the least definite (§ 297. b). **aliquis (aliquī)**, *some one, some*, is more definite than **quis**. **quisquam**, *any one (at all)*, and its adjective **ūllus**, *any*, occur mostly with a negative, expressed or implied, and in clauses of comparison.

## REGULAR VERBS

### 488. FIRST CONJUGATION. Ā-VERBS. AMŌ

PRINCIPAL PARTS **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus**

PRES. STEM amā- PERF. STEM amāv- PART. STEM amāt-

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

*I love, am loving, do love, etc.*

*I am loved, etc.*

amō	amā <b>mus</b>	am <b>or</b>	amā <b>mur</b>
amās	amā <b>tis</b>	amā <b>ris, -re</b>	amā <b>mini</b>
amat	amant	amā <b>tur</b>	amantur

IMPERFECT

*I loved, was loving, did love, etc.*

*I was loved, etc.*

amā <b>bam</b>	amā <b>bāmus</b>	amā <b>bar</b>	amā <b>bāmur</b>
amā <b>bās</b>	amā <b>bātis</b>	amā <b>bāris, -re</b>	amā <b>bāmini</b>
amā <b>bat</b>	amā <b>bant</b>	amā <b>bātur</b>	amā <b>bantur</b>

FUTURE

*I shall love, etc.*

*I shall be loved, etc.*

amā <b>bō</b>	amā <b>bimus</b>	amā <b>bor</b>	amā <b>bimur</b>
amā <b>bis</b>	amā <b>bitis</b>	amā <b>beris, -re</b>	amā <b>bimini</b>
amā <b>bit</b>	amā <b>bunt</b>	amā <b>bitur</b>	amā <b>buntur</b>

PERFECT

*I have loved, loved, did love, etc.*

*I have been (was) loved, etc.*

amā <b>vi</b>	amā <b>vimus</b>	amā <b>tus, -a, -um</b>	<b>sum</b>	amā <b>tī, -ae, -a</b>	<b>sumus</b>
amā <b>vistī</b>	amā <b>vistis</b>		<b>es</b>		<b>estis</b>
amā <b>vit</b>	amā <b>vērunt, -re</b>		<b>est</b>		<b>sunt</b>

PLUPERFECT

*I had loved, etc.*

*I had been loved, etc.*

amā <b>veram</b>	amā <b>verāmus</b>	amā <b>tus, -a, -um</b>	<b>eram</b>	amā <b>tī, -ae, -a</b>	<b>erāmus</b>
amā <b>verās</b>	amā <b>verātis</b>		<b>erās</b>		<b>erātis</b>
amā <b>verat</b>	amā <b>verant</b>		<b>erat</b>		<b>erant</b>

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have loved, etc.*

*I shall have been loved, etc.*

amā <b>verō</b>	amā <b>verimus</b>	amā <b>tus, -a, -um</b>	<b>erō</b>	amā <b>tī, -ae, -a</b>	<b>erimus</b>
amā <b>veris</b>	amā <b>veritis</b>		<b>eris</b>		<b>eritis</b>
amā <b>verit</b>	amā <b>verint</b>		<b>erit</b>		<b>erunt</b>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

am <b>em</b>	am <b>emus</b>	am <b>er</b>	am <b>emur</b>
am <b>ēs</b>	am <b>ētis</b>	am <b>ēris, -re</b>	am <b>ēmini</b>
am <b>et</b>	am <b>ent</b>	am <b>etur</b>	am <b>entur</b>

IMPERFECT

amā <b>rem</b>	amā <b>remus</b>	amā <b>rer</b>	amā <b>rēmur</b>
amā <b>rēs</b>	amā <b>rētis</b>	amā <b>rēris, -re</b>	amā <b>rēmini</b>
amā <b>ret</b>	amā <b>rent</b>	amā <b>rētur</b>	amā <b>rentur</b>

PERFECT

amā <b>verim</b>	amā <b>verimus</b>	amā <b>tus, -a, -um</b>	<b>sim</b>	amā <b>tī, -ae, -a</b>	<b>sīmus</b>
amā <b>veris</b>	amā <b>veritis</b>		<b>sīs</b>		<b>sītis</b>
amā <b>verit</b>	amā <b>verint</b>		<b>sit</b>		<b>sint</b>

PLUPERFECT

amā <b>vissem</b>	amā <b>vissēmus</b>	<b>essem</b>	<b>essēmus</b>
-------------------	---------------------	--------------	----------------

amāvissēs	amāvissētis	amātus, -a, - um	essēs	amātī, -ae, -a	essētis
amāvisset	amāvissent		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

amā, <i>love thou</i>	amāre, <i>be thou loved</i>
amāte, <i>love ye</i>	amāmini, <i>be ye loved</i>

FUTURE

amātō, <i>thou shalt love</i>	amātor, <i>thou shalt be loved</i>
amātō, <i>he shall love</i>	amātor, <i>he shall be loved</i>
amātōte, <i>you shall love</i>	—
amantō, <i>they shall love</i>	amantor, <i>they shall be loved</i>

INFINITIVE

Pres. amāre, <i>to love</i>	amārī, <i>to be loved</i>
Perf. amāvisse, <i>to have loved</i>	amātus, -a, -um esse, <i>to have been loved</i>
Fut. amātūrus, -a, -um esse, <i>to be about to love</i>	[amātum irī], <i>to be about to be loved</i>

PARTICIPLES

Pres. amāns, -antis, <i>loving</i>	Pres. —
Fut. amātūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to love</i>	Gerundive <sup>1</sup> amandus, -a, -um, <i>to be loved</i>
Perf. —	Perf. amātus, -a, -um, <i>having been loved, loved</i>

GERUND

Nom. —	SUPINE (Active Voice)
Gen. amandī, <i>of loving</i>	Acc. [amātum], <i>to love</i>
Dat. amandō, <i>for loving</i>	Abl. [amātū], <i>to love, in the loving</i>
Acc. amandum, <i>loving</i>	
Abl. amandō, <i>by loving</i>	

1. Sometimes called the future passive participle.

489. SECOND CONJUGATION. Ē-VERBS. MONEŌ

PRINCIPAL PARTS moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus

PRES. STEM <b>monē-</b>	PERF. STEM <b>monu-</b>	PART. STEM <b>monit-</b>
ACTIVE		PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

<i>I advise, etc.,</i>		<i>I am advised, etc.</i>	
moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
monēs	monētis	monēris, -re	monēmini
monet	monent	monētur	monentur

IMPERFECT

<i>I was advising, etc.,</i>		<i>I was advised, etc.</i>	
monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris, -re	monēbāmini
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbāntur

FUTURE

<i>I shall advise, etc.,</i>		<i>I shall be advised, etc.</i>	
monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis, -re	monēbimini
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur

PERFECT

<i>I have advised, I advised, etc.</i>		<i>I have been (was) advised, etc.</i>			
monuī	monuimus	monitus, -a, - um	sum	monitī, -ae, -a	sumus
monuistī	monuistis		es		estis
monuīt	monuērunt, -re		est		sunt

PLUPERFECT

<i>I had advised, etc.,</i>		<i>I had been advised, etc.</i>			
monueram	monuerāmus	monitus, -a, - um	eram	monitī, -ae, -a	erāmus
monuerās	monuerātis		eras		eratis
monuerat	monuerant		erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT

<i>I shall have advised, etc.</i>		<i>I shall have been advised, etc.</i>			
monuerō	monuerimus	monitus, -a, - um	erō	monitī, -ae, -a	erimus
monueris	monueritis		eris		eritis
monuerit	monuerint		erit		erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris, -re	moneāminī
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur

IMPERFECT

monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris, -re	monērēmini
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur

PERFECT

monuerim	monuerimus	monitus, -a, - um	sim	monitī, -ae, -a	simus
monueris	monueritis		sīs		sītis
monuerit	monuerint		sit		sint

PLUPERFECT

monuissē	monuissēm	monitus, -a, - um	essem	monitī, -ae, -a	essēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis		essēs		essētis
monuisset	monuissent		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

monē, advise thou	monēre, be thou advised
monēte, advise ye	monēmini, be ye advised

FUTURE

monētō, thou shall advise	monētor, thou shalt be advised
monētō, he shall advise	monētor, he shall be advised
monētōte, you shall advise	---
monentō, they shall advise	monentor, they shall be advised

INFINITIVE

Pres. monēre, to advise	monērī, to be advised
Perf. monuisse, to have advised	monitus, -a, -um esse, to have been advised
Fut. monitūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to advise	[monitum īrī], to be about to be advised

PARTICIPLES

Pres. monēns, -entis, advising	Pres. ---
Fut. monitūrus, -a, -um, about to advise	Ger. monendus, -a, -um, to be advised
Perf. ---	Perf. monitus, -a, -um, having been advised, advised

GERUND

Nom. ---
Gen. monendī, of advising
Dat. monendō, for advising
Acc. monendum, advising
Abl. monendō, by advising

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. [monitum], to advise
Abl. [monitū], to advise, in the advising

490. THIRD CONJUGATION. Ę-VERBS. REGŌ

PRINCIPAL PARTS **regō, regere, rexī, rēctus**

PRES. STEM rege- PERF. STEM rēx- PART. STEM rēct-

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

<i>I rule, etc.</i>		<i>I am ruled, etc.</i>
regō	regimus	re'gor
regis	regitis	re'geris, -re
regit	regunt	re'gitur

IMPERFECT



	<i>I was ruling, etc.</i>		<i>I was ruled, etc.</i>
regēbam	regēbāmus	regē'bar	regēbā'mur
regēbās	regēbātis	regēbā'ris, -re	regēbā'minī
regēbat	regēbant	regēbā'tur	regēban'tur

FUTURE

	<i>I shall rule, etc.</i>		<i>I shall be ruled, etc.</i>
regam	regēmus	re'gar	regē'mur
regēs	regētis	regē'ris, -re	regē'minī
reget	regent	regē'tur	regen'tur

PERFECT

	<i>I have ruled, etc.</i>		<i>I have been ruled, etc.</i>		
rēxī	rēximus	rēctus, -a, - um	sum	rēctī, -ae, - a	sumus
rēxistī	rēxistis		es		estis
rēxit	rēxērunt, -re		est		sunt

PLUPERFECT

	<i>I had ruled, etc.</i>		<i>I had been ruled, etc.</i>		
rēxeram	rēxerāmus	rēctus, -a, - um	eram	rēctī, -ae, - a	erāmus
rēxerās	rēxerātis		erās		erātis
rēxerat	rēxerant		erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT

	<i>I shall have ruled, etc.</i>		<i>I shall have been ruled, etc.</i>		
rēxerō	rēxerimus	rēctus, -a, - um	erō	rēctī, -ae, - a	erimus
rēxeris	rēxeritis		eris		eritis
rēxerit	rēxerint		erit		erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

regam	regāmus	regar	regāmur
regās	regātis	regāris, -re	regāminī
regat	regant	regātur	regantur

IMPERFECT

regerem	regerēmus	regerer	regerēmur
regerēs	regerētis	regerēris, -re	regerēminī
regeret	regerent	regerētur	regerentur

PERFECT

rēxerim	rēxerimus	rēctus, -a, - um	sim	rēctī, -ae, - a	sīmus
rēxeris	rēxeritis		sīs		sītis
rēxerit	rēxerint		sit		sint

PLUPERFECT

rēxissem	rēxissēmus	rēctus, -a, - um	essem	rēctī, -ae, - a	essēmus
rēxissēs	rēxissētis		essēs		essētis
rēxisset	rēxissent		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

rege, rule thou	regere, be thou ruled
regite, rule ye	regimini, be ye ruled

FUTURE

regitō, thou shalt rule	regitor, thou shalt be ruled
regitō he shall rule	regitor, he shall be ruled
regitōte, ye shall rule	—
reguntō, they shall rule	reguntor, they shall be ruled

INFINITIVE

Pres. regere, to rule	regī, to be ruled
Perf. rēxisse, to have ruled	rēctus, -a, -um esse, to have been ruled
Fut. rēctūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to rule	[rēctum irī], to be about to be ruled

PARTICIPLES

Pres. regēns, -entis, ruling	Pres. —
Fut. rēctūrus, -a, -um, about to rule	Ger. regendus, -a, -um, to be ruled

Perf. —

Perf. **rēctus, -a, -um**, *having been ruled, ruled*

GERUND

Nom. —

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Gen. **regendī**, *of ruling*

Acc [**rēctum**], *to rule*

Dat. **regendō**, *for ruling*

Abl. [**rēctū**], *to rule, in the ruling*

Acc. **regendum**, *ruling*

Abl. **regendō**, *by ruling*

491. FOURTH CONJUGATION. **Ī-VERBS. AUDIO**

PRINCIPAL PARTS **audiō, audire, audivī, auditus**

PRES. STEM **audi-** PERF. STEM **audiv-** PART. STEM **audit-**

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

*I hear, etc.*

*I am heard, etc.*

audiō **audīmus**

au'dior

audī'mur

audīs **audītis**

audī'ris, -re

audī'minī

audit **audiunt**

audī'tur

audiun'tur

IMPERFECT

*I was hearing, etc.*

*I was heard, etc.*

audiēbam **audiēbāmus**

audiē'bar

audiēbā'mur

audiēbās **audiēbātis**

audiēbā'ris, -re

audiēbā'minī

audiēbat **audiēbant**

audiēbā'tur

audiēban'tur

FUTURE

*I shall hear, etc.*

*I shall be heard, etc.*

audiam **audiēmus**

au'diar

audiē'mur

audiēs **audiētis**

audiē'ris, -re

audiē'minī

audiet **audient**

audiē'tur

audien'tur

PERFECT

*I have heard, etc.*

*I have been heard, etc.*

audivī **audivimus**

auditus, -a, -  
um

sum  
es  
est

auditī, -ae, -  
a

sumus  
estis  
sunt

audivistī **audivistis**

audivīt **audivērunt, -re**

PLUPERFECT

*I had heard, etc.*

*I had been heard, etc.*

audiveram **audiverāmus**

auditus, -a, -  
um

eram  
erās  
erat

auditī, -ae, -  
a

erāmus  
erātis  
erant

audiverās **audiverātis**

audiverat **audiverant**

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have heard, etc.*

*I shall have been heard, etc.*

audiverō **audiverimus**

auditus, -a, -  
um

erō  
eris  
erit

auditī, -ae, -  
a

erimus  
eritis  
erunt

audiveris **audiveritis**

audiverit **audiverint**

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

audiam **audiāmus**

audiar

audiāmur

audiās **audiātis**

audiāris, -re

audiāminī

audiat **audiant**

audiātur

audiantur

IMPERFECT

audīrem **audīrēmus**

audīrer

audīrēmur

audīrēs **audīrētis**

audīrēris, -re

audīrēminī

audīret **audīrent**

audīrētur

audīrentur

PERFECT

audiverim **audiverimus**

auditus, -a, -  
um

sim  
sīs  
sit

auditī, -ae, -  
a

sīmus  
sītis  
sint

audiveris **audiveritis**

audiverit **audiverint**

PLUPERFECT

audīvissem **audīvissemus**

auditus, -a, -

essem  
a

auditī, -ae, -

essēmus

audīvissēs	audīvissētis	um	essēs	essētis
audīvisset	audīvisset		esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

audī, <i>hear thou</i>	audīre, <i>be thou heard</i>
audīte, <i>hear ye</i>	audīmini, <i>be ye heard</i>

FUTURE

audītō, <i>thou shalt hear</i>	audītor, <i>thou shalt be heard</i>
audītō, <i>he shall hear</i>	audītor, <i>he shall be heard</i>
audītōte, <i>ye shall hear</i>	—
audiuntō, <i>they shall hear</i>	audiuntor, <i>they shall be heard</i>

INFINITIVE

Pres. audīre, <i>to hear</i>	audīrī, <i>to be heard</i>
audīvisse, <i>to have heard</i>	audītus, -a, -um esse, <i>to have been heard</i>
audītūrus, -a, -um esse, <i>to be about to hear</i>	[audītum irī, <i>to be about to be heard</i> ]

PARTICIPLES

Pres. audiēns, -entis, <i>hearing</i>	Pres. —
Fut. audītūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to hear</i>	Ger. audiendus, -a, -um, <i>to be heard</i>
Perf. —	Perf. auditus, -a, -um, <i>having been heard, heard</i>

GERUND

Nom. —	SUPINE (Active Voice)
Gen. audiendī, <i>of hearing</i>	Acc. [audītum], <i>to hear</i>
Dat. audiendō, <i>for hearing</i>	Abl. [audītu], <i>to hear, in the hearing</i>
Acc. audiendum, <i>hearing</i>	
Abl. audiendō, <i>by hearing</i>	

492. THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN -IŌ. CAPIŌ

PRINCIPAL PARTS capiō, capere, cēpi, captus

PRES. STEM **cape-** PERF. STEM **cēp-** PART. STEM **capt-**  
ACTIVE PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

capiō	capimus	ca'pior	ca'pimur
capis	capitis	ca'peris, -re	capimini
capit	capit	ca'pitur	capimur

IMPERFECT

capiēbam	capiebamus	capiē'bar	capiebā'mur
capiēbas	capiebātis	capiebā'ris, -re	capiebā'mini
capiēbat	capiebant	capiebā'tur	capieban'tur

FUTURE

capiam	capiemus	ca'piar	capie'mur
capies	capietis	capie'ris, -re	capie'mini
capiet	capient	capie'tur	capientur

PERFECT

cēpi, cēpisti, cēpit, etc.	captus, -a, -um	sum, es, est, etc.
----------------------------	-----------------	--------------------

PLUPERFECT

cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, etc.	captus, -a, -um	eram, erās, erat, etc.
---------------------------------	-----------------	------------------------

FUTURE PERFECT

cēperō, cēperis, cēperit, etc.	captus, -a, -um	erō, eris, erit, etc.
--------------------------------	-----------------	-----------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

capiam, capiās, capiat, etc.	capiar, -iāris, -re, -iātur, etc.
------------------------------	-----------------------------------

IMPERFECT

caperem, caperēs, caperet, etc.	caperer, -erēris, -re, -erētur, etc.
---------------------------------	--------------------------------------

PERFECT

cēperim, cēperis, cēperit, etc.	captus, -a, -um	sim, sis, sit, etc.
---------------------------------	-----------------	---------------------

PLUPERFECT

cēpissē, cēpissēs, cēpisset, etc.	captus, -a, -um	essem, essēs, esset, etc.
-----------------------------------	-----------------	---------------------------

		IMPERATIVE	
		PRESENT	
2d Pers. cape	capite	capere	capimini
		FUTURE	
2d Pers. capitō	capitōte	capitor	---
3rd Pers. capitō	capiuntō	capitor	capiuntor
		INFINITIVE	
Pres. capere		capī	
Perf. cēpisse		captus, -a, -um esse	
Fut. captūrus, -a, -um esse		[captum irī]	
		PARTICIPLES	
Pres. capiēns, -ientis		Pres. ---	
Fut. captūrus, -a, -um		Ger. capiendus, -a, -um	
Perf. ---		Perf. captus, -a, -um	
GERUND		SUPINE (Active Voice)	
Gen. capiendī		Acc. [captum]	
etc.		Abl. [captū]	

### 493. DEPONENT VERBS

PRINCIPAL PARTS		I. <b>hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, urge</b>
		II. <b>vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear</b>
		III. <b>sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow</b>
		IV. <b>partior, partīrī, partītus sum, share, divide</b>

NOTE. In addition to the passive conjugation, deponent verbs use certain forms from the active. These are marked with a star. Deponent -iō verbs of the third conjugation are inflected like the passive of capiō.

INDICATIVE				
Pres.	hortor	vereor	sequor	partior
	hortārīs, -re	verērīs, -re	sequerīs, -re	partīrīs, -re
	hortātūr	verētūr	sequitur	partītūr
	hortāmūr	verēmūr	sequimūr	partīmūr
	hortāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	partīminī
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	partiuntur
Impf.	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	partiēbar
Fut.	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	partiar
Perf.	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	partītus sum
Plup.	hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	partītus eram
F. P.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	partītus erō
SUBJUNCTIVE				
Pres.	horter	verear	sequar	partiar
Impf.	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	partīrer
Perf.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	partītus sim
Plup.	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	partītus essem
IMPERATIVE				
Pres.	hortāre	verēre	sequere	partīre
Fut.	hortātor	verētōr	sequitor	partītor
INFINITIVE				
Pres.	hortārī	verērī	sequī	partīrī
Perf.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	partītus esse
Fut.	<b>*hortātūrus esse</b>	<b>*veritūrus esse</b>	<b>*secūtūrus esse</b>	<b>*partitūrus esse</b>
PARTICIPLES				
Pres.	<b>*hortāns</b>	<b>*verēns</b>	<b>*sequēns</b>	<b>*partiēns</b>
Fut.	<b>*hortātūrus</b>	<b>*veritūrus</b>	<b>*secūtūrus</b>	<b>*partitūrus</b>
Perf.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	partītus
Ger.	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	partiendus
GERUND				
	<b>*hortandī, etc.</b>	<b>*verendī, etc.</b>	<b>*sequendī, etc.</b>	<b>*partiendī, etc.</b>
SUPINE				

IRREGULAR VERBS

494. **sum, am, be**

PRINCIPAL PARTS **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**

PRES. STEM **es-** PERF. STEM **fu-** PART. STEM **fut-**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

SINGULAR

PLURAL

**sum**, *I am*

**sumus**, *we are*

**es**, *thou art*

**estis**, *you are*

**est**, *he (she, it) is*

**sunt**, *they are*

IMPERFECT

**eram**, *I was*

**erāmus**, *we were*

**erās**, *thou wast*

**erātis**, *you were*

**erat**, *he was*

**erant**, *they were*

FUTURE

**erō**, *I shall be*

**erimus**, *we shall be*

**eris**, *thou wilt be*

**eritis**, *you will be*

**erit**, *he will be*

**erunt**, *they will be*

PERFECT

**fuī**, *I have been, was*

**fuius**, *we have been, were*

**fuisti**, *thou hast been, wast*

**fuistis**, *you have been, were*

**fuit**, *he has been, was*

**fuērunt**, *fuēre, they have been, were*

PLUPERFECT

**fueram**, *I had been*

**fuerāmus**, *we had been*

**fuerās**, *thou hadst been*

**fuerātis**, *you had been*

**fuerat**, *he had been*

**fuerant**, *they had been*

FUTURE PERFECT

**fuerō**, *I shall have been*

**fuerimus**, *we shall have been*

**fueris**, *thou wilt have been*

**fueritis**, *you will have been*

**fuerit**, *he will have been*

**fuerint**, *they will have been*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

IMPERFECT

SINGULAR

PLURAL

SINGULAR

PLURAL

**sim**

**sīmus**

**essem**

**essēmus**

**sīs**

**sītis**

**essēs**

**essētis**

**sit**

**sint**

**esset**

**essent**

PERFECT

PLUPERFECT

**fuerim**

**fuerimus**

**fuissem**

**fuissēmus**

**fueris**

**fueritis**

**fuissēs**

**fuissētis**

**fuerit**

**fuerint**

**fuisset**

**fuissent**

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

FUTURE

2d Pers. Sing. **es**, *be thou*

2d Pers. Sing. **estō**, *thou shalt be*

2d Pers. Plur. **este**, *be ye*

3d Pers. Sing. **estō**, *he shall be*

2d Pers. Plur. **estōte**, *ye shall be*

3d Pers. Plur. **suntō**, *they shall be*

INFINITIVE

PARTICIPLE

Pres. **esse**, *to be*

Perf. **fuisse**, *to have been*

Fut. **futūrus, -a, -um esse** or **fore, futūrus, -a, -um**, *about to be to be about to be*

495. **possum, be able, can**

PRINCIPAL PARTS **possum, posse, potuī, —**

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR

PLURAL

SINGULAR

PLURAL

<i>Pres.</i>	possum	pos 'sumus	possim	possī 'mus
	potes	potes 'tis	possis	possī 'tis
	potest	possunt	possit	possint
<i>Impf.</i>	poteram	poterāmus	possem	possē 'mus
<i>Fut.</i>	poterō	poterimus	---	---
<i>Perf.</i>	potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
<i>Plup.</i>	potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
<i>F. P.</i>	potuerō	potuerimus	---	---

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i> posse	<i>Perf.</i> potuisse
--------------------	-----------------------

PARTICIPLE

*Pres.* potens, *gen.* -entis, (adjective) *powerful*

496. **prōsum, benefit**

PRINCIPAL PARTS **prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus**

PRES. STEM **prōdes-** PERF. STEM **prōfu-** PART. STEM **prōfut-**

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i>	prōsum	prō 'sumus	prōsim	prōsī 'mus
	prōdes	prōdes 'tis	prōsis	prōsī 'tis
	prōdest	prōsunt	prōsit	prōsint
<i>Impf.</i>	prōderam	prōderāmus	prōdessem	prodessē 'mus
<i>Fut.</i>	prōderō	prōderimus	---	---
<i>Perf.</i>	prōfuī	prōfuimus	prōfuerim	prōfuerimus
<i>Plup.</i>	prōfueram	prōfuerāmus	prōfuissem	prōfuissēmus
<i>F. P.</i>	prōfuerō	prōfuerimus	---	---

IMPERATIVE

*Pres. 2d Pers.* prōdes, prōdeste *Fut. 2d Pers.* prōdestō, prōdestōte

INFINITIVE

*Pres.* prōdesse *Perf.* prōfuisse *Fut.* prōfutūrus, -a, -um esse  
FUTURE PARTICIPLE prōfutūrus, -a, -um

497.

PRINCIPAL PARTS	<b>volō, velle, voluī</b> , ---, <i>be willing, will, wish</i>
	<b>nōlō, nōlle, nōluī</b> , ---, <i>be unwilling, will not</i>
	<b>mālō, mālle, mālūi</b> , ---, <i>be more willing, prefer</i>

**Nōlō** and **mālō** are compounds of **volō**. **Nōlō** is for **ne** (*not*) + **volō**, and **mālō** for **mā** (from **magis**, *more*) + **volō**. The second person **vīs** is from a different root.

	INDICATIVE		
	SINGULAR		
<i>Pres.</i>	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
PLURAL			
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvul 'tis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
<i>Impf.</i>	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
<i>Fut.</i>	volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
<i>Perf.</i>	voluī	nōluī	māluī
<i>Plup.</i>	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
<i>F. P.</i>	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō
SUBJUNCTIVE			
SINGULAR			
<i>Pres.</i>	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
PLURAL			
	velī 'mus	nōlī 'mus	mālī 'mus
	velī 'tis	nōlī 'tis	mālī 'tis

	velint	nōlint	mālint
<i>Impf.</i>	vellem	nōllem	māllem
<i>Perf.</i>	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
<i>Plup.</i>	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem
		IMPERATIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	---	nōlī nōlīte	---
<i>Fut.</i>	---	nōlitō, etc.	---
		INFINITIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	velle	nōlle	mālle
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse
		PARTICIPLE	
<i>Pres.</i>	volēns, -entis	nōlēns, -entis	---

**498. ferō, bear, carry, endure**

	PRINCIPAL PARTS <b>ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus</b>			
	PRES. STEM <b>fer-</b>	PERF. STEM <b>tul-</b>	PART. STEM <b>lāt-</b>	
	INDICATIVE			
	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertīs	ferris, -re	ferimimī
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
<i>Impf.</i>	ferēbam		ferēbar	
<i>Fut.</i>	feram, ferēs, etc.		ferar, ferēris, etc.	
<i>Perf.</i>	tulī		lātus, -a, -um sum	
<i>Plup.</i>	tuleram		lātus, -a, -um eram	
<i>F. P.</i>	tulerō		lātus, -a, -um erō	
	SUBJUNCTIVE			
<i>Pres.</i>	feram, ferās, etc.		ferar, ferāris, etc.	
<i>Impf.</i>	ferrem		ferrer	
<i>Perf.</i>	tulerim		lātus, -a, -um sim	
<i>Plup.</i>	tulisse		lātus, -a, -um essem	
	IMPERATIVE			
<i>Pres. 2d Pers.</i>	fer	ferre	ferre	ferimini
<i>Fut. 2d Pers.</i>	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
<i>3d Pers.</i>	fertō	ferunto	fertor	feruntor
	INFINITIVE			
<i>Pres.</i>	ferre		ferrī	
<i>Perf.</i>	tulisse		lātus, -a, -um esse	
<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus, -a, -um esse		---	
	PARTICIPLES			
<i>Pres.</i>	ferēns, -entis		<i>Pres.</i> ---	
<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus, -a, -um		<i>Ger.</i> ferendus, -a, -um	
<i>Perf.</i>	---		<i>Perf.</i> lātus, -a, -um	
	GERUND		SUPINE (Active Voice)	
<i>Gen.</i>	ferendī	<i>Acc.</i> ferendum	<i>Acc.</i> [lātum]	
<i>Dat.</i>	ferendō	<i>Abl.</i> ferendō	<i>Abl.</i> [lātū]	

**499. eō, go**

	PRINCIPAL PARTS <b>eō, ire, iī (ivī), itum</b> (n. perf. part.)			
	PRES. STEM <b>i-</b>	PERF. STEM <b>i-</b> OR <b>iv-</b>	PART. STEM <b>it-</b>	
	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
			IMPERATIVE	
			SING.	PLUR.
<i>Pres.</i>	eō	īmus	eam	<i>2d Pers.</i> ī ite
	īs	ītis		
	it	eunt		
<i>Impf.</i>	ībam	īrem		
<i>Fut.</i>	ībō	---		<i>2d Pers.</i> itō itōte
				<i>3d Pers.</i> itō euntō
<i>Perf.</i>	iī (ivī)	ierim (īverim)		

<i>Plup.</i>	ieram (īveram)	īsem (īvissem)
<i>F. P.</i>	ierō (īverō)	
	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLES
<i>Pres.</i>	īre	<i>Pres.</i> iēns, <i>gen.</i> euntis (§ 472)
<i>Perf.</i>	isse (īvisse)	<i>Fut.</i> itūrus, -a, -um
<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus, -a, -um esse	<i>Ger.</i> eundum
	GERUND	SUPINE
	<i>Gen.</i> eundī	<i>Acc.</i> [itum]
	<i>Dat.</i> eundō	<i>Abl.</i> [itū]
	<i>Acc.</i> eundum	
	<i>Abl.</i> eundō	

a. The verb **eō** is used impersonally in the third person singular of the passive, as **itur, itum est**, etc.

b. In the perfect system the forms with **v** are very rare.

**500. fiō, passive of faciō; be made, become, happen**

PRINCIPAL PARTS **fiō, fierī, factus sum**

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	fiō — fis — fiunt fiunt	fiam	<i>2d Pers.</i> fi fite
<i>Impf.</i>	fiēbam	fierem	
<i>Fut.</i>	fiam	—	
<i>Perf.</i>	factus, -a, -um sum	factus, -a, -um sim	
<i>Plup.</i>	factus, -a, -um eram	factus, -a, -um essem	
<i>F. P.</i>	factus, -a, -um erō		
	INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLES
<i>Pres.</i>	fieri		<i>Perf.</i> factus, -a, -um
<i>Perf.</i>	factus, -a, -um esse		<i>Ger.</i> faciendus, -a, -um
<i>Fut.</i>	[factum iri]		



CASTRAMUROFOSSAQUEMUNIUNTUR

## APPENDIX II

### 501. RULES OF SYNTAX

NOTE. The rules of syntax are here classified and numbered consecutively. The number of the text section in which the rule appears is given at the end of each.

#### **Nominative Case**

1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative and answers the question Who? or What? § 36.

#### **Agreement**

2. A finite verb must always be in the same person and number as its subject. § 28.

3. A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb. § 76.

4. An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains. § 81.



5. Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. § 65.

6. A predicate adjective completing a complementary infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the main verb. § 215. *a*.

7. A relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in gender and number; but its case is determined by the way it is used in its own clause. § 224.

### **Prepositions**

8. A noun governed by a preposition must be in the accusative or ablative case. § 52.

### **Genitive Case**

9. The word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the genitive and answers the question Whose? § 38.

10. The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate, especially after the forms of **sum**, and is then called the *predicate genitive*. § 409.

11. Words denoting a part are often used with the genitive of the whole, known as *the partitive genitive*. § 331.

12. Numerical descriptions of measure are expressed by the genitive with a modifying adjective. § 443.

### **Dative Case**

13. The indirect object of a verb is in the dative. § 45.

14. The dative of the indirect object is used with the intransitive verbs **crēdō**, **faveō**, **noceō**, **pāreō**, **persuādeō**, **resistō**, **studeō**, and others of like meaning. § 154.

15. Some verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **con**, **dē**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, **super**, admit the dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative. § 426.

16. The dative is used with adjectives to denote the object toward which the given quality is directed. Such are, especially, those meaning *near*, also *fit*, *friendly*, *pleasing*, *like*, and their opposites. § 143.

17. The dative is used to denote the *purpose* or *end for which*; often with another dative denoting *the person or thing affected*. § 437.

### **Accusative Case**

18. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative and answers the question Whom? or What? § 37.

19. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. § 214.

20. The *place to which* is expressed by **ad** or **in** with the accusative. Before names of towns, small islands, **domus**, and **rūs** the preposition is omitted. §§ 263, 266.

21. *Duration of time* and *extent of space* are expressed by the accusative. § 336.

22. Verbs of *making*, *choosing*, *calling*, *showing*, and the like, may take a *predicate accusative* along with the direct object. With the passive voice the two accusatives become nominatives. § 392.

### **Ablative Case**

23. *Cause* is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question Because of what? § 102.

24. *Means* is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question By means of what? or With what? § 103.

25. *Accompaniment* is denoted by the ablative with **cum**. This answers the question With whom? § 104.

26. The ablative with **cum** is used to denote the manner of an action. **Cum** may be omitted, if an adjective is used with the ablative. This answers the question How? or In what manner? § 105.

27. With comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the *measure of difference*. § 317.

28. The ablative of a noun or pronoun with a present or perfect participle in agreement is used to express attendant circumstance. This is called the *ablative absolute*. § 381.

29. 1. Descriptions of physical characteristics are expressed by the ablative with a modifying adjective. § 444.

2. Descriptions involving neither numerical statements nor physical characteristics may be expressed by either the genitive or the ablative with a modifying adjective. § 445.

30. The ablative is used to denote *in what respect* something is true. § 398.

31. The *place from which* is expressed by **ā** or **ab**, **dē**, **ē** or **ex** with the separative ablative. This answers the question Whence? Before names of towns, small islands, **domus**, and **rūs** the preposition is omitted. §§ 264, 266.

32. Words expressing separation or deprivation require an ablative to complete their meaning. This is called the *ablative of separation*. § 180.

33. The word expressing the person from whom an action starts, when not the subject, is put in the ablative with the preposition **ā** or **ab**. This is called the *ablative of the personal agent*. § 181.

34. The comparative degree, if **quam** is omitted, is followed by the separative ablative. § 309.

35. The *time when or within which* anything happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. § 275.

36. 1. The *place at or in which* is expressed by the ablative with **in**. This answers the question Where? Before names of towns, small islands, and **rūs** the preposition is omitted. §§ 265, 266.

2. Names of towns and small islands, if singular and of the first or second declension, and the word **domus** express the *place in which* by the locative. § 268.

### Gerund and Gerundive

37. 1. The gerund is a verbal noun and is used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The constructions of these cases are in general the same as those of other nouns. § 406. 1.

2. The gerundive is a verbal adjective and must be used instead of gerund + object, excepting in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition. Even in these instances the gerundive construction is more usual. § 406. 2.

38. The accusative of the gerund or gerundive with **ad**, or the genitive with **causā**, is used to express purpose. § 407.

### Moods and Tenses of Verbs

39. Primary tenses are followed by primary tenses, and secondary by secondary. § 358.

40. The subjunctive is used in a dependent clause to express the *purpose* of the action in the principal clause. § 349.

41. A *substantive clause of purpose* with the subjunctive is used as object with verbs of *commanding, urging, asking, persuading, or advising*, where in English we should usually have the infinitive. § 366.

42. Verbs of *fearing* are followed by a substantive clause of purpose introduced by **ut** (*that not*) or **nē** (*that or lest*). § 372.

43. *Consecutive clauses of result* are introduced by **ut** or **ut nōn**, and have the verb in the subjunctive. § 385.

44. *Object clauses of result* with **ut** or **ut nōn** are found after verbs of effecting or bringing about. § 386.

45. A relative clause with the subjunctive is often used to describe an antecedent. This is called the *subjunctive of characteristic or description*. § 390.

46. The conjunction **cum** means *when, since, or although*. It is followed by the subjunctive unless it means *when* and its clause fixes the time at which the main action took place. § 396.

47. When a direct statement becomes indirect, the principal verb is changed to the infinitive, and its subject nominative becomes subject accusative of the infinitive. § 416.

48. The accusative-with-infinitive construction in indirect statements is found after verbs of *saying, telling, knowing, thinking, and perceiving*. § 419.

49. A present indicative of a direct statement becomes present infinitive of the indirect, a past indicative becomes perfect infinitive, and a future indicative becomes future infinitive. § 418.

50. In an *indirect question* the verb is in the subjunctive and its tense is determined by the law for tense sequence. § 432.



DOMINA

## APPENDIX III

### REVIEWS<sup>1</sup>

1. It is suggested that each of these reviews be assigned for a written test.

#### I. REVIEW OF VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR THROUGH LESSON VIII

##### Lesson IX

502. Give the English of the following words:<sup>1</sup>

##### NOUNS

agricola    **dea**    **gallina**    pugna

ancilla	domina	iniūria	<b>sagitta</b>
<b>aqua</b>	fābula	<b>īnsula</b>	<b>silva</b>
<b>casa</b>	<b>fera</b>	<b>lūna</b>	<b>terra</b>
<b>causa</b>	<b>filia</b>	<b>nauta</b>	<b>tuba</b>
cēna	<b>fortūna</b>	<b>pecūnia</b>	<b>via</b>
<b>corōna</b>	<b>fuga</b>	puella	<b>victōria</b>

ADJECTIVES

<b>alta</b>	<b>clāra</b>	<b>lāta</b>	<b>magna</b>	<b>nova</b>	<b>pulchra</b>
<b>bona</b>	<b>grāta</b>	<b>longa</b>	<b>mala</b>	<b>parva</b>	<b>sōla</b>

VERBS

amat	<b>est</b>	<b>labōrat</b>	nārrat	<b>nūntiat</b>	<b>portat</b>	<b>sunt</b>
<b>dat</b>	habitat	<b>laudat</b>	<b>necat</b>	<b>parat</b>	<b>pugnat</b>	<b>vocat</b>

PREPOSITIONS	PRONOUNS	ADVERBS	CONJUNCTIONS	INTERROGATIVE PARTICLE
<b>ā</b> or <b>ab</b>	<b>mea</b>	<b>cūr</b>	<b>et</b>	<b>-ne</b>
<b>ad</b>	<b>tua</b>	<b>deinde</b>	quia	
<b>cum</b>	<b>quis</b>	<b>nōn</b>	<b>quod</b>	
<b>dē</b>	<b>cuius</b>	<b>ubi</b>		
<b>ē</b> or <b>ex</b>	<b>cui</b>			
<b>in</b>	<b>quem</b>			
	<b>quid</b>			

1. Proper nouns and proper adjectives are not repeated in the reviews. Words used in Caesar's "Gallic War" are in heavy type.

**503. Give the Latin of the following words:** <sup>1</sup>

Underline the words you do not remember. Do not look up a single word till you have gone through the entire list. Then drill on the words you have underlined.

<i>flight</i>	<i>wide</i>	<i>goddess</i>	<i>what</i>
story	tells	<i>wild beast</i>	<i>way</i>
<i>new</i>	<i>money</i>	<i>praises</i> (verb)	<i>bad</i>
lives (verb)	<i>calls</i>	<i>alone</i>	loves
<i>away from</i>	<i>with</i>	<i>pleasing</i>	<i>pretty</i>
<i>who</i>	<i>your</i>	<i>prepares</i>	<i>water</i>
<i>why</i>	<i>then, in the</i>	<i>are</i>	<i>great</i>
<i>forest</i>	<i>next place</i>	<i>to</i>	<i>is</i>
<i>wreath</i>	<i>daughter</i>	<i>because</i>	<i>announces</i>
<i>deep, high</i>	<i>to whom</i>	<i>arrow</i>	<i>injury, wrong</i>
dinner	<i>fortune</i>	<i>my</i>	<i>where</i>
<i>famous</i>	<i>out from</i>	<i>kills</i>	<i>not</i>
<i>cottage</i>	<i>labors</i> (verb)	girl	<i>good</i>
<i>battle</i> (noun)	<i>gives</i>	<i>fight</i> (verb)	maid
<i>trumpet</i>	<i>small</i>	<i>carries</i>	<i>down from</i>
lady, mistress	<i>in</i>	<i>chicken</i>	<i>long</i>
<i>whom</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>victory</i>	<i>cause</i>
<i>island</i>	<i>sailor</i>	<i>land</i>	<i>whose</i>
	farmer		

1. The translations of words used in Cæsar are in italics.

**504. Review Questions.** How many syllables has a Latin word? How are words divided into syllables? What is the ultima? the penult? the antepenult? When is a syllable short? When is a syllable long? What is the law of Latin accent? Define the subject of a sentence; the predicate; the object; the copula. What is inflection? declension? conjugation? What is the ending of the verb in the third person singular, and what in the plural? What does the form of a noun show? Name the Latin cases. What case is used for the subject? the direct object? the possessor? What relation is expressed by the dative case? Give the rule for the indirect object. How are questions answered in Latin? What is a predicate adjective? an attributive adjective? What is meant by agreement? Give the rule for the agreement of the adjective. What are the three relations expressed by the ablative? What can you say of the position of the possessive pronoun? the modifying genitive? the adjective? What is the base? What is grammatical gender? What is the rule for gender in the first declension? What are the general principles of Latin word order?

**505.** Fill out the following summary of the first declension:

THE FIRST OR $\bar{A}$ -DECLENSION	1. Ending in the nominative singular	
	2. Rule for gender	
	3. Case terminations	a. Singular b. Plural
	4. Irregular nouns	

506. Give the English of the following words:

NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

<b>agrī cultūra</b>	<b>cōpia</b>	<b>fāma</b>	<b>galea</b>	<b>lacrima</b>	<b>patria</b>
<b>cōstantia</b>	<b>diligentia</b>	fēmina	<b>inopia</b>	<b>lōrica</b>	<b>praeda</b>

NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

<b>ager</b>	<b>cibus</b>	<b>frūmentum</b>	<b>oppidānus</b>	<b>scūtum</b>
<b>amicus</b>	<b>cōsiliūm</b>	<b>gladius</b>	<b>oppidum</b>	<b>servus</b>
<b>arma</b> (plural)	<b>domiciliūm</b>	<b>légātus</b>	<b>pīlum</b>	<b>studium</b>
<b>auxiliūm</b>	dominus	<b>liberī</b>	<b>populus</b>	<b>tēlum</b>
<b>bellum</b>	<b>equus</b>	magister	<b>praemium</b>	<b>vīcus</b>
<b>carrus</b>	<b>filius</b>	<b>mūrus</b>	<b>proelium</b>	<b>vir</b>
<b>castrum</b>	fluvius	<b>numerus</b>	<b>puer</b>	

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

<b>aeger, aegra, aegrum</b>	<b>neuter, neutra, neutrum</b>
<b>alius, alia, aliud</b>	<b>noster, nostra, nostrum</b>
<b>alter, altera, alterum</b>	<b>alter, altera, alterum</b>
<b>armātus, -a, -um</b>	<b>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum</b>
<b>crēber, crēbra, crēbrum</b>	<b>sōlus, -a, -um</b>
<b>dūrus, -a, -um</b>	<b>suus, -a, -um</b>
<b>finitimus, -a, -um</b>	<b>finitimus, -a, -um</b>
<b>īfirmus, -a, -um</b>	<b>tuus, -a, -um</b>
<b>legiōnārius, -a, -um</b>	<b>ūllus, -a, -um</b>
<b>liber, libera, liberum</b>	<b>ūnus, -a, -um</b>
<b>mātūrus, -a, -um</b>	<b>uter, utra, utrum</b>
<b>meus, -a, -um</b>	validus, -a, -um
<b>miser, misera, miserum</b>	<b>vester, vestra, vestrum</b>
<b>multus, -a, -um</b>	

VERBS	DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN	ADVERBS
arat	<b>is, ea, id</b>	<b>iam</b>
<b>cūrat</b>		quō
<b>dēsiderat</b>	CONJUNCTIONS	<b>saepe</b>
<b>mātūrat</b>	<b>an</b>	
<b>properat</b>	<b>-que</b>	PREPOSITION
	<b>sed</b>	<b>apud</b>

507. Give the Latin of the following words:

<i>sword</i>	<i>war</i>	<i>shield</i> (noun)	<i>plan</i> (noun)
<i>corselet</i>	<i>number</i>	<i>whole</i>	<i>people</i>
<i>man</i>	<i>my</i>	<i>it</i>	<i>beautiful</i>
<i>your</i> (plural)	<i>free</i> (adj.)	<i>aid</i> (noun)	<i>no</i> (adj.)
<i>hasten</i>	<i>children</i>	<i>legionary</i>	<i>our</i>
<i>but</i>	<i>wall</i>	<i>weak</i>	<i>battle</i>
<i>among</i>	<i>grain</i>	<i>arms</i>	<i>spear</i>
<i>tear</i> (noun)	<i>weapon</i>	master	<i>food</i>
<i>village</i>	<i>one</i>	(of school)	<i>steadiness</i>
strong	plow (verb)	<i>friend</i>	<i>fatherland</i>
<i>long for</i>	<i>this or that</i>	<i>neighboring</i>	<i>town</i>
<i>and</i> (enclitic)	<i>already</i>	<i>sick</i>	<i>fort</i>
<i>often</i>	<i>helmet</i>	<i>lieutenant</i>	<i>camp</i>
<i>want</i> (noun)	river	<i>field</i>	<i>neither</i> (of two)
<i>which</i> (of two)	<i>zeal</i>	<i>report, rumor</i>	<i>much</i>
<i>care for</i>	<i>any</i>	<i>abode</i>	<i>agriculture</i>
<i>or</i> (in a question)	<i>he</i>	<i>boy</i>	<i>other</i>
whither	<i>son</i>	<i>his own</i>	<i>the other</i> (of two)
<i>wagon</i>	<i>slave</i>	<i>alone</i>	<i>hard</i>
<i>townsman</i>	<i>your</i> (singular)	<i>prize</i> (noun)	<i>booty</i>
<i>wretched</i>	<i>she</i>	master (owner)	<i>frequent</i>
<i>ripe</i>	<i>woman</i>	<i>carefulness</i>	<i>armed</i>
	<i>horse</i>	<i>plenty</i>	
		<i>troops</i>	

508. Review Questions. How many declensions are there? What three things must be known about a noun before it can be declined? What three cases of neuter nouns are always alike, and in what do they end in the plural? What two plural cases are always alike? When is the vocative singular not like the nominative? What is a predicate noun? With what does it agree? What is an appositive? Give the rule for the agreement of an appositive. How can we tell whether a noun in -er is declined like **puer** or like **ager**? Decline **bonus, liber, pulcher**. How can we tell whether an

adjective in **-er** is declined like **liber** or like **pulcher**? Why must we say **nauta bonus** and not **nauta bona**? Name the Latin possessive pronouns. How are they declined? With what does the possessive pronoun agree? When do we use **tuus** and when **vester**? Why is **suus** called a *reflexive* possessive? What is the non-reflexive possessive of the third person? When are possessives omitted? What four uses of the ablative case are covered by the relations expressed in English by *with*? Give an illustration in Latin of the *ablative of manner*; of the *ablative of cause*; of the *ablative of means*; of the *ablative of accompaniment*. What ablative regularly has **cum**? What ablative sometimes has **cum**? What uses of the ablative never have **cum**? Name the nine pronominal adjectives, with their meanings. Decline **alius**, **nūllus**. Decline **is**. What does **is** mean as a demonstrative adjective or pronoun? What other important use has it?

509. Fill out the following summary of the second declension:

THE SECOND OR O-DECLENSION	1. Endings in the nominative	
	2. Rule for gender	
	3. Case terminations of nouns in <b>-us</b>	a. Singular b. Plural
	a. The vocative singular of nouns in <b>-us</b>	
	4. Case terminations of nouns in <b>-um</b>	a. Singular b. Plural
	5. Peculiarities of nouns in <b>-er</b> and <b>-ir</b>	
	6. Peculiarities of nouns in <b>-ius</b> and <b>-ium</b>	

Go on to Lesson XVIII

### III. REVIEW OF LESSONS XVIII-XXVI

#### Lesson XXVII

510. Give the English of the following words:

#### NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

**disciplina poena rēgīna tristitia**  
**fōrma potentia superbia**

#### NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

**lūdus ōrnāmentum sacrum socius verbum**

#### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

**amicus grātus interfectus molestus septem**  
**antiquus idōneus irātus perpetuus superbus**  
**finitimus inimicus laetus proximus**

#### ADVERBS

**hodiē** **mox**  
**ibi** **nunc**  
**maximē** **nūper**

#### CONJUNCTIONS

**etiam**  
**nōn solum ... sed etiam**

#### PERSONAL PRONOUN

**ego**

#### VERBS

CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III	CONJ. IV
volō, -āre	<b>dēleō, -ēre</b> <b>doceō, -ēre</b> <b>faveō, -ēre</b> <b>habeō, -ēre</b> <b>iubeō, -ēre</b> <b>moneō, -ēre</b> <b>moveō, -ēre</b> <b>noceō, -ēre</b> <b>pāreō, -ēre</b> <b>persuādeō, -ēre</b> sedeō, -ēre <b>studeō, -ēre</b> <b>videō, -ēre</b>	<b>agō, -ere</b> <b>capiō, -ere</b> <b>crēdō, -ere</b> <b>dicō, -ere</b> <b>dūcō, -ere</b> <b>faciō, -ere</b> <b>fugiō, -ere</b> <b>iaciō, -ere</b> <b>mittō, -ere</b> rapiō, -ere <b>regō, -ere</b> <b>resistō, -ere</b>	<b>audiō, -ire</b> <b>mūniō, -ire</b> <b>reperiō, -ire</b> <b>veniō, -ire</b>
IRREGULAR VERB			
<b>sum, esse</b>			

511. Give the Latin of the following words. In the case of verbs always give the first form and the present infinitive.

<i>ancient</i>	<i>not only ...</i>	<i>nearest</i>	<i>move</i>	<i>training</i>
<i>come</i>	<i>but also</i>	<i>sacred rite</i>	<i>soon</i>	<i>take</i>
<i>resist</i>	<i>seven</i>	<i>queen</i>	<i>glad</i>	<i>have</i>
<i>see</i>	<i>ally, companion</i>	<i>flee</i>	<i>punishment</i>	<i>to-day</i>
<i>be</i>	<i>pride</i>	<i>obey</i>	<i>believe</i>	<i>unfriendly</i>
<i>fly</i>	<i>fortify</i>	<i>lately</i>	<i>advise</i>	<i>drive</i>
<i>I</i>	<i>send</i>	<i>constant</i>	<i>especially,</i>	<i>favor (verb)</i>
<i>proud</i>	<i>sit</i>	<i>ornament</i>	<i>most of all</i>	<i>suitable</i>

<i>word</i>	<i>also</i>	<i>power</i>	<i>angry</i>	<i>pleasing</i>
<i>sadness</i>	<i>school</i>	<i>make, do</i>	<i>beauty</i>	<i>teach</i>
<i>find</i>	<i>hear</i>	<i>injure</i>	<i>say</i>	<i>neighboring</i>
<i>rule (verb)</i>	<i>hurl</i>	<i>now</i>	<i>command (verb)</i>	<i>destroy</i>
<i>be eager for</i>	<i>persuade</i>	<i>annoying</i>	<i>there</i>	<i>friendly</i>
	<i>only</i>	<i>lead</i>	<i>slain</i>	<i>seize</i>

**512. Review Questions.** What is conjugation? Name two important differences between conjugation in Latin and in English. What is tense? What is mood? What are the Latin moods? When do we use the indicative mood? Name the six tenses of the indicative. What are personal endings? Name those you have had. Inflect **sum** in the three tenses you have learned. How many regular conjugations are there? How are they distinguished? How is the present stem found? What tenses are formed from the present stem? What is the tense sign of the imperfect? What is the meaning of the imperfect? What is the tense sign of the future in the first two conjugations? in the last two? Before what letters is a final long vowel of the stem shortened? What are the three possible translations of a present, as of **pugnō**? Inflect **arō**, **sedeō**, **mittō**, **faciō**, and **veniō**, in the present, imperfect, and future active. What forms of **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation are like **audiō**? what like **regō**? Give the rule for the dative with adjectives. Name the special intransitive verbs that govern the dative. What does the imperative mood express? How is the present active imperative formed in the singular? in the plural? What three verbs have a shortened present active imperative? Give the present active imperative of **portō**, **dēleō**, **agō**, **faciō**, **mūniō**.

Go on to Lesson XXVII

#### IV. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXVII-XXXVI

##### Lesson XXXVII

**513. Give the English of the following words:**

##### NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

**āla cūra mora porta prōvincia vīta**

##### NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

**animus    bracchium    locus    nāvīgium    perīculum    vīnum**  
aurum    **deus**    mōnstrum    ōrāculum    **ventus**

##### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

**adversus    commōtus    dubius    plēnus**  
attentus    **dēfessus**    **maximus**    saevus  
**cārus    dexter    perfidus    sinister**

##### ADVERBS

**anteā    diū    ita    subitō**  
**celeriter    frūstrā    longē    tamen**  
**dēnique    graviter    semper    tum**

##### CONJUNCTIONS

**autem sī ubi**

##### PREPOSITIONS

**dē per prō sine**

##### VERBS

	CONJ. I		CONJ. II
<b>adpropinquō</b>	<b>recūsō</b>	<b>superō</b>	<b>contineō</b>
<b>nāvīgō</b>	<b>reportō</b>	<b>temptō</b>	<b>egeō</b>
<b>occupō</b>	<b>servō</b>	<b>vāstō</b>	<b>prohibeō</b>
<b>postulō</b>	<b>stō</b>	<b>vulnerō</b>	<b>respondeō</b>
			<b>teneō</b>
	CONJ. III		IRREGULAR VERB
<b>discēdō</b>	<b>gerō</b>	<b>interficiō</b>	<b>absum</b>

**514. Translate the following words.** Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs.

<i>be away</i>	<i>moreover</i>	<i>boat, ship</i>	<i>without</i>	<i>before,</i>
<i>wind</i>	<i>greatest</i>	<i>sail (verb)</i>	<i>hold</i>	<i>previously</i>
<i>through</i>	<i>oracle</i>	<i>life</i>	<i>suddenly</i>	<i>depart,</i>
<i>if</i>	<i>danger</i>	<i>save</i>	<i>dear</i>	<i>go away</i>
<i>savage</i>	<i>lay waste</i>	<i>full</i>	<i>always</i>	<i>province</i>
<i>wound (verb)</i>	<i>gate</i>	<i>refuse</i>	<i>god</i>	<i>care, trouble</i>
<i>wine</i>	<i>doubtful</i>	<i>heavily</i>	<i>hold in, keep</i>	<i>kill</i>
<i>delay</i>	<i>opposite,</i>	<i>monster</i>	<i>afar</i>	<i>reply (verb)</i>
<i>faithless</i>	<i>adverse</i>	<i>approach</i>	<i>thus, so,</i>	<i>wing</i>

right  
seize  
quickly  
before, in behalf of  
battle  
down from or  
concerning

demand  
finally  
attentive  
then, at that  
time  
weary  
overcome,  
conquer

nevertheless  
place  
be without,  
lack  
moved  
gold  
restrain, keep  
from

as follows  
arm (noun)  
when  
in vain  
stand  
bring back,  
win

mind, heart  
left (adj.)  
bear, carry  
on  
try  
for a long  
time

515. Give the principal parts and meaning of the following verbs:

<b>sum</b>	<b>moveō</b>	<b>moneō</b>	<b>pāreō</b>	<b>veniō</b>
<b>dō</b>	<b>crēdō</b>	<b>capiō</b>	<b>dūcō</b>	<b>iaciō</b>
<b>teneō</b>	<b>rapiō</b>	<b>doceō</b>	<b>faciō</b>	<b>videō</b>
<b>iubeō</b>	<b>reperiō</b>	<b>regō</b>	<b>persuādeō</b>	<b>absum</b>
<b>agō</b>	<b>dēleō</b>	<b>faveō</b>	<b>sedeō</b>	<b>egeō</b>
<b>mittō</b>	<b>resistō</b>	<b>noceō</b>	<b>studeō</b>	<b>gerō</b>
<b>mūniō</b>	<b>audiō</b>	<b>dicō</b>	<b>fugiō</b>	<b>stō</b>

516. **Review Questions.** What are the personal endings in the passive voice? What is the letter -r sometimes called? What are the distinguishing vowels of the four conjugations? What forms constitute the principal parts? What are the three different conjugation stems? How may they be found? What are the tenses of the indicative? of the infinitive? What tense of the imperative have you learned? What forms are built on the present stem? on the perfect stem? on the participial stem? What are the endings of the perfect active indicative? What is the tense sign of the pluperfect active? of the future perfect active? How is the present active infinitive formed? the present passive infinitive? How is the present active imperative formed? the present passive imperative? How is the perfect active infinitive formed? the perfect passive infinitive? How is the future active infinitive formed? What is a participle? How are participles in -us declined? Give the rule for the agreement of the participle. How are the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive indicative formed? Conjugate the verb **sum** in all moods and tenses as far as you have learned it (§ 494). What is meant by the separative ablative? How is the place *from which* expressed in Latin? Give the rule for the ablative of separation; for the ablative of the personal agent. How can we distinguish between the ablative of means and the ablative of the personal agent? What is the perfect definite? the perfect indefinite? What is the difference in meaning between the perfect indefinite and the imperfect? What two cases in Latin may be governed by a preposition? Name the prepositions that govern the ablative. What does the preposition **in** mean when it governs the ablative? the accusative? What are the three interrogatives used to introduce *yes-and-no* questions? Explain the force of each. What words are sometimes used for *yes* and *no*? What are the different meanings and uses of **ubi**?

[Go on to Lesson XXXVII](#)

## V. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXXVII-XLIV

### Lesson XLV

517. Give the English of the following words:

#### NOUNS

##### FIRST DECLENSION

**rīpa**

##### SECOND DECLENSION

**barbarī** **castellum**  
**captivus** **impedimentum**

##### THIRD DECLENSION

<b>animal</b>	<b>collis</b>	<b>homō</b>	<b>legiō</b>	<b>ōrdō</b>	<b>soror</b>
<b>arbor</b>	<b>cōnsul</b>	<b>hostis</b>	<b>mare</b>	<b>pater</b>	<b>tempus</b>
<b>avis</b>	<b>dēns</b>	<b>ignis</b>	<b>māter</b>	<b>pedes</b>	<b>terror</b>
<b>caedēs</b>	<b>dux</b>	<b>imperātor</b>	<b>mēnsis</b>	<b>pēs</b>	<b>turris</b>
<b>calamitās</b>	<b>eques</b>	<b>insigne</b>	<b>mīles</b>	<b>pōns</b>	<b>urbs</b>
<b>calcar</b>	<b>finis</b>	<b>iter</b>	<b>mōns</b>	<b>prīnceps</b>	<b>victor</b>
<b>caput</b>	<b>flūmen</b>	<b>iūdex</b>	<b>nāvis</b>	<b>rēx</b>	<b>virtūs</b>
<b>cīvis</b>	<b>fōns</b>	<b>labor</b>	<b>opus</b>	<b>salūs</b>	<b>vīs</b>
<b>cliēns</b>	<b>frāter</b>	<b>lapis</b>	<b>ōrātor</b>	<b>sanguis</b>	

#### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

**barbarus** **dexter** **sinister** **summus**

#### PREPOSITIONS

**in** with the abl.  
**in** with the acc.  
**trāns**

#### ADVERBS

**cotīdiē**  
**numquam**

#### CONJUNCTIONS

**nec, neque**  
**nec ... nec, or neque ... neque**

#### VERBS

##### CONJ. I

**cessō** **oppugnō**

##### CONJ. III

**accipiō** **petō** **vincō**

**confirmō vetō**

**incipiō ponō vivō**

**518. Translate the following words.** Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs:

<i>forbid</i>	<i>man-of-war</i>	<i>conquer</i>	<i>redoubt, fort</i>
<i>rank, row</i>	<i>judge</i>	<i>consul</i>	<i>sea</i>
<i>brother</i>	<i>defeat, disaster</i>	<i>mother</i>	<i>tower</i>
<i>force</i>	<i>fire</i>	<i>retainer</i>	<i>drill (verb)</i>
<i>across</i>	<i>tree</i>	<i>citizen</i>	<i>legion</i>
<i>savages</i>	<i>foot soldier</i>	<i>head</i>	<i>terror</i>
<i>horseman</i>	<i>receive</i>	<i>safety</i>	<i>into, to</i>
<i>never</i>	<i>general</i>	<i>assail, storm</i>	<i>right (adj.)</i>
<i>mountain</i>	<i>highest</i>	<i>begin</i>	<i>in</i>
<i>manliness,</i>	<i>fountain</i>	<i>march</i>	<i>stone</i>
<i>courage</i>	<i>orator</i>	<i>decoration</i>	<i>blood</i>
<i>leader</i>	<i>neither ... nor</i>	<i>bridge</i>	<i>labor (noun)</i>
<i>put, place</i>	<i>and not</i>	<i>bird</i>	<i>king</i>
<i>time</i>	<i>left</i>	<i>cease</i>	<i>spur</i>
<i>savage,</i>	<i>tooth</i>	<i>man</i>	<i>chief</i>
<i>barbarous</i>	<i>soldier</i>	<i>river</i>	<i>slaughter</i>
<i>sister</i>	<i>month</i>	<i>work (noun)</i>	<i>strengthen</i>
<i>seek</i>	<i>city</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>foot</i>
<i>captive</i>	<i>victor</i>	<i>ship</i>	<i>enemy</i>
<i>hindrance,</i>	<i>daily</i>	<i>bank</i>	<i>animal</i>
<i>baggage</i>	<i>live (verb)</i>		<i>father</i>

**519. Review Questions.** Give the conjugation of **possum**. What is an infinitive? What three uses has the Latin infinitive that are like the English? What is the case of the subject of the infinitive? What is meant by a complementary infinitive? In the sentence *The bad boy cannot be happy*, what is the case of *happy*? Give the rule. Decline **quī**. Give the rule for the agreement of the relative. What are the two uses of the interrogative? Decline **quis**. What is the base of a noun? How is the stem formed from the base? Are the stem and the base ever the same? How many declensions of nouns are there? Name them. What are the two chief divisions of the third declension? How are the consonant stems classified? Explain the formation of **lapis** from the stem **lapid-**, **mīles** from **milit-**, **rēx** from **rēg-**. What nouns have **i**-stems? What peculiarities of form do **i**-stems have,—masc., fem., and neut.? Name the five nouns that have **-ī** and **-e** in the abl. Decline **turris**. Give the rules for gender in the third declension. Decline **mīles**, **lapis**, **rēx**, **virtūs**, **cōsul**, **legiō**, **homō**, **pater**, **flūmen**, **opus**, **tempus**, **caput**, **caedēs**, **urbs**, **hostis**, **mare**, **animal**, **vīs**, **iter**.

**520.** Fill out the following scheme:

THE THIRD DECLENSION	GENDER ENDINGS	Masculine	
		Feminine	
		Neuter	
	CASE TERMINATIONS	I. CONSONANT STEMS	a. Masc. and fem.
		b. Neuters	
II. <i>I</i> -STEMS		a. Masc. and fem.	
		b. Neuters	
		IRREGULAR NOUNS	

[Go on to Lesson XLV](#)

## VI. REVIEW OF LESSONS XLV-LII

### Lesson LIII

**521. Give the English of the following words:**

NOUNS			
FIRST DECLENSION		SECOND DECLENSION	
<b>amīcitiā</b>	<b>annus</b>	<b>rēgnum</b>	<b>tergum,</b>
<b>hōra</b>	<b>modus</b>	<b>signum</b>	<b>tergum vertere</b>
<b>littera</b>	<b>nūntius</b>	<b>supplicium,</b>	<b>vestigium</b>
	<b>oculus</b>	<b>supplicium dare</b>	
		<b>supplicium sūmere dē</b>	
THIRD DECLENSION		FOURTH DECLENSION	
<b>aestās</b>	<b>nox</b>	<b>adventus</b>	<b>impetus</b>
<b>corpus</b>	<b>pars</b>	<b>cornū</b>	<b>lacus</b>
<b>hiems</b>	<b>pāx</b>	<b>domus</b>	<b>manus</b>
<b>libertās</b>	<b>rūs</b>	<b>equitātus</b>	<b>metus</b>
<b>lūx,</b>	<b>sōl</b>	<b>exercitus</b>	<b>portus</b>
<b>prīma lūx</b>	<b>vōx</b>	<b>fluctus</b>	
<b>nōmen</b>	<b>vulnus</b>		
FIFTH DECLENSION		INDECLINABLE NOUN	



<b>aciēs</b>	<b>rēs,</b>	<b>spēs</b>	<b>nihil</b>
<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs gestae</b>		
<b>fidēs,</b>	<b>rēs adversae</b>		
<b>in fidem venire</b>	<b>rēs pūblica</b>		
	<b>rēs secundae</b>		

ADJECTIVES

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

THIRD DECLENSION

<b>dēnsus</b>	<b>prīstinus</b>	<b>ācer, ācris, ācre</b>	<b>gravis, grave</b>
<b>invīsus</b>	<b>pūblicus</b>	<b>brevis, breve</b>	<b>incolumis, incolume</b>
<b>mīrus</b>	<b>secundus</b>	<b>difficilis, difficile</b>	<b>omnis, omne</b>
<b>paucī</b>	<b>tantus</b>	<b>facīlis, facile</b>	<b>pār, pār</b>
<b>prīmus</b>	<b>vērus</b>	<b>fortis, forte</b>	<b>vēlōx, vēlōx</b>

PRONOUNS

PERSONAL	DEMONSTRATIVE	INTENSIVE	INDEFINITE
<b>ego</b>	<b>hic</b>	<b>ipse</b>	<b>aliquis, aliquī</b>
<b>nōs</b>	<b>īdem</b>		<b>quīdam</b>
<b>suī</b>	<b>ille</b>		<b>quis, quī</b>
<b>tū</b>	<b>iste</b>		<b>quisquam</b>
<b>vōs</b>			<b>quisque</b>

ADVERBS

CONJUNCTIONS

PREPOSITIONS

<b>nē ... quidem</b>	<b>paene</b>	<b>satis</b>	<b>itaque</b>	<b>ante</b>
<b>ōlim</b>	<b>quoque</b>	<b>vērō</b>	<b>nisi</b>	<b>post</b>
				<b>propter</b>

VERBS

CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III	CONJ. IV
<b>conlocō</b>	<b>dēbeō</b>	<b>committō,</b>	<b>dēsiliō</b>
<b>convocō</b>	<b>exerceō</b>	<b>committere proelium</b>	
<b>cremō</b>	<b>maneō</b>	<b>dēcidō</b>	
<b>dēmōnstrō</b>	<b>placeō</b>	<b>ēripiō</b>	
<b>mandō</b>	<b>sustineō</b>	<b>sūmō,</b>	
		<b>sūmere supplicium dē</b>	
		<b>trādūcō</b>	
		<b>vertō</b>	

**522. Translate the following words.** Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs.

<i>if not, unless</i>	<i>adversity</i>	<i>burn</i>	<i>peace</i>
<i>on account of</i>	<i>former, old-time</i>	<i>that (of yours)</i>	<i>back</i>
<i>unharméd</i>	<i>all, every</i>	<i>before</i>	<i>turn the back, retreat</i>
<i>public</i>	<i>any one (at all)</i>	<i>you (plur.)</i>	<i>night</i>
<i>commonwealth</i>	<i>this (of mine)</i>	<i>light</i>	<i>hand, force</i>
<i>leap down, dismount</i>	<i>heavy, serious</i>	<i>daybreak</i>	<i>lake</i>
<i>lead across</i>	<i>hateful, detested</i>	<i>winter</i>	<i>day</i>
<i>remain</i>	<i>true</i>	<i>attack</i>	<i>commit, intrust</i>
<i>call together</i>	<i>burn</i>	<i>line of battle</i>	<i>a few only</i>
<i>friendship</i>	<i>snatch from</i>	<i>army</i>	<i>sharp, eager</i>
<i>footprint, trace</i>	<i>letter</i>	<i>drill, train</i>	<i>we</i>
<i>each</i>	<i>punishment</i>	<i>join battle</i>	<i>turn</i>
<i>fear (noun)</i>	<i>inflict</i>	<i>house, home</i>	<i>you (sing.)</i>
<i>hope</i>	<i>punishment on</i>	<i>midday</i>	<i>I</i>
<i>therefore</i>	<i>suffer punishment</i>	<i>wonderful</i>	<i>signal</i>
<i>behind, after</i>	<i>liberty</i>	<i>brave</i>	<i>summer</i>
<i>so great</i>	<i>sun</i>	<i>almost</i>	<i>cavalry</i>
<i>equal</i>	<i>sustain</i>	<i>the same</i>	<i>wound</i>
<i>in truth, indeed</i>	<i>take up, assume</i>	<i>some, any</i>	<i>horn, wing</i>
<i>that (yonder)</i>	<i>hour</i>	<i>if any one</i>	<i>country</i>
<i>a certain</i>	<i>reign, realm</i>	<i>self, very</i>	<i>second, favorable</i>
<i>fall down</i>	<i>messenger</i>	<i>not even</i>	<i>short</i>
<i>owe, ought</i>	<i>part, direction</i>	<i>easy</i>	<i>voice</i>
<i>measure, mode</i>	<i>body</i>	<i>dense</i>	<i>formerly, once</i>
<i>eye</i>	<i>harbor</i>	<i>point out, explain</i>	<i>arrival</i>
<i>name</i>	<i>faith, protection</i>	<i>difficult</i>	<i>come under the</i>
<i>wave, billow</i>	<i>of himself</i>	<i>first</i>	<i>protection of</i>
<i>thing, matter</i>	<i>also, too</i>	<i>arrange, station</i>	<i>swift</i>
<i>exploits</i>	<i>sufficiently</i>	<i>please</i>	<i>nothing</i>
<i>republic</i>		<i>year</i>	
<i>prosperity</i>			

**523. Review Questions.** By what declensions are Latin adjectives declined? What can you say about the stem of adjectives of the third declension? Into what classes are these adjectives

divided? How can you tell to which of the classes an adjective belongs? Decline **ācer, omnis, pār**. What are the nominative endings and genders of nouns of the fourth or **u**-declension? What nouns are feminine by exception? Decline **adventus, lacus, cornū, domus**. Give the rules for the ordinary expression of the *place to which*, the *place from which*, the *place in which*. What special rules apply to names of towns, small islands, and **rūs**? What is the locative case? What words have a locative case? What is the form of the locative case? Translate *Galba lives at home, Galba lives at Rome, Galba lives at Pompeii*. What is the rule for gender in the fifth or **ē**-declension? Decline **diēs, rēs**. When is the long **ē** shortened? What can you say about the plural of the fifth declension? Decline **tuba, servus, pilum, ager, puer, miles, cōsul, flūmen, caedēs, animal**. How is the *time when* expressed? Name the classes of pronouns and define each class. Decline **ego, tū, is**. What are the reflexives of the first and second persons? What is the reflexive of the third person? Decline it. Translate *I see myself, he sees himself, he sees him*. Decline **ipse**. How is **ipse** used? Decline **idem**. Decline **hic, iste, ille**. Explain the use of these words. Name and translate the commoner indefinite pronouns. Decline **aliquis, quisquam, quīdam, quisque**.

[Go on to Lesson LIII](#)

## VII. REVIEW OF LESSONS LIII-LX

### Lesson LXI

524. Give the English of the following words:

#### NOUNS

##### FIRST DECLENSION

**aquila**  
**fossa**

##### SECOND DECLENSION

**aedificium imperium spatium**  
**captivus negōtium vāllum**  
**concilium**

##### THIRD DECLENSION

<b>agmen</b>	<b>gēns</b>	<b>mors</b>	<b>regiō</b>
<b>celeritās</b>	<b>lātitudō</b>	<b>mulier</b>	<b>rūmor</b>
<b>cīvitās</b>	<b>longitudō</b>	<b>multitudō</b>	<b>scelus</b>
<b>clāmor</b>	<b>magnitudō</b>	<b>mūnitio</b>	<b>servitūs</b>
<b>cohors</b>	<b>mēns</b>	<b>nēmō</b>	<b>timor</b>
<b>difficultās</b>	<b>mercātor</b>	<b>obses</b>	<b>vallēs</b>
<b>explōrātor</b>	<b>mille</b>	<b>opiniō</b>	

##### FOURTH DECLENSION

**aditus**  
**commeātus**

##### FIFTH DECLENSION

**rēs frūmentāria**

#### ADJECTIVES

##### FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

<b>aequus</b>	<b>maximus</b>	<b>plūrimus</b>	<b>singuli</b>
<b>binī</b>	<b>medius</b>	<b>posterus</b>	<b>superus</b>
<b>ducentī</b>	<b>minimus</b>	<b>primus</b>	<b>tardus</b>
<b>duo</b>	<b>opportūnus</b>	reliquus	<b>ternī</b>
<b>exterus</b>	<b>optimus</b>	<b>secundus</b>	<b>ūnus</b>
<b>īferus</b>	<b>pessimus</b>		

##### THIRD DECLENSION

<b>alacer, alacris, alacre</b>	<b>humilis, humile</b>	<b>peior, peius</b>
<b>audāx, audāx</b>	<b>ingēns, ingēns</b>	—, <b>plūs</b>
<b>celer, celeris, celere</b>	<b>interior, interius</b>	<b>prior, prius</b>
<b>citerior, citerius</b>	<b>lēnis, lēne</b>	<b>recēns, recēns</b>
<b>difficilis, difficile</b>	<b>maior, maius</b>	<b>similis, simile</b>
<b>dissimilis, dissimile</b>	<b>melior, melius</b>	<b>trēs, tria</b>
<b>facilis, facile</b>	<b>minor, minus</b>	<b>ulterior, ulterius</b>
<b>gracilis, gracile</b>	<b>nōbilis, nōbile</b>	

#### ADVERBS

<b>ācriter</b>	<b>magis</b>	<b>optimē</b>	<b>proximē</b>
<b>audācter</b>	<b>magnopere</b>	<b>parum</b>	<b>quam</b>
<b>bene</b>	<b>maximē</b>	<b>paulō</b>	<b>statim</b>
<b>facile</b>	<b>melius</b>	<b>plūrimum</b>	<b>tam</b>
<b>ferē</b>	<b>minimē</b>	<b>prope</b>	<b>undique</b>
<b>fortiter</b>	<b>multum</b>	<b>propius</b>	

#### CONJUNCTIONS

<b>atque, ac</b>	<b>quā dē causā</b>
<b>aut</b>	<b>quam ob rem</b>
<b>aut ... aut</b>	<b>simul atque or</b>
<b>et ... et</b>	<b>simul ac</b>

#### PREPOSITIONS

<b>circum</b>
<b>contrā</b>
<b>inter</b>
<b>ob</b>

nam

trāns

VERBS

CONJ. I

cōnor  
hortormoror  
vexō

CONJ. II

obtimeō  
perterreōvaleō  
vereor

CONJ. III

abdō	dēdō	patior	revertor
cadō	dēfendō	premō	sequor
cognōscō	ēgredior	proficiscor	statuō
cōnsequor	incendō	prōgredior	subsequor
contendō	incolō	quaerō	suscipiō
cupiō	insequor	recipiō	tradō
currō	occidō	relinquō	trahō

CONJ. III

orior      perveniō

**525. Translate the following words.** Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs:

<i>on account of</i>	<i>width</i>	<i>fear (verb)</i>	<i>leave</i>
<i>nearly</i>	<i>scout</i>	<i>worse</i>	<i>abandon</i>
<i>keenly, sharply</i>	<i>cohort</i>	<i>greater, larger</i>	<i>be strong</i>
<i>thousand</i>	<i>tribe, nation</i>	<i>two by two</i>	<i>receive, recover</i>
<i>two</i>	<i>business</i>	<i>least (adv.)</i>	<i>terrify, frighten</i>
<i>opportune</i>	<i>by a little</i>	<i>opinion,</i>	<i>dwel</i>
<i>remaining</i>	<i>somewhat</i>	<i>expectation</i>	<i>state, citizenship</i>
<i>above (adj.)</i>	<i>crime</i>	<i>approach, entrance</i>	<i>valley</i>
<i>next</i>	<i>difficult</i>	<i>trader</i>	<i>slavery</i>
<i>grain supply</i>	<i>equal</i>	<i>magnitude, size</i>	<i>greatly</i>
<i>pace</i>	<i>move forward,</i>	<i>council, assembly</i>	<i>best of all (adv.)</i>
<i>shout (noun)</i>	<i>advance</i>	<i>space, room</i>	<i>better (adv.)</i>
<i>from all sides</i>	<i>multitude</i>	<i>either ... or</i>	<i>well (adv.)</i>
<i>against</i>	<i>woman</i>	<i>rise, arise</i>	<i>very much</i>
<i>around</i>	<i>desire (verb)</i>	<i>suffer, allow</i>	<i>much</i>
<i>three</i>	<i>give over,</i>	<i>press hard</i>	<i>unlike</i>
<i>further</i>	<i>surrender</i>	<i>fall</i>	<i>like (adj.)</i>
<i>line of march</i>	<i>kill</i>	<i>surrender</i>	<i>slow</i>
<i>manor</i>	<i>overtake</i>	<i>set fire to</i>	<i>very greatly,</i>
<i>region</i>	<i>hasten, strive</i>	<i>defend</i>	<i>exceedingly</i>
<i>fortification</i>	<i>hide</i>	<i>possess, hold</i>	<i>building</i>
<i>eagle</i>	<i>one</i>	<i>delay (verb)</i>	<i>mind (noun)</i>
<i>almost</i>	<i>first</i>	<i>nearest (adv.)</i>	<i>easily</i>
<i>boldly</i>	<i>second, favorable</i>	<i>nearer (adv.)</i>	<i>easy</i>
<i>bravely</i>	<i>two hundred</i>	<i>better (adj.)</i>	<i>recent</i>
<i>across</i>	<i>former</i>	<i>well known, noble</i>	<i>huge, great</i>
<i>between, among</i>	<i>inner</i>	<i>mild, gentle</i>	<i>bold</i>
<i>hither (adj.)</i>	<i>middle</i>	<i>swift</i>	<i>immediately</i>
<i>so</i>	<i>low</i>	<i>eager</i>	<i>as soon as</i>
<i>less</i>	<i>outward</i>	<i>low (adj.)</i>	<i>for</i>
<i>more</i>	<i>three by three</i>	<i>slender</i>	<i>than</i>
<i>most</i>	<i>provisions</i>	<i>one by one</i>	<i>best (adj.)</i>
<i>worst</i>	<i>speed</i>	<i>no one</i>	<i>greatest</i>
<i>difficulty</i>	<i>ditch</i>	<i>least (adv.)</i>	<i>follow close</i>
<i>hostage</i>	<i>wherefore or</i>	<i>little (adv.)</i>	<i>encourage</i>
<i>death</i>	<i>therefore</i>	<i>learn, know</i>	<i>annoy, ravage</i>
<i>command, power</i>	<i>for this reason</i>	<i>drag</i>	<i>hide</i>
<i>captive</i>	<i>fear (noun)</i>	<i>undertake</i>	<i>follow</i>
<i>or</i>	<i>return</i>	<i>run</i>	<i>pursue</i>
<i>and</i>	<i>inquire</i>	<i>fix, decide</i>	<i>both ... and</i>
<i>arrive</i>	<i>set out</i>		<i>rampart</i>
<i>attempt, try</i>	<i>move out, disembark</i>		
<i>length</i>			

**526. Review Questions.** What is meant by comparison? In what two ways may adjectives be compared? Compare **clārus**, **brevis**, **vēlōx**, and explain the formation of the comparative and the superlative. What are the adverbs used in comparison? Compare **brevis** by adverbs. Decline the comparative of **vēlōx**. How are adjectives in **-er** compared? Compare **ācer**, **pulcher**, **liber**. What are possible translations for the comparative and superlative? Name the six adjectives that form the superlative in **-limus**. Translate in two ways *Nothing is brighter than the sun*. Give the rule for the ablative with comparatives. Compare **bonus**, **magnus**, **malus**, **multus**, **parvus**, **exterus**, **inferus**, **posterus**, **superus**. Decline **plūs**. Compare **citerior**, **interior**, **propior**, **ulterior**. Translate *That route to Italy is much shorter*. Give the rule for the expression of measure of difference. Name five words that are especially common in this construction. How are adverbs

usually formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions? from adjectives of the third declension? Compare the adverbs **cārē**, **liberē**, **fortiter**, **audācter**. What cases of adjectives are sometimes used as adverbs? What are the adverbs from **facilis**? **multus**? **prīmus**? **plūrimus**? **bonus**? **magnus**? **parvus**? Compare **prope**, **saepe**, **magnopere**. How are numerals classified? Give the first twenty cardinals. Decline **ūnus**, **duo**, **trēs**, **mille**. How are the hundreds declined? What is meant by the partitive genitive? Give the rule for the partitive genitive. What sort of words are commonly used with this construction? What construction is used with **quīdam** and cardinal numbers excepting **mille**? Give the first twenty ordinals. How are they declined? How are the distributives declined? Give the rule for the expression of duration of time and extent of space. What is the difference between the ablative of time and the accusative of time? What is a deponent verb? Give the synopsis of one. What form always has a passive meaning? Conjugate **amō**, **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, **audiō**, in the active and passive.

[Go on to Lesson LXI](#)

## VIII. REVIEW OF LESSONS LXI-LXIX

### Lesson LXX

527. Review the vocabularies of the first seventeen lessons. See §§ 502, 503, 506, 507.

528. **Review Questions.** Name the tenses of the subjunctive. What time is denoted by these tenses? What are the mood signs of the present subjunctive? How may the imperfect subjunctive be formed? How do the perfect subjunctive and the future perfect indicative active differ in form? How is the pluperfect subjunctive active formed? Inflect the subjunctive active and passive of **cūrō**, **dēleō**, **vincō**, **rapiō**, **mūniō**. Inflect the subjunctive tenses of **sum**; of **possum**. What are the tenses of the participles in the active? What in the passive? Give the active and passive participles of **amō**, **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, **audiō**. Decline **regēns**. What participles do deponent verbs have? What is the difference in meaning between the perfect participle of a deponent verb and of one not deponent? Give the participles of **vereor**. How should participles usually be translated? Conjugate **volō**, **nolō**, **mālō**, **fiō**.

What is the difference between the indicative and subjunctive in their fundamental ideas? How is purpose usually expressed in English? How is it expressed in Latin? By what words is a Latin purpose clause introduced? When should **quō** be used? What is meant by sequence of tenses? Name the primary tenses of the indicative and of the subjunctive; the secondary tenses. What Latin verbs are regularly followed by substantive clauses of purpose? What construction follows **iubeō**? What construction follows verbs of *fearing*? How is consequence or result expressed in Latin? How is a result clause introduced? What words are often found in the principal clause foreshadowing the coming of a result clause? How may negative purpose be distinguished from negative result? What is meant by the subjunctive of characteristic or description? How are such clauses introduced? Explain the ablative absolute. Why is the ablative absolute of such frequent occurrence in Latin? Explain the predicate accusative. After what verbs are two accusatives commonly found? What do these accusatives become when the verb is passive?

[Go on to Lesson LXX](#)



IMPERATOR MILITES HORTATUR

## SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

The words in heavy type are used in Cæsar's "Gallic War."

### LESSON IV, § 39

#### NOUNS

**dea**, goddess (deity)  
 Diā'na, *Diana*  
**fera**, a wild beast (fierce)  
 Lātō'na, *Latona*  
**sagit'ta**, arrow

#### VERBS

**est**, he (she, it) is; **sunt**, they are  
**necat**, he (she, it) kills, is killing, does  
 kill

#### CONJUNCTION <sup>1</sup>

**et**, and

#### PRONOUNS

**quis**, interrog. pronoun, nom. sing., *who*?  
**cuius** (pronounced *coōi'yoōs*, two syllables), interrog. pronoun, gen. sing.,  
*whose*?

1. A *conjunction* is a word which connects words, parts of sentences, or sentences.

### LESSON V, § 47

#### NOUNS

**corō'na**, wreath, garland, crown  
fā'bula, story (fable)  
**pecū'nia**, money (pecuniary)  
**pugna**, battle (pugnacious)  
**victō'ria**, victory

#### VERBS

**dat**, he (she, it) gives  
nārrat, he (she, it) tells (narrate)

#### CONJUNCTION<sup>1</sup>

**quia** or **quod**, because

#### PRONOUN

**cui** (pronounced *coī*, one syllable), interrog. pronoun, dat. sing., *to whom?* for *whom?*

1. A *conjunction* is a word which connects words, parts of sentences, or sentences.

### LESSON VI, § 56

#### ADJECTIVES

**bona**, good  
**grāta**, pleasing  
**magna**, large, great  
**mala**, bad, wicked  
**parva**, small, little  
**pulchra**, beautiful, pretty  
**sōla**, alone

#### NOUNS

ancil'la, maidservant  
Iūlia, Julia

#### ADVERBS<sup>1</sup>

**cūr**, why  
**nōn**, not

#### PRONOUNS

**mea**, my; **tua**, thy, your (possesives)  
**quid**, interrog. pronoun, nom. and acc. sing., *what?*

**-ne**, the question sign, an enclitic (§ 16) added to the first word, which, in a question, is usually the verb, as **amat**, *he loves*, but **amat ne?** *does he love?*  
**est**, *he is*; **estne?** *is he?* Of course **-ne** is not used when the sentence contains **quīs**, **cūr**, or some other interrogative word.

1. An *adverb* is a word used to modify a verb, an adjective, or another adverb; as, She sings *sweetly*; she is *very* talented; she began to sing *very early*.

### LESSON VII, § 62

#### NOUNS

**casa**, -ae, f., cottage  
cēna, -ae, f., dinner  
**gallī'na**, -ae, f., hen, chicken  
**in'sula**, ae, f., island (pen-insula)

#### ADVERBS

**de-in'de**, then, in the next place  
**ubi**, where

#### PREPOSITION

**ad**, to, with acc. to express motion toward

#### VERBS

ha'bitat, he (she, it) lives, is living, does live (inhabit)  
**laudat**, he (she, it) praises, is praising, does praise (laud)  
**parat**, he (she, it) prepares, is preparing, does prepare  
**vocat**, he (she, it) calls, is calling, does call; invites, is inviting, does invite (vocation)

#### PRONOUN

**quem**, interrog. pronoun, acc. sing., *whom?*

### LESSON VIII, § 69

#### NOUNS

**Italia**, -ae, f., Italy  
Sicilia, -ae, f., Sicily  
**tuba**, -ae, f., trumpet (tube)  
**via**, -ae, f., way, road, street (viaduct)

#### ADJECTIVES

**alta**, high, deep (altitude)  
**clāra**, clear, bright; famous  
**lāta**, wide (latitude)  
**longa**, long (longitude)  
**nova**, new (novelty)

### LESSON IX, § 77

#### NOUNS

**bellum**, -ī, n., war (re-bel)  
**cōstantia**, -ae, f., firmness, constancy, steadiness  
dominus, -ī, m., master, lord (dominate)  
**equus**, -ī, m., horse (equine)  
**frūmentum**, -ī, n., grain  
**lēgātus**, -ī, m., lieutenant, ambassador (legate)  
**Mārcus**, -ī, m., Marcus, Mark

**mūrus**, -ī, m., wall (mural)  
**oppidānus**, -ī, m., townsman  
**oppidum**, -ī, n., town  
**pilum**, -ī, n., spear (pile driver)  
**servus**, -ī, m., slave, servant  
Sextus, -ī, m., Sextus

#### VERBS

**cūrat**, he (she, it) cares for, with acc.  
**properat**, he (she, it) hastens

## LESSON X, § 82

## NOUNS

**amicus, -ī**, m., *friend* (amicable)  
**Germānia, -ae**, f., *Germany*  
**patria, -ae**, f., *fatherland*

**populus, -ī**, m., *people*  
**Rhēnus, -ī**, m., *the Rhine*  
**vīcus, -ī**, m., *village*

## LESSON XI, § 86

## NOUNS

**arma, armōrum**, n., plur., *arms*,  
 especially defensive weapons  
**fāma, -ae**, f., *rumor; reputation, fame*

**galea, -ae**, f., *helmet*  
**praeda, -ae**, f., *booty, spoils*  
 (predatory)  
**tēlum, -ī**, n., *weapon of offense, spear*

## ADJECTIVES

**dūrus, -a, -um**, *hard, rough;*  
*unfeeling, cruel; severe, toilsome*  
 (durable)

**Rōmānus, -a, -um**, *Roman*. As a noun,  
**Rōmānus, -ī**, m., *a Roman*

## LESSON XII, § 90

## NOUNS

**filius, fili**, m., *son* (filial)  
 fluuius, fluvī, m., *river* (fluent)  
**gladius, gladi**, m., *sword* (gladiator)  
**praesidium, praesi' dī**, n., *garrison,*  
*guard, protection*  
**proelium, proeli**, n., *battle*

## ADJECTIVES

**finitimus, -a, -um**, *bordering upon,*  
*neighboring, near to*. As a noun,  
**finitimī, -ōrum**, m., plur., *neighbors*  
**Germānus, -a, -um**, *German*. As a  
 noun, **Germānus, -ī**, m., *a German*  
**multus, -a, -um**, *much; plur., many*

## ADVERB

**saepe**, *often*

## LESSON XIII, § 95

## NOUNS

**ager, agrī**, m., *field* (acre)  
**cōpia, -ae**, f., *plenty, abundance*  
 (copious); plur., *troops, forces*  
**Cornēlius, Cornē' lī**, m., *Cornelius*  
**lōrī' ca, -ae**, f., *coat of mail, corselet*

**praemium, praemi**, n., *reward, prize*  
 (premium)  
**puer, puerī**, m., *boy* (puerile)  
**Rōma, -ae**, f., *Rome*  
**scūtum, -ī**, n., *shield* (escutcheon)  
**vir, virī**, m., *man, hero* (virile)

## ADJECTIVES

**legiōnārius, -a, -um**,<sup>1</sup> *legionary,*  
*belonging to the legion*. As a noun,  
**legiōnārii, -ōrum**, m., plur.,  
*legionary soldiers*  
**liber, libera, liberum**, *free* (liberty)  
 As a noun, **liberī, -ōrum**, m., plur.,  
*children* (lit. *the freeborn*)

**pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum**, *pretty,*  
*beautiful*

## PREPOSITION

**apud**, *among*, with acc.

## CONJUNCTION

**sed**, *but*

1. The genitive singular masculine of adjectives in **-ius** ends in **-ī** and the vocative in **-ie**; not in **-ī**, as in nouns.

## LESSON XIV, § 99

## NOUNS

**auxilium, auxili' ī**, n., *help, aid*  
 (auxiliary)  
**castrum, -ī**, n., *fort* (castle); plur.,  
*camp* (lit. *forts*)  
**cibus, -ī**, m., *food*

**cōnsilium, cōnsi' lī**, n., *plan* (counsel)  
**diligentia, -ae**, f., *diligence, industry*  
 magister, magistri, m., *master,*  
*teacher*<sup>1</sup>

## ADJECTIVES

**aeger, aegra, aegrum**, *sick*  
**crēber, crēbra, crēbrum**, *frequent*

**miser, misera, miserum**, *wretched,*  
*unfortunate* (miser)

1. Observe that **dominus**, as distinguished from **magister**, means *master* in the sense of *owner*.

## LESSON XV, § 107

## NOUNS

**carrus, -ī**, m., *cart, wagon*  
**inopia, -ae**, f., *want, lack*; the opposite  
 of **cōpia**  
**studium, studī**, n., *zeal, eagerness*

## ADJECTIVES

**armātus, -a, -um**, *armed*  
**infirmus, -a, -um**, *weak, feeble*  
 (infirm)  
**vali' dus, -a, -um**, *strong, sturdy*

(study)  
VERB  
**mātūrat**, *he (she, it) hastens*. Cf.  
properat

**-que**, conjunction, *and*; an enclitic (cf. § 16) and always added to the *second* of two words to be connected, as **arma tēla que**, *arms and weapons*.

ADVERB  
**iam**, *already, now*

## LESSON XVII, § 117

### NOUNS

**agrī cultūra**, -ae, f., *agriculture*  
**domicilium, domici'li**, n., *dwelling*  
*place (domicile) abode*  
**fēmina**, -ae, f., *woman (female)*

ADJECTIVE  
**mātūrus**, -a, -um, *ripe, mature*

VERBS  
arat, *he (she, it) plows (arable)*  
**dēsiderat**, *he (she, it) misses, longs*  
*for (desire), with acc.*

**Gallia**, -ae, f., *Gaul*  
**Gallus**, -i, m., *a Gaul*  
**lacrima**, -ae, f., *tear*  
**numerus**, -i, m., *number (numeral)*

ADVERB  
quō, *whither*

CONJUNCTION  
**an**, *or*, introducing the second half of a double question, as *Is he a Roman or a Gaul*, **Estne Romanus an Gallus?**

## LESSON XVIII, § 124

NOUNS  
lūdus, -ī, m., *school*  
**socius, soci**, m., *companion, ally*  
(social)

ADVERBS  
hodiē, *to-day*  
**ibi**, *there, in that place*  
mox, *presently, soon*, of the immediate future

ADJECTIVES  
**īrātus**, -a, -um, *angry, furious (irate)*  
**laetus**, -a, -um, *happy, glad (social)*

ADVERBS  
**nunc**, *now, the present moment*  
**nūper**, *lately, recently*, of the immediate past

## LESSON XX, § 136

### NOUNS

**fōrma**, -ae, f., *form, beauty*  
**poena**, -ae, f., *punishment, penalty*  
**potentia**, -ae, f., *power (potent)*

ADJECTIVES  
**septem**, indeclinable, *seven*  
**superbus**, -a, -um, *proud, haughty*  
(superb)

**regīna**, -ae, f., *queen (regal)*  
superbia, -ae, f., *pride, haughtiness*  
**trīstītia**, -ae, f., *sadness, sorrow*

CONJUNCTIONS  
**nōn solum ... sed etiam**, *not only ... but also*

## LESSON XXI, § 140

NOUNS  
sacrum, -ī, n., *sacrifice, offering, rite*  
**verbum**, -ī, n., *word (verb)*

VERBS  
sedeō, -ēre, *sit (sediment)*  
volō, -āre, *fly (volatile)*

**ego**, personal pronoun, *I (egotism)*. Always emphatic in the nominative.

ADJECTIVES  
**interfectus**, -a, -um, *slain*  
**molestus**, -a, -um, *troublesome, annoying (molest)*  
**perpetuus**, -a, -um, *perpetual, continuous*

## LESSON XXII, § 146

### NOUNS

**disciplīna**, -ae, f., *training, culture, discipline*  
**ōrnāmentum**, -ī, n., *ornament, jewel*

VERB  
**doceō**, -ēre, *teach (doctrine)*

**Gāius, Gāi**, m., *Caius*, a Roman first name  
Tiberius, Tibe'rī, m., *Tiberius*, a Roman first name

ADVERB  
**maximē**, *most of all, especially*

ADJECTIVE  
**antīquus**, -qua, -quum, *old, ancient (antique)*

## LESSON XXVII, § 168

NOUNS

ADJECTIVES

**āla**, -ae, f., *wing*  
**deus**, -ī, m., *god* (deity)<sup>1</sup>  
**monstrum**, -ī, n., *omen, prodigy;*  
*monster*  
 ōrāculum, -ī, n., *oracle*  
 VERB  
**vāstō**, -āre, *lay waste, devastate*

**commōtus**, -a, -um, *moved, excited*  
**maximus**, -a, -um, *greatest*  
 (maximum)  
**saevus**, -a, -um, *fierce, savage*  
 ADVERBS  
**ita**, *thus, in this way, as follows*  
**tum**, *then, at that time*

1. For the declension of **deus**, see § 468

#### LESSON XXVIII, § 171

VERBS  
**respondeō**, -ēre, *respond, reply*  
**servō**, -āre, *save, preserve*  
 ADJECTIVE  
**cārus**, -a, -um, *dear* (cherish)

CONJUNCTION  
**autem**, *but, moreover, now*. Usually stands second, never first  
 NOUN  
**vīta**, -ae, f., *life* (vital)

#### LESSON XXIX, § 176

VERB  
**superō**, -āre, *conquer, overcome*  
 (insuperable)  
 NOUNS  
**cūra**, -ae, f., *care, trouble*  
**locus**, -ī, m., *place, spot* (location).  
**Locus** is neuter in the plural and is declined **loca**, -ōrum, etc.  
**periculum**, -ī, n., *danger, peril*

ADVERBS  
**semper**, *always*  
**tamen**, *yet, nevertheless*  
 PREPOSITIONS  
**dē**, with abl., *down from; concerning*  
**per**, with acc., *through*  
 CONJUNCTION  
**si**, *if*

#### LESSON XXX, § 182

VERBS  
**absūm**, **abesse**, irreg., *be away, be absent, be distant*, with separative abl.  
**adpropinquō**, -āre, *draw near, approach* (propinquity), with dative<sup>1</sup>  
**contineō**, -ēre, *hold together, hem in, keep* (contain)

NOUNS  
**prōvincia**, -ae, f., *province*  
**vīnum**, -ī, n., *wine*

VERBS  
**discēdō**, -ere, *depart, go away, leave*, with separative abl.  
**egeō**, -ēre, *lack, need, be without*, with separative abl.  
**interficiō**, -ere, *kill*  
**prohibeō**, -ēre, *restrain, keep from* (prohibit)  
**vulnerō**, -āre, *wound* (vulnerable)  
 ADJECTIVE  
**dēfessus**, -a, -um, *weary, worn out*  
 ADVERB  
**longē**, *far, by far, far away*

1. This verb governs the dative because the idea of *nearness to* is stronger than that of *motion to*. If the latter idea were the stronger, the word would be used with **ad** and the accusative.

#### LESSON XXXI, § 188

NOUNS  
 aurum, -ī, n., *gold* (orirole)  
**mora**, -ae, f., *delay*  
**nāvigium**, **nāvi'gī**, n., *boat, ship*  
**ventus**, -ī, m., *wind* (ventilate)

VERB  
**nāvigō**, -āre, *sail* (navigate)

ADJECTIVES  
 attentus, -a, -um, *attentive, careful*  
**dubius**, -a, -um, *doubtful* (dubious)  
 perfidus, -a, -um, *faithless, treacherous* (perfidy)

ADVERB  
**anteā**, *before, previously*

PREPOSITION  
**sine**, with abl., *without*

#### LESSON XXXII, § 193

NOUNS  
**animus**, -ī, m., *mind, heart; spirit, feeling* (animate)  
**bracchium**, **bracchī**, n., *forearm, arm*  
**porta**, -ae, f., *gate* (portal)

PREPOSITION  
**prō**, with abl., *before; in behalf of; instead of*

ADJECTIVES  
**adversus**, -a, -um, *opposite; adverse, contrary*  
**plēnus**, -a, -um, *full* (plenty)

ADVERB  
**diū**, *for a long time, long*



## LESSON XXXIV, § 200

## ADVERBS

**celeriter**, *quickly* (celerity)  
**dēnique**, *finally*

**graviter**, *heavily, severely* (gravity)  
**subitō**, *suddenly*

## VERB

**reportō, -āre, -āvī**, *bring back, restore; win, gain* (report)

## LESSON XXXVI, § 211

**dexter, dextra, dextrum**, *right*  
 (dextrous)

**sinister, sinistra, sinistrum**, *left*  
**frūstrā**, *adv., in vain* (frustrate)

**gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus**, *bear, carry on; wear*; **bellum gerere**, *to wage war*  
**occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātus**, *seize, take possession of* (occupy)  
**postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus**, *demand* (ex-postulate)  
**recūsō, recūsāre, recūsāvī, recūsātus**, *refuse*  
**stō, stāre, steti, status**, *stand*  
**temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātus**, *try, tempt, test; attempt*  
**teneō, tenēre, tenuī**, —, *keep, hold* (tenacious)

The word **ubi**, which we have used so much in the sense of *where* in asking a question, has two other uses equally important:

1. **ubi** = *when*, as a relative conjunction denoting time; as,

**Ubi mōnstrum audivērunt, fūgērunt**, *when they heard the monster, they fled*

2. **ubi** = *where*, as a relative conjunction denoting place; as,

**Videō oppidum ubi Galba habitat**, *I see the town where Galba lives*

**Ubi** is called a *relative conjunction* because it is equivalent to a relative pronoun. *When* in the first sentence is equivalent to *at the time at which*; and in the second, *where* is equivalent to *the place in which*.

## LESSON XXXVII, § 217

**neque** or **nec**, *conj., neither, nor, and*  
 ... *not; neque ... neque*, *neither ... nor*

**castellum**, *-ī, n., redoubt, fort* (castle)  
**cotidiē**, *adv., daily*

**cessō, cessāre, cessāvī, cessātus**, *cease*, with the infin.

**incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus**, *begin* (incipient), with the infin.

**oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātus**, *storm, assail*

**petō, petere, petivi or petiī, petītus**, *aim at, assail, storm, attack; seek, ask*  
 (petition)

**pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus**, *place, put* (position); **castra pōnere**, *to pitch camp*

**possum, posse, potuī**, —, *be able, can* (potent), with the infin.

**vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus**, *forbid* (veto), with the infin.; opposite of **iubeō**, *command*

**vincō, vincere, vici, victus**, *conquer* (in-vincible)

**vivō, vivere, vixī**, —, *live, be alive* (re-vive)

## LESSON XXXIX, § 234

**barbarus, -a, -um**, *strange, foreign, barbarous*. As a noun, **barbarī, -ōrum**, *m., plur., savages, barbarians*

**dux, ducis**, *m., leader* (duke). Cf. the verb **dūcō**

**eques, equitis**, *m., horseman, cavalryman* (equestrian)

**iūdex, iūdicis**, *m., judge*

**lapis, lapidis**, *m., stone* (lapidary)

**mīles, militis**, *m., soldier* (militia)

**pedes, peditis**, *m., foot soldier*  
 (pedestrian)

**pēs, pedis**, <sup>1</sup> *m., foot* (pedal)

**prīnceps, principis**, *m., chief*  
 (principal)

**rēx, rēgis**, *m., king* (regal)

**summus, -a, -um**, *highest, greatest*  
 (summit)

**virtūs, virtūtis**, *f., manliness, courage*  
 (virtue)

1. Observe that **e** is *long* in the nom. sing, and *short* in the other cases.

## LESSON XL, § 237

**Caesar, -aris**, *m., Cæsar*

**captivus, -ī**, *m., captive, prisoner*

**cōsul, -is**, *m., consul*

**frāter, frātris**, *m., brother* (fraternity)

**homō, hominis**, *m., man, human*  
*being*

**impedimentum, -ī**, *n., hindrance*  
 (impediment); plur. **impedimenta, -ōrum**, *baggage*

**imperātor, imperātōris**, *m., commander in chief, general*  
 (emperor)

**legiō, legiōnis**, *f., legion*

**māter, mātris**, *f., mother* (maternal)

**ōrdō, ordinis**, *m., row, rank* (order)

**pater, patris**, *m., father* (paternal)

**salūs, salūtis**, *f., safety* (salutary)

**soror, sorōris**, *f., sister* (sorority)

LESSON XLI, § 239

**calamitās, calamitātis**, f., *loss, disaster, defeat* (calamity)  
**caput, capitis**, n., *head* (capital)  
**flūmen, flūminis**, n., *river* (flume)  
**labor, labōris**, m., *labor, toil*  
**opus, operis**, n., *work, task*

**accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus**, *receive, accept*  
**cōfirmō, cōfirmāre, cōfirmāvī, cōfirmātus**, *strengthen, establish, encourage* (confirm)

**ōrātor, ōrātōris**, m., *orator*  
**rīpa, -ae**, f., *bank* (of a stream)  
**tempus, temporis**, n., *time* (temporal)  
**terror, terrōris**, m., *terror, fear*  
**victor, victōris**, m., *victor*

LESSON XLIII, § 245

**animal, animālis (-ium<sup>1</sup>)**, n., *animal*  
**avis, avis (-ium)**, f., *bird* (aviation)  
**caedēs, caedīs (-ium)**, f., *slaughter*  
 calcar, calcāris (-ium), n., *spur*  
**civis, civis (-ium)**, m. and f., *citizen* (civic)  
**cliēns, clientis (-ium)**, m., *retainer, dependent* (client)  
**finis, finis (-ium)**, m., *end, limit* (final); plur., *country, territory*  
**hostis, hostis (-ium)**, m. and f., *enemy* in war (hostile). Distinguish from **inimīcus**, which means a *personal* enemy

**ignis, ignis (-ium)**, m., *fire* (ignite)  
**insigne, insignis (-ium)**, n., *decoration, badge* (ensign)  
**mare, maris (-ium<sup>2</sup>)**, n., *sea* (marine)  
**nāvis, nāvis (-ium)**, f., *ship* (naval);  
**nāvis longa**, *man-of-war*  
**turris, turris (-ium)**, f., *tower* (turret)  
**urbs, urbis (-ium)**, f., *city* (suburb).  
 An **urbs** is larger than an **oppidum**.

1. The genitive plural ending **-ium** is written to mark the i-stems.
2. The genitive plural of **mare** is not in use.

LESSON XLIV, § 249

**arbor, arboris**, f., *tree* (arbor)  
**collis, collis (-ium)**, m., *hill*  
**dēns, dentis (-ium)**, m., *tooth* (dentist)  
 fōns, fontis (-ium), m., *fountain, spring; source*  
**iter, itineris**, n., *march, journey, route* (itinerary)  
**mēnsis, mēnsis (-ium)**, m., *month*  
**moenia, -ium**, n., plur., *walls, fortifications*. Cf. **mūrus**

**mōns, montis (-ium)**, m., *mountain; summus mōns, top of the mountain*  
**numquam**, adv., *never*  
**pōns, pontis**, m., *bridge* (pontoon)  
**sanguis, sanguinis**, m., *blood* (sanguinary)  
**summus, -a, -um**, *highest, greatest* (summit)  
**trāns**, prep, with acc., *across* (transatlantic)  
**vīs (vīs)**, gen. plur. **virium**, f. *strength, force, violence* (vim)

LESSON XLV, § 258

**ācer, ācris, ācre**, *sharp, keen, eager* (acrid)  
**brevis, breve**, *short, brief*  
**difficilis, difficile**, *difficult*  
**facilis, facile**, *facile, easy*  
**fortis, forte**, *brave* (fortitude)  
**gravis, grave**, *heavy, severe, serious* (grave)  
**conlocō, conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātus**, *arrange, station, place* (collocation)  
**dēmōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre, dēmōnstrāvī, dēmōnstrātus**, *point out, explain* (demonstrate)  
**mandō, mandāre, mandāvī, mandātus**, *commit, intrust* (mandate)

**omnis, omne**, *every, all* (omnibus)  
**pār**, gen. **paris**, *equal* (par)  
**pauci, -ae, -a**, *few, only a few* (paucity)  
**secundus, -a, -um**, *second; favorable*, opposite of adversus  
**signum, -i**, n., *signal, sign, standard*  
**vēlōx**, gen. **vēlōcis**, *swift* (velocity)

LESSON XLVI, § 261

**adventus, -ūs**, m., *approach, arrival* (advent)  
**ante**, prep, with acc., *before* (ante-date)  
**cornū, -ūs**, n., *horn, wing* of an army (cornucopia);  
**ā dextrō cornū**, *on the right wing*;  
**ā sinistrō cornū**, *on the left wing*  
**equitātus, -ūs**, m., *cavalry*  
**exercitus, -ūs**, m., *army*  
**cremō, cremāre, cremāvī, cremātus**, *burn* (cremate)

**impetus, -ūs**, m., *attack* (impetus);  
**impetum facere in**, with acc., *to make an attack on*  
**lacus, -ūs**, dat. and abl. plur. lacubus, m., *lake*  
**manus, -ūs**, f., *hand; band, force* (manual)  
**portus, -ūs**, m., *harbor* (port)  
**post**, prep, with acc., *behind, after* (post-mortem)

**exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitus, practice, drill, train** (exercise)

LESSON XLVII, § 270

Athēnae, -ārum, f., plur., *Athens*  
Corinthus, -ī, f., *Corinth*  
**domus, -ūs**, locative **domī**, f., *house, home* (dome). Cf. **domicilium**  
**Genāva, -ae**, f., *Geneva*  
Pompēiī, -ōrum, m., plur., *Pompeii*, a city in Campania. See map

**propter**, prep. with acc., *on account of, because of*  
rūs, rūris, in the plur. only nom. and acc. **rūra**, n., *country* (rustic)  
**tergum, tergī**, n., *back; ā tergō*, *behind, in the rear*  
**vulnus, vulneris**, n., *wound* (vulnerable)

**committō, committere, commīsī, commissus, intrust, commit; proelium committere, join battle**  
**convocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātus, call together, summon** (convoke)  
**timeō, timēre, timuī**, —, *fear; be afraid* (timid)  
**vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, turn, change** (convert); **terga vertere, to turn the backs, hence to retreat**

LESSON XLVIII, § 276

**aciēs, -ēī**, f., *line of battle*  
**aestās, aestātis**, f., *summer*  
**annus, -ī**, m., *year* (annual)  
**diēs, diēī**, m., *day* (diary)  
**fidēs, fideī**, no plur., f., *faith, trust; promise, word; protection; in fidem venīre, to come under the protection*  
**fluctus, -ūs**, m. *wave, billow* (fluctuate)  
**hiems, hiemis**, f., *winter*  
**hōra, -ae**, f., *hour*

**lūx, lūcis**, f., *light* (lucid); **prīma lux, daybreak**  
**merīdiēs**, acc. **-em**, abl. **-ē**, no plur., m., *midday* (meridian)  
**nox, noctis (-ium)**, f., *night* (nocturnal)  
**prīmus, -a, -um, first** (prime)  
**rēs, rei**, f., *thing, matter* (real); **rēs gestae, deeds, exploits** (lit. *things performed*); **rēs adversae, adversity; rēs secundae, prosperity**  
**spēs, speī**, f., *hope*

LESSON XLIX, § 283

**amicitia, -ae**, f., *friendship* (amicable)  
**itaque, conj., and so, therefore, accordingly**  
**littera, -ae**, f., *a letter* of the alphabet; plur., *a letter, an epistle*  
**metus, metūs**, m., *fear*  
**nihil**, indeclinable, n., *nothing* (nihilist)

**nūntius, nūntī**, m., *messenger*. Cf. **nūntiō**  
**pāx, pācis**, f., *peace* (pacify)  
**rēgnum, -ī**, n., *reign, sovereignty, kingdom*  
**supplicum, supplī'cī**, n., *punishment*  
**supplicum sūmere dē**, with abl., *inflict punishment on*;  
**supplicum dare, suffer punishment**. Cf. **poena**

**placeō, placēre, placuī, placitus, be pleasing to, please, with dative. Cf. § 154**  
**sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmptus, take up, assume**  
**sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentus, sustain**

LESSON L, § 288

**corpus, corporis**, n., *body* (corporal)  
**dēnsus, -a, -um, dense**  
**īdem, e'adem, idem, demonstrative pronoun, the same** (identity)  
**ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intensive pronoun, self; even, very**  
**mirus, -a, -um, wonderful, marvelous** (miracle)

**ōlim, adv., formerly, once upon a time**  
**pars, partis (-ium)**, f., *part, region, direction*  
**quoque, adv., also. Stands after the word which it emphasizes**  
**sōl, sōlis**, m., *sun* (solar)  
**vērus, -a, -um, true, real** (verity)

**dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitus, owe, ought** (debt)  
**ēripiō, ēripere, ēripiū, ēreptus, snatch from**

LESSON LI, § 294

**hic, haec, hoc, demonstrative pronoun, this** (of mine); *he, she, it*  
**ille, illa, illud, demonstrative pronoun that** (yonder); *he, she, it*  
**invisus, -a, -um, hateful, detested, with dative Cf. § 143**  
**iste, ista, istud, demonstrative**

**nōmen, nōminis**, n., *name* (nominate)  
**oculus, -ī**, m., *eye* (oculist)  
**prīstinus, -a, -um, former, old-time** (pristine)  
**pūblicus, -a, -um, public, belonging to the state; rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae**, f., *the commonwealth, the*

pronoun, *that* (of yours); *he, she, it*  
**libertās, -ātis**, f., *liberty*  
**modus, -ī**, m., *measure; manner, way,*  
*mode*

*state, the republic*  
**vestigium, vestī gī**, n., *footprint,*  
*track; trace, vestige*  
**vōx, vōcis**, f., *voice*

#### LESSON LII, § 298

**incolumis, -e**, *unharméd*  
**nē ... quidem**, adv., *not even*. The  
emphatic word stands between **nē**  
and **quidem**  
**nisi**, conj., *unless, if ... not*  
**paene**, adv., *almost* (pen-insula)  
**dēcidō, dēcidere, dēcidī**, —, *fall down* (deciduous)  
**dēsiliō, dēsilire, dēsilui, dēsultus**, *leap down, dismount*  
**maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus**, *remain*  
**trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trādūctus**, *lead across*

**satis**, adv., *enough, sufficiently*  
(satisfaction)  
**tantus, -a, -um**, *so great*  
**vērō**, adv., *truly, indeed, in fact*. As a  
conj. *but, however*, usually stands  
second, never first.

#### LESSON LIII, § 306

**aquila, -ae**, f., *eagle* (aquiline)  
**audāx**, gen. **audācis**, adj., *bold,*  
*audacious*  
**celer, celeris, celere**, *swift, quick*  
(celerity). Cf. **vēlōx**  
**explōrātōr, -ōris**, m., *scout, spy*  
(explorer)  
**ingēns**, gen. **ingentis**, adj., *huge, vast*  
**medius, -a, -um**, *middle, middle part*  
*of* (medium)

**mēns, mentis (-ium)**, f., *mind*  
(mental). Cf. **animus**  
**opportūnus, -a, -um**, *opportune*  
**quam**, adv., *than*. With the superlative  
**quam** gives the force of *as possible*,  
as **quam audācissimī virī**, *men as*  
*bold as possible*  
**recens**, gen. **recentis**, adj., *recent*  
**tam**, adv., *so*. Always with an adjective  
or adverb, while **ita** is generally  
used with a verb

**quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesītus**, *ask, inquire, seek* (question). Cf. **petō**

#### LESSON LIV, § 310

**alacer, alacris, alacre**, *eager,*  
*spirited, excited* (alacrity)  
**celeritās, -ātis**, f., *speed* (celerity)  
**clāmor, clāmōris**, m., *shout, clamor*  
**lēnis, lēne**, *mild, gentle* (lenient)  
**mulier, mulī eris**, f., *woman*  
**multitūdō, multitūdinis**, f.,  
*multitude*  
**nēmō**, dat. **nēminī**, acc. **nēminem**  
(gen. **nūllius**, abl. **nūllō**, from  
**nūllus**), no plur., m. and f., *no one*  
**cupiō, cupere, cupivī, cupītus**, *desire, wish* (cupidity)

**nōbilis, nōbile**, *well known, noble*  
**noctū**, adv. (an old abl.), *by night*  
(nocturnal)  
**statim**, adv., *immediately, at once*  
**subitō**, adv., *suddenly*  
**tardus, -a, -um**, *slow* (tardy)

#### LESSON LV, § 314

**aedificium, aedifi cī**, n., *building,*  
*dwelling* (edifice)  
**imperium, impe rī**, n., *command,*  
*chief power; empire*  
**mors, mortis (-ium)**, f., *death*  
(mortal)

**reliquus, -a, -um**, *remaining, rest of*.  
As a noun, m. and n. plur., *the rest*  
(relic)  
**scelus, sceleris**, n., *crime*  
**servitūs, -ūtis**, f., *slavery* (servitude)  
**vallēs, vallis (-ium)**, f., *valley*

**abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditus**, *hide*  
**contendō, contendere, contendi, contentus**, *strain, struggle; hasten*  
(contend)  
**occidō, occidere, occidī, occisus**, *cut down, kill*. Cf. **necō, interficiō**  
**perterreō, perterrere, perterrui, perterritus**, *terrify, frighten*  
**recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus**, *receive, recover; sē recipere, betake*  
*one's self, withdraw, retreat*  
**trādō, trādere, trādidi, trādītus**, *give over, surrender, deliver* (traitor)

#### LESSON LVI, § 318

**aditus, -ūs**, m., *approach, access;*  
*entrance*  
**civitās, civitātis**, f., *citizenship; body*  
*of citizens, state* (city)  
**inter**, prep, with acc., *between, among*  
(interstate commerce)

**nam**, conj., *for*  
**obses, obsidis**, m. and f., *hostage*  
**paulō**, adv. (abl. n. of **paulus**), *by a*  
*little, somewhat*

**incolō, incolere, incolui**, —, transitive, *inhabit*; intransitive,  *dwell*. Cf.

**habitō, vivō**  
**relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus**, *leave, abandon* (relinquish)  
**statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus**, *fix, decide* (statute), usually with infin.

#### LESSON LVII, § 326

**aequus, -a, -um**, *even, level; equal*  
**cohors, cohortis (-ium)**, f., *cohort*, a tenth part of a legion, about 360 men  
**currō, currere, cucurrī, cursus**, *run* (course)  
**difficultās, -ātis**, f., *difficulty*  
**fossa, -ae**, f., *ditch* (fosse)  
**gēns, gentis (-ium)**, f., *race, tribe, nation* (Gentile)  
**negōtium, negōtī**, n., *business, affair, matter* (negotiate)  
**regiō, -ōnis**, f., *region, district*  
**rūmor, rūmōris**, m., *rumor, report*. Cf. *fāma*  
**simul atque**, conj., *as soon as*  
**suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus**, *undertake*  
**trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus**, *drag, draw* (ex-tract)  
**valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus**, *be strong; plurimum valēre, to be most powerful, have great influence* (value). Cf. *validus*

#### LESSON LVIII, § 332

**commeātus, -ūs**, m., *provisions*  
**lātitudō, -inis**, f., *width* (latitude)  
**longitudō, -inis**, f., *length* (longitude)  
**magnitudō, -inis**, f., *size, magnitude*  
**mercātor, mercātōris**, m., *trader, merchant*  
**mūnitiō, -ōnis**, f., *fortification* (munition)  
**spatium, spatī**, n., *room, space, distance; time*  
**cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus**, *learn; in the perfect tenses, know* (re-cognize)  
**cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus**, *collect; compel* (cogent)  
**dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus**, *defend*  
**incendō, incendere, incendiī, incēnsus**, *set fire to, burn* (incendiary). Cf. *cremō*  
**obtinēō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus**, *possess, occupy, hold* (obtain)  
**pervenio, pervenire, pervēnī, perventus**, *come through, arrive*

#### LESSON LIX, § 337

**agmen, agminis**, n., *line of march, column; primum agmen, the van; novissimum agmen, the rear*  
**atque, ac**, conj., *and; atque* is used before vowels and consonants, **ac** before consonants only. Cf. **et** and **-que**  
**concilium, concīlī**, n., *council, assembly*  
**Helvētīi, -ōrum**, m., *the Helvetii*, a Gallic tribe  
**passus, passūs**, m., *a pace*, five Roman feet; **mille passuum**, *a thousand (of) paces*, a Roman mile  
**quā dē causā**, *for this reason, for what reason*  
**vāllum, -ī**, n., *earth-works, rampart*  
**cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus**, *fall* (decadence)  
**dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus**, *surrender, give up*; with a reflexive pronoun, *surrender one's self, submit*, with the dative of the indirect object  
**premō, premere, pressī, pressus**, *press hard, harass*  
**vexō, vexāre, vexāvī, vexātus**, *annoy, ravage* (vex)

#### LESSON LX, § 341

**aut**, conj., *or; aut ... aut, either ... or*  
**causā**, abl. of **causa**, *for the sake of, because of*. Always stands *after* the gen. which modifies it  
**ferē**, adv., *nearly, almost*  
**opīniō, -ōnis**, f., *opinion, supposition, expectation*  
**rēs frūmentāria, rei frūmentāriae**, f. (lit. *the grain affair*), *grain supply*  
**timor, -ōris**, m., *fear*. Cf. **timeō**  
**undique**, adv., *from all sides*  
**cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum**, *attempt, try*  
**ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum**, *move out, disembark; prōgredior, move forward, advance* (egress, progress)  
**moror, morārī, morātus sum**, *delay*  
**orior, orirī, ortus sum**, *arise, spring; begin; be born (from)* (origin)  
**proficiscor, proficiscī, profectus sum**, *set out*  
**revertor, revertī, reversus sum**, *return* (revert). The forms of this verb are usually active, and not deponent, in the perfect system. Perf. act., **revertī**  
**sequor, sequī, secūtus sum**, *follow* (sequence). Note the following compounds of **sequor** and the force of the different prefixes: **cōnsequor** (*follow with*), **overtake**; **insequor** (*follow against*), *pursue*; **subsequor** (*follow under*), *follow close after*

Translations inclosed within parentheses are not to be used as such; they are inserted to show etymological meanings.

The “parentheses” are shown in square brackets [ ], as in the original.

A B C D E F G H I L M N O P Q R S T U V

A

- ā** or **ab**, prep. with abl. *from, by, off*.  
Translated on in **ā dextrō cornū**,  
*on the right wing*; **ā fronte**, *on the  
front or in front*; **ā dextrā**, *on the  
right*; **ā latere**, *on the side*; etc.
- ab-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *hide,  
conceal*
- ab-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead  
off, lead away*
- abs-cidō**, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus [ab(s),  
*off, + caedō, cut*], *cut off*
- ab-sum**, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *be  
away, be absent, be distant, be off*;  
with **ā** or **ab** and abl., § 501.32
- ac**, conj., see **atque**
- ac-cipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [ad, to,  
+ capiō, take], *receive, accept*
- ācer**, ācris, ācre, adj. *sharp*;  
figuratively, *keen, active, eager*  
(§ 471)
- acerbus**, -a, -um, adj. *bitter, sour*
- aciēs**, -ēī, f. [ācer, sharp], *edge; line  
of battle*
- ācriter**, adv. [ācer, sharp], compared  
**ācrius**, **ācerrimē**, *sharply,  
fiercely*
- ad**, prep. with acc. *to, towards, near*.  
With the gerund or gerundive, *to,  
for*
- ad-aequō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make  
equal, make level with*
- ad-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead  
to; move, induce*
- ad-eō**, -ire, -iī, -itus, *go to, approach,  
draw near, visit, with acc.* (§ 413)
- ad-ferō**, **ad-ferre**, **at-tulī**, **ad-lātus**,  
*bring, convey; report, announce;  
render, give* (§ 426)
- ad-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [ad, to, +  
faciō, do], *affect, visit*
- adflīctātus**, -a, -um, adj. [part. of  
**adflīctō**, *shatter*], *shattered*
- ad-fligō**, -ere, -flixi, -flictus, *dash  
upon, strike upon; harass, distress*
- ad-hibeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus [ad, to, +  
habeō, hold], *apply, employ, use*
- ad-hūc**, adv. *hitherto, as yet, thus far*
- aditus**, -ūs, m. [adeō, approach],  
*approach, access; entrance*. Cf.  
**adventus**
- ad-ligō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bind to,  
fasten*
- ad-loquor**, -loquī, -locūtus sum,  
dep. verb [ad, to, + loquor,  
*speak*], *speak to, address,*  
with acc.
- ad-ministrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,  
*manage, direct*
- admīrātiō**, -ōnis, f. [admīror, wonder  
*at*], *admiration, astonishment*
- ad-moveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move  
to; apply, employ*
- ad-propinquō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,  
*come near, approach, with dat.*
- ad-sum**, -esse, -fuī, -futūres, *be  
present; assist; with dat.*, § 426
- adulēscēns**, -entis, m. and f. [part. of
- altitūdō**, -inis, f. [altus, high], *height*
- altus**, -a, -um, adj. *high, tall, deep*
- Amāzonēs**, -um, f. plur. *Amazons, a  
fabled tribe of warlike women*
- ambō**, -ae, -ō, adj. (decl. like duo),  
*both*
- amicē**, adv. [amicus, friendly], superl.  
**amicissimē**, *in a friendly manner*
- amicīō**, -ire, —, -ictus [am-, about,  
+ iaciō, throw], *throw around,  
wrap about, clothe*
- amicitia**, -ae, f. [amicus, friend],  
*friendship*
- amicus**, -a, -um, adj. [amō, love],  
*friendly*. As a noun, **amicus**, -ī, m.  
*friend*
- ā-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send  
away; lose*
- amō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *love, like, be  
fond of* (§ 488)
- amphitheātrum**, -ī, n. *amphitheater*
- amplus**, -a, -um, adj. *large, ample;  
honorable, noble*
- an**, conj. *or*, introducing the second  
part of a double question
- ancilla**, -ae, f. *maidservant*
- ancora**, -ae, f. *anchor*
- Andromeda**, -ae, f. *Androm'eda,*  
daughter of Cepheus and wife of  
Perseus
- angulus**, -ī, m. *angle, corner*
- anim-advertō**, -ere, -tī, -sus  
[animus, mind, + advertō, turn  
to], *turn the mind to, notice*
- animal**, -ālis, n. [anima, breath],  
*animal* (§ 465. b)
- animōsus**, -a, -um, adj. *spirited*
- animus**, -ī, m. [anima, breath], *mind,  
heart; spirit, courage, feeling; in  
this sense often plural*
- annus**, -ī, m. *year*
- ante**, prep. with acc. *before*
- anteā**, adv. [ante], *before, formerly*
- antīquus**, -a, -um, adj. [ante, before],  
*former, ancient, old*
- aper**, aprī, m. *wild boar*
- Apollō**, -inis, m. *Apollo, son of Jupiter  
and Latona, brother of Diana*
- ap-pāreō**, -ēre, -uī, — [ad + pāreō,  
*appear*], *appear*
- ap-pellō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call by  
name, name*. Cf. **nōminō**, **vocō**
- Appius**, -a, -um, adj. *Appian*
- ap-plicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *apply,  
direct, turn*
- apud**, prep. with acc. *among; at, at the  
house of*
- aqua**, -ae, f. *water*
- aquila**, -ae, f. *eagle*
- āra**, -ae, f. *altar*
- arbitror**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *think,  
suppose* (§ 420. c). Cf. **exīstimō**,  
**putō**
- arbor**, -oris, f. *tree* (§ 247. 1. a)
- Arcadia**, -ae, f. *Arcadia, a district in  
southern Greece*
- ārdeō**, -ēre, ārsī, ārsūrus, *be on fire,*

**adolēscō**, *grow*, a youth, young man, young person  
**adventus**, **-ūs**, m. [**ad**, to, + **veniō**, come], approach, arrival (§ 466)  
**adversus**, **-a**, **-um**, adj. [part. of **advertō**, turn to], turned towards, facing; contrary, adverse.  
**rēs adversae**, adversity  
**aedificium**, **aedifi' cī**, n. [**aedificō**, build], building, edifice  
**aedificō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus** [**aedēs**, house, + **faciō**, make], build  
**aeger**, **aegra**, **aegrum**, adj. sick, feeble  
**aequālis**, **-e**, adj. equal, like. As a noun, **aequālis**, **-is**, m. or f. one of the same age  
**aequus**, **-a**, **-um**, adj. even, level; equal  
**Aesōpus**, **-ī**, m. Aesop, a writer of fables  
**aestās**, **-ātis**, f. summer, **initā aestāte**, at the beginning of summer  
**aetās**, **-ātis**, f. age  
**Aethiopia**, **-ae**, f. Ethiopia, a country in Africa  
**Āfrica**, **-ae**, f. Africa  
**Āfricānus**, **-a**, **-um**, adj. of Africa. A name given to Scipio for his victories in Africa  
**ager**, **agrī**, m. field, farm, land (§ 462. c)  
**agger**, **-eris**, m. mound  
**agmen**, **-inis**, n. [**agō**, drive], an army on the march, column.  
**primum agmen**, the van  
**agō**, **-ere**, **ēgī**, **āctus**, drive, lead; do, perform.  
**vītā agere**, pass life  
**agricola**, **-ae**, m. [**ager**, field, + **colō**, cultivate], farmer  
**agrī cultūra**, **-ae**, f. agriculture  
**āla**, **-ae**, f. wing  
**alacer**, **-cris**, **-cre**, adj. active, eager. Cf. **ācer**  
**alacritās**, **-ātis**, f. [**alacer**, active], eagerness, alacrity  
**alacriter**, adv. [**alacer**, active], comp **alacrius**, **alacerrimē**, actively, eagerly  
**albus**, **-a**, **-um**, adj., white  
**alcēs**, **-is**, f. elk  
**Alcmēna**, **-ae**, f. Alcme'na, the mother of Hercules  
**aliquis** (**-quī**), **-qua**, **-quid** (**-quod**), indef. pron. some one, some (§ 487)  
**alius**, **-a**, **-ud** (gen. **-ius**, dat. **-ī**), adj. another, other.  
**alius ... alius**, one ... another.  
**aliī ... aliī**, some ... others (§ 110)  
**Alpēs**, **-ium**, f. plur. the Alps  
**alter**, **-era**, **-erum** (gen. **-ius**, dat. **-ī**), adj. the one, the other (of two).  
**alter ... alter**, the one ... the other (§ 110)

*blaze, burn*  
**arduus**, **-a**, **-um**, adj. steep  
**Arīcia**, **-ae**, f. Arīcia, a town on the Appian Way, near Rome  
**ariēs**, **-etis**, m. battering-ram (p. 221)  
**arma**, **-ōrum**, n. plur. arms, weapons. Cf. **tēlum**  
**armātus**, **-a**, **-um**, adj. [**armō**, arm], armed, equipped  
**arō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, plow, till  
**ars**, **artis**, f. art, skill  
**articulus**, **-i**, m. joint  
**ascrībō**, **-ere**, **-scripsī**, **-scriptus** [**ad**, in addition, + **scribō**, write], enroll, enlist  
**Āsia**, **-ae**, f. Asia, i.e. Asia Minor  
**at**, conj. but. Cf. **autem**, **sed**  
**Athēnae**, **-ārum**, f. plur. Athens  
**Atlās**, **-antis**, m. Atlas, a Titan who was said to hold up the sky  
**at-que**, **ac**, conj. and, and also, and what is more. **atque** may be used before either vowels or consonants, **ac** before consonants only  
**attentus**, **-a**, **-um**, adj. [part. of **attendō**, direct (the mind) toward], attentive, intent on, careful  
**at-tonitus**, **-a**, **-um**, adj. thunderstruck, astounded  
**audācia**, **-ae**, f. [**audāx**, bold], boldness, audacity  
**audācter**, adv. [**audāx**, bold], compared **audācius**, **audācissimē**, boldly  
**audāx**, **-ācis**, adj. bold, daring  
**audeō**, **-ēre**, **ausus sum**, dare  
**audiō**, **-īre**, **-ivī** or **-īī**, **-itus**, hear, listen to (§§ 420.d; 491)  
**Augēās**, **-ae**, m. Augē'as, a king whose stables Hercules cleaned  
**aura**, **-ae**, f. air, breeze  
**aurātus**, **-a**, **-um**, adj. [**aurum**, gold], adorned with gold  
**aureus**, **-a**, **-um**, adj. [**aurum**, gold], golden  
**aurum**, **-ī**, n. gold  
**aut**, conj. or.  
**aut ... aut**, either ... or  
**autem**, conj., usually second, never first, in the clause, but, moreover, however, now. Cf. **at**, **sed**  
**auxilium**, **auxi' li**, n. help, aid, assistance; plur. auxiliaries  
**ā-vertō**, **-ere**, **-tī**, **-sus**, turn away, turn aside  
**avis**, **-is**, f. bird (§ 243. 1)

## B

**ballista**, **-ae**, f. ballista, an engine for hurling missiles (p. 220)  
**balteus**, **-ī**, m. belt, sword belt  
**barbarus**, **-ī**, m. barbarian, savage  
**bellum**, **-ī**, n. war.  
**bellum inferre**, with dat. make war upon  
**bene**, adv. [for **bonē**, from **bonus**], compared **melius**, **optimē**, well

**bis**, adv. twice  
**bonus**, **-a**, **-um**, adj. compared **melior**, **optimus**, good, kind (§ 469. a)  
**bōs**, **bovis** (gen. plur. **bovm** or **bovm**, dat. and abl. plur. **bōbus** or **būbus**), m. and f. ox, cow  
**bracchium**, **bracchi**, n. arm  
**brevis**, **-e**, adj. short

**benignē**, adv. [**benignus**, *kind*], compared **benignius**, **benignissimē**, *kindly*  
**benignus**, -a, -um, adj. *good-natured*, *kind*, often used with dat.  
**binī**, -ae, -a, distributive numeral adj. *two each*, *two at a time* (§ 334)

C. abbreviation for **Gāius**, Eng. *Caius*  
**cadō**, -ere, **ce'cidi**, **cāsūrus**, *fall*  
**caedēs**, -is, f. [**caedō**, *cut*], (*a cutting down*), *slaughter*, *carnage* (§ 465. a)  
**caelum**, -ī, n. *sky*, *heavens*  
**Caesar**, -aris, m. *Cæsar*, the famous general, statesman, and writer  
**calamitās**, -ātis, f. *loss*, *calamity*, *defeat*, *disaster*  
**calcar**, -āris, n. *spur* (§ 465. b)  
**Campānia**, -ae, f. *Campania*, a district of central Italy. See map  
**Campānus**, -a, -um, adj. *of Campania*  
**campus**, -i, m. *plain*, *field*, esp. the *Campus Martius*, along the Tiber just outside the walls of Rome  
**canis**, -is, m. and f. *dog*  
**canō**, -ere, **ce'cini**, —, *sing*  
**cantō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**canō**, *sing*], *sing*  
**Capēnus**, -a, -um, adj. *of Capena*, esp. the *Porta Cape'na*, the gate at Rome leading to the Appian Way  
**capiō**, -ere, **cēpi**, **captus**, *take*, *seize*, *capture* (§ 492)  
**Capitōlinus**, -a, -um, adj. *belonging to the Capitol*, *Capitoline*  
**Capitōlium**, **Capitō'li**, n. [**caput**, *head*], *the Capitol*, the hill at Rome on which stood the temple of Jupiter Capitolinus and the citadel  
**capsa**, -ae, f. *box* for books  
**captivus**, -ī, m. [**capiō**, *take*], *captive*  
**Capua**, -ae, f. *Capua*, a large city of Campania. See map  
**caput**, -itis, n. *head* (§ 464. 2. b)  
**carcer**, -eris, m. *prison*, *jail*  
**carrus**, -ī, m. *cart*, *wagon*  
**cārus**, -a, -um, adj. *dear*; *precious*  
**casa**, -ae, f. *hut*, *cottage*  
**castellum**, -ī, n. [dim. of **castrum**, *fort*], *redoubt*, *fort*  
**castrum**, -ī, n. *fort*. Usually in the plural, **castra**, -ōrum, a military camp.  
**castra pōnere**, *to pitch camp*  
**cāsus**, -us, m. [**cadō**, *fall*], *chance*; *misfortune*, *loss*  
**catapulta**, -ae, f. *catapult*, an engine for hurling stones  
**catēna**, -ae, f. *chain*  
**caupōna**, -ae, f. *inn*  
**causa**, -ae, f. *cause*, *reason*, **quā dē causā**, *for this reason*  
**cēdō**, -ere, **cessī**, **cessūrus**, *give way*, *retire*  
**celer**, -eris, -ere, adj. *swift*, *fleet*  
**celeritās**, -ātis, f. [**celer**, *swift*], *swiftness*, *speed*  
**celeriter**, adv. [**celer**, *swift*], compared **celerius**, **celerrimē**, *swiftly*  
**cēna**, -ae, f. *dinner*  
**centum**, indecl. numeral adj. *hundred*  
**centuriō**, -ōnis, m. *centurion*, *captain*  
**Cēpheus** (dissyl.), -eī (acc. **Cēphea**), m. *Cepheus*, a king of Ethiopia and father of Andromeda

## C

**com-primō**, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [**com-**, *together*, + **premō**, *press*], *press together*, *grasp*, *seize*  
**con-cidō**, -ere, -cidi, — [**com-**, intensive, + **cadō**, *fall*], *fall down*  
**concilium**, **conci'li**, n. *meeting*, *council*  
**con-clūdō**, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus [**com-**, intensive, + **claudō**, *close*], *shut up*, *close*; *end*, *finish*  
**con-currō**, -ere, -currī, -cursus [**com-**, *together*, + **currō**, *run*], *run together*; *rally*, *gather*  
**condiciō**, -ōnis, f. [**com-**, *together*, + **dicō**, *talk*], *agreement*, *condition*, *terms*  
**con-dōnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pardon*  
**con-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *hire*  
**cōn-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *bring together*.  
**sē cōnferre**, *betake one's self*  
**cōn-fertus**, -a, -um, adj. *crowded*, *thick*  
**cōn-festim**, adv. *immediately*  
**cōn-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [**com-**, completely, + **faciō**, *do*], *make*, *complete*, *accomplish*, *finish*  
**cōn-firmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make firm*, *establish*, *strengthen*, *affirm*, *assert*  
**cōn-fluō**, -ere, -flūxī, —, *flow together*  
**cōn-fugiō**, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, *flee for refuge*, *flee*  
**con-iciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [**com-**, intensive, + **iaciō**, *throw*], *hurl*  
**con-iungō**, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūunctus [**com-**, *together*, + **iungō**, *join*], *join together*, *unite*  
**con-iūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**com-**, *together*, + **iūrō**, *swear*], *unite by oath*, *conspire*  
**con-locō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**com-**, *together*, + **locō**, *place*], *arrange*, *place*, *station*  
**conloquium**, **conlo'quī**, n. [**com-**, *together*, + **loquor**, *speak*], *conversation*, *conference*  
**cōnor**, -ārī, -ātus **sum**, dep. verb, *endeavor*, *attempt*, *try*  
**cōn-scendō**, -ere, -scendi, -scēsus [**com-**, intensive, + **scandō**, *climb*], *climb up*, *ascend*.  
**nāvem cōnscendere**, *embark*, *go on board*  
**cōn-scribō**, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptus [**com-**, *together*, + **scribō**, *write*], (*write together*), *enroll*, *enlist*  
**cōn-secrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**com-**, intensive, + **sacrō**, *consecrate*], *consecrate*, *devote*  
**cōn-sequor**, -sequī, -secūtus **sum**, dep. verb [**com-**, intensive, + **sequor**, *follow*], *pursue*; *overtake*; *win*  
**cōn-servō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**com-**, intensive, + **servō**, *save*], *preserve*, *save*  
**cōnsilium**, **cōnsi'li**, n. *plan*, *purpose*,



**Cerberus, -ī, m.** *Cerberus*, the fabled three-headed dog that guarded the entrance to Hades

**certāmen, -inis, n.** [**certō**, *struggle*], *struggle, contest, rivalry*

**certē**, adv. [**certus**, *sure*], compared **certius**, **certissimē**, *surely, certainly*

**certus, -a, -um**, adj. *fixed, certain, sure*

**aliquem certiorem facere** (*to make some one more certain*), *to inform some one*

**cervus, -ī, m.** *stag, deer*

**cessō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *delay, cease*

**cibāria, -ōrum**, n. plur. *food, provisions*

**cibus, -ī, m.** *food, victuals*

**Cimbri, -ōrum**, m. plur. *the Cimbri*

**Cimbricus, -a, -um**, adj. *Cimbrian*

**cinctus, -a, -um**, adj. [part. of **cingō**, *surround*], *girt, surrounded*

**cingō, -ere, cinxī, cinctus**, *gird, surround*

**circiter**, adv. *about*

**circum**, prep, with acc. *around*

**circum -dō, -dare, -dedī, -datus**, *place around, surround, inclose*

**circum -eō, -ire, -iī, -itus**, *go around*

**circum-sistō, -ere, circum-steti**, —, *stand around, surround*

**circum-veniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus** (*come around*), *surround*

**citerior, -ius**, adj. in comp., superl. **citimus**, *hither, nearer* (§ 475)

**civilis, -e**, adj. [**civis**], *civil*

**civis, -is**, m. and f. *citizen* (§ 243. 1)

**civitas, -ātis**, f. [**civis**, *citizen*], (*body of citizens*), *state; citizenship*

**clāmor, -ōris**, m. *shout, cry*

**clārus, -a, -um**, adj. *clear; famous, renowned; bright, shining*

**classis, -is**, f. *fleet*

**claudō, -ere, -sī, -sus**, *shut, close*

**clavus, -ī, m.** *stripe*

**cliēns, -entis**, m. *dependent, retainer, client* (§ 465. a)

**Cocles, -itis**, m. (*blind in one eye*), *Cocles*, the surname of Horatius

**co-gnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnītus**, *learn, know, understand*. Cf. **sciō** (§ 420. b)

**cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus** [**co(m)-**, *together*, + **agō**, *drive*], (*drive together*), *collect; compel, drive*

**cohors, cohortis**, f. *cohort*, the tenth part of a legion, about 360 men

**collis, -is**, m. *hill*, **in summō colle**, *on top of the hill* (§ 247. 2. a)

**collum, -ī, n.** *neck*

**colō, -ere, coluī, cultus**, *cultivate, till; honor, worship; devote one's self to*

**columna, -ae**, f. *column, pillar*

**com- (col-, con-, cor-, co-)**, a prefix, *together, with*, or intensifying the meaning of the root word

**coma, -ae**, f. *hair*

**comes, -itis**, m. and f. [**com-**, *together*, + **eō**, *go*], *companion, comrade*

**comitātus, -ūs**, m. [**comitor**, *accompany*], *escort, company*

**comitor, -ārī, -ātus sum**, dep. verb [**comes**, *companion*], *accompany*

**com-meātus, -ūs**, m. *supplies*

**com-minus**, adv. [**com-**, *together*, + **manus**, *hand*], *hand to hand*

**com-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus**, *join*

*design; wisdom*

**cōn-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus** [**com-**, *intensive*, + **sistō**, *cause to stand*], *stand firmly, halt, take one's stand*

**cōn-spiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus** [**com-**, *intensive*, + **spiciō**, *spy*], *look at attentively, perceive, see*

**cōnstantia, -ae**, f. *firmness, steadiness, perseverance*

**cōn-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus** [**com-**, *intensive*, + **statuō**, *set*], *establish, determine, resolve*

**cōn-stō, -āre, -stitī, -stātūrus** [**com-**, *together*, + **stō**, *stand*], *agree; be certain; consist of*

**cōnsul, -ulis**, m. *consul* (§ 464. 2. a)

**cōn-sūmō, -ere, -sūmpsi, -sūmptus** [**com-**, *intensive*, + **sumō**, *take*], *consume, use up*

**con-tendō, -ere, -dī, -tus**, *strain; hasten; fight, contend, struggle*

**con-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus** [**com-**, *together*; + **teneō**, *hold*], *hold together, hem in, contain; restrain*

**contra**, prep, with acc. *against, contrary to*

**con-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus** [**com-**, *together*, + **trahō**, *draw*], *draw together; of sails, shorten, furl*

**contrōversia, -ae**, f. *dispute, quarrel*

**con-veniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus** [**com-**, *together*, + **veniō**, *come*], *come together; meet, assemble*

**con-vertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus** [**com-**, *intensive*, + **vertō**, *turn*], *turn*

**con-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [**com-**, *together*, + **vocō**, *call*], *call together*

**co-orior, -irī, -ortus sum**, dep. verb [**com-**, *intensive*, + **orior**, *rise*], *rise, break forth*

**cōpia, -ae**, f. [**com-**, *intensive*, + **ops**, *wealth*], *abundance, wealth, plenty*. Plur. **cōpiae, -ārum**, *troops*

**coquō, -ere, coxī, coctus**, *cook*

**Corinthus, -ī, f.** *Corinth*, the famous city on the Isthmus of Corinth

**Cornēlia, -ae**, f. *Cornelia*, daughter of Scipio and mother of the Gracchi

**Cornēlius, Cornē'li**, m. *Cornelius*, a Roman name

**cornū, -ūs**, n. *horn; wing of an army, ā dextrō cornū, on the right wing* (§ 466)

**corōna, -ae**, f. *garland, wreath; crown*

**corōnātus, -a, -um**, adj. *crowned*

**corpus, -oris**, n. *body*

**cor-ripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus** [**com-**, *intensive*, + **rapiō**, *seize*], *seize, grasp*

**cotidiānus, -a, -um**, adj. *daily*

**cotidiē**, adv. *daily*

**crēber, -bra, -brum**, adj. *thick, crowded, numerous, frequent*

**crēdō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditus**, *trust, believe*, with dat. (§ 501.14)

**cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *burn*

**creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *make; elect, appoint*

**Creōn, -ontis**, m. *Creon*, a king of Corinth

**crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus**, *rise, grow, increase*

**Crēta, -ae**, f. *Crete*, a large island in the Mediterranean

**Crētaeus, -a, -um**, adj. *Cretan*

together; commit, intrust.  
**proelium committere**, join battle.  
**sē committere** with dat, trust one's self to  
**commodē**, adv. [**commodus**, fit], compared **commodius**, **commodissimē**, conveniently, fitly  
**commodus**, -a, -um, adj. suitable, fit  
**com-mōtus**, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **commoveō**, move], aroused, moved  
**com-parō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, intensive, + **parō**, prepare], prepare; provide, get  
**com-pleō**, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus [com-, intensive, + **pleō**, fill], fill up  
**complexus**, -ūs, m. embrace

**crūs**, **crūris**, n. leg  
**crūstulum**, -ī, n. pastry, cake  
**cubile**, -is, n. bed  
**cultūra**, -ae, f. culture, cultivation  
**cum**, conj. with the indic. or subjv. when; since; although (§ 501.46)  
**cum**, prep, with abl. with (§ 209)  
**cupidē**, adv. [**cupidus**, desirous], compared **cupidius**, **cupidissimē**, eagerly  
**cupiditās**, -ātis, f. [**cupidus**, desirous], desire, longing  
**cupiō**, -ere, -īvī or -īi, -ītus, desire, wish. Cf. **volō**  
**cūr**, adv. why, wherefore  
**cūra**, -ae, f. care, pains; anxiety  
**cūria**, -ae, f. senate house  
**cūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cūra, care], care for, attend to, look after  
**currō**, -ere, **cucurrī**, **cursor**, run  
**currus**, -ūs, m. chariot  
**cursor**, -ūs, m. course  
**custodiō**, -ire, -īvī, -ītus [custōs, guard], guard, watch

## D

**Daedalus**, -ī, m. *Dæd'alus*, the supposed inventor of the first flying machine  
**Dāvus**, -ī, m. *Davus*, name of a slave  
**dē**, prep, with abl. down from, from; concerning, about, for (§ 209).  
**quā dē causā**, for this reason, wherefore  
**dea**, -ae, f. goddess (§ 461. a)  
**dēbeō**, -ēre, -uī, -ītus [dē, from, + **habeō**, hold], owe, ought, should  
**decem**, indecl. numeral adj. ten  
**dē-cernō**, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus [dē, from, + **cernō**, separate], decide, decree  
**dē-cidō**, -ere, -cidī, — [dē, down, + **cadō**, fall], fall down  
**decimus**, -a, -um, numeral adj. tenth  
**dēclivis**, -e, adj. sloping downward  
**dē-dō**, -ere, -didi, -ditus, give up, surrender, **sē dēdere**, surrender one's self  
**dē-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [dē, down, + **dūcō**, lead], lead down, escort  
**dē-fendō**, -ere, -dī, -fēnsus, ward off, repel, defend  
**dē-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [dē, down, + **ferō**, bring], bring down; report, announce (§ 426)  
**dē-fessus**, -a, -um, adj. tired out, weary  
**dē-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [dē, from, + **faciō**, make], fail, be wanting; revolt from  
**dē-figō**, -ere, -fixī, -fixus [dē, down, + **figō**, fasten], fasten, fix  
**dē-iciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [dē, down, + **iaciō**, hurl], hurl down; bring down, kill  
**de-inde**, adv. (from thence), then, in the next place  
**dēlectō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, delight  
**dēleō**, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, blot out, destroy  
**dēliberō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, weigh, deliberate, ponder  
**dē-ligō**, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus [dē, from, + **legō**, gather], choose, select  
**Delphicus**, -a, -um, adj. Delphic  
**dēmīssus**, -a, -um [part. of **dēmīttō**, send down], downcast, humble

**dīcō**, -ere, **dīxī**, **dictus** (imv. **dīc**), say, speak, tell. Usually introduces indirect discourse (§ 420. a)  
**dictātor**, -ōris, m. [**dictō**, dictate], dictator, a chief magistrate with unlimited power  
**diēs**, -ēi or **diē**, m., sometimes f. in sing., day (§ 467)  
**dif-ferō**, -ferre, **distulī**, **dilātus** [dis-, apart, + **ferō**, carry], carry apart; differ.  
**differre inter sē**, differ from each other  
**dif-ficilis**, -e, adj. [dis-, not, + **facilis**, easy], hard, difficult (§ 307)  
**difficultās**, -ātis, f. [**difficilis**, hard], difficulty  
**diligenter**, adv. [**diligēns**, careful], compared **diligentius**, **diligentissimē**, industriously, diligently  
**diligentia**, -ae, f. [**diligēns**, careful], industry, diligence  
**dī-micō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, fight, struggle  
**dī-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [dī-, off, + **mittō**, send], send away, dismiss, disband.  
**dīmītere animum in**, direct one's mind to, apply one's self to  
**Diomedēs**, -is, m. *Dī-o-mē dēs*, a name  
**dis-**, **dī-**, a prefix expressing separation, off, apart, in different directions. Often negatives the meaning  
**dis-cēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessus [dis-, apart, + **cēdō**, go], depart from, leave, withdraw, go away  
**dis-cernō**, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus [dis-, apart, + **cernō**, sift], separate; distinguish  
**disciplina**, -ae, f. instruction, training, discipline  
**discipulus**, -ī, m. [**discō**, learn], pupil, disciple  
**discō**, -ere, **didicī**, —, learn  
**dis-cutiō**, -ere, -cussī, -cussus [dis-, apart, + **quatiō**, shake], shatter, dash to pieces  
**dis-pōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus [dis-, apart, + **pōnō**, put], put here and

**dē-mōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus** [dē, out, + **mōnstrō**, point], point out, show  
**dēmum**, adv. at last, not till then.  
**tum dēmum**, then at last  
**dēnique**, adv. at last, finally. Cf. **postrēmō**  
**dēns, dentis**, m. tooth (§ 247. 2. a)  
**dēnsus, -a, -um**, adj. dense, thick  
**dē-pendeō, -ēre, —, —** [dē, down, + **pendeō**, hang], hang from, hang down  
**dē-plōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus** [dē, intensive, + **plōrō**, wail], bewail, deplore  
**dē-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus** [dē, down, + **pōnō**, put], put down  
**dē-scendō, -ere, -dī, -scēsus** [dē, down, + **scandō**, climb], climb down, descend  
**dē-scribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus** [dē, down, + **scribō**, write], write down  
**dēsiderō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, long for  
**dē-siliō, -ire, -uī, -sultus** [dē, down, + **saliō**, leap], leap down  
**dē-spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus** [dē, away from, + **spērō**, hope], despair  
**dē-spiciō, -ere, -spēxi, -spectus** [dē, down], look down upon, despise  
**dē-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus** [dē, away from, + **sum**, be], be wanting, lack, with dat. (§ 426)  
**deus, -i**, m. god (§ 468)  
**dē-volvō, -ere, -volvī, -volūtus** [dē, down, + **volvō**, roll], roll down  
**dē-vorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus** [dē, down, + **vorō**, swallow], devour  
**dexter, -tra, -trum (-tera, -terum)**, adj. to the right, right.  
**ā dextrō cornū**, on the right wing  
**Diāna, -ae**, f. Diana, goddess of the moon and twin sister of Apollo

there, arrange, station  
**dis-similis, -e**, adj. [dis-, apart, + **similis**, like], unlike, dissimilar (§ 307)  
**dis-tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus**, divide, distribute  
**diū**, adv., compared **diūtius**, **diūtissimē**, for a long time, long (§ 477)  
**dō, dare, dedī, datus**, give.  
**in fugam dare**, put to flight.  
**alicui negōtium dare**, employ some one  
**doceō, -ēre, -uī, -tus**, teach, show  
**doctrīna, -ae**, f. [doctor, teacher], teaching, learning, wisdom  
**dolor, -ōris**, m. pain, sorrow  
**domesticus, -a, -um**, adj. [domus, house], of the house, domestic  
**domicilium, domici'li**, n. dwelling; house, abode. Cf. **domus**  
**domina, -ae**, f. mistress (of the house), lady (§ 461)  
**dominus, -i**, m. master (of the house), owner, ruler (§ 462)  
**domus, -ūs**, f. house, home.  
**domī**, locative, at home (§ 468)  
**dormiō, -ire, -ivī, -itus**, sleep  
**dracō, -ōnis**, m. serpent, dragon  
**dubitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, hesitate  
**dubius, -a, -um**, adj. [duo, two], (moving two ways), doubtful, dubious  
**du-centī, -ae, -a**, numeral adj. two hundred  
**dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus** (imv. dūc), lead, conduct  
**dum**, conj. while, as long as  
**duo, duae, duo**, numeral adj. two (§ 479)  
**duo-decim**, indecl. numeral adj. twelve  
**dūrus, -a, -um**, adj. hard, tough; harsh, pitiless, bitter  
**dux, ducis**, m. and f. [cf. dūcō, lead], leader, commander

## E

**ē** or **ex**, prep, with abl. out of, from, off, of (§ 209)  
**eburneus, -a, -um**, adj. of ivory  
**ecce**, adv. see! behold! there! here!  
**ē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus** [ē, out, + **dūcō**, lead], lead out, draw out  
**ef-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus** [ex, thoroughly, + **faciō**, do], work out; make, cause  
**ef-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus** [ex, from, + **fugiō**, flee], escape  
**egeō, -ēre, -uī, —, —**, be in need of, lack, with abl. (§ 501.32)  
**ego**, pers. pron. I; plur. **nōs**, we (§ 480)  
**ē-gredior, -i, ēgressus sum**, dep. verb [ē, out of, + **gradior**, go], go out, go forth.  
**ē nāvī ēgredi**, disembark  
**ē-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus** [ē, forth, + **iaciō**, hurl], hurl forth, expel  
**elementum, -i**, n., in plur. first principles, rudiments  
**elephantus, -i**, m. elephant  
**Ēlis, Ēlidis**, f. E'lis, a district of southern Greece  
**emō, -ere, emī, emptus**, buy, purchase  
**enim**, conj., never standing first, for,

**Etrūscī, -ōrum**, m. the Etruscans, the people of Etruria. See map of Italy  
**Eurōpa, -ae**, f. Europe  
**Eurystheus, -i**, m. Eurys'theus, a king of Tiryns, a city in southern Greece  
**ē-vādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus** [ē, out, + **vādō**, go], go forth, escape  
**ex**, see **ē**  
**exanimātus, -a, -um** [part. of **exanimō**, put out of breath (anima)], adj. out of breath, tired; lifeless  
**ex-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus** [ex, out, + **capiō**, take], welcome, receive  
**exemplum, -i**, n. example, model  
**ex-eō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus** [ex, out, + **eō**, go], go out, go forth (§ 413)  
**ex-erceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus** [ex, out, + **arceō**, shut], (shut out), employ, train, exercise, use  
**exercitus, -us**, m. [exerceō, train], army  
**ex-istimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus** [ex, out, + **aestimō**, reckon], estimate; think, judge (§ 420. c). Cf. **arbitror, putō**  
**ex-orior, -irī, -ortus sum**, dep. verb [ex, forth, + **orior**, rise], come forth, rise

*in fact, indeed.* Cf. **nam**  
**Ennius, Ennī**, m. *Ennius*, the father of Roman poetry, born 239 B.C.  
**eō, ire, īi (ivī), itūrus, go** (§ 499)  
**eō**, adv. *to that place, thither*  
**Ēpīrus, -ī**, f. *Epi'rus*, a district in the north of Greece  
**eques, -itis**, m. [**equus, horse**], *horseman, cavalryman*  
**equitātus, -ūs**, m. [**equitō, ride**], *cavalry*  
**equus, -i**, m. *horse*  
**ē-rigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus** [ē, out, + **regō, make straight**], *raise up*  
**ē-ripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus** [ē, out of, + **rapiō, seize**], *seize, rescue*  
**ē-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus** [ē, forth, + **rumpō, break**], *burst forth*  
**ēruptiō, -ōnis**, f. *sally*  
**Erymanthius, -a, -um**, adj. *Erymanthian, of Erymanthus*, a district in southern Greece  
**et**, conj. *and, also*  
**et ... et, both ... and.** Cf. **atque, ac, -que**  
**etiam**, adv. (rarely conj.) [**et, also, + iam, now**], *yet, still; also, besides.* Cf. **quoque**.  
**nōn solum ... sed etiam, not only ... but also**

**fābula, -ae**, f. *story, tale, fable*  
**facile**, adv. [**facilis, easy**], compared **facilius, facillimē, easily** (§ 322)  
**facilis, -e**, adj. [cf. **faciō, make**], *easy, without difficulty* (§ 307)  
**faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus** (imv. **fac**), *make, do; cause, bring about.*  
**impetum facere in, make an attack upon.**  
**proelium facere, fight a battle.**  
**iter facere, make a march or journey.**  
**aliquem certiōrem facere, inform some one.**  
**facere verba prō, speak in behalf of.**  
Passive **fiō, fierī, factus sum, be done, happen.**  
**certior fierī, be informed**  
**fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus, trip, betray, deceive**  
**fāma, -ae**, f. *report, rumor; renown, fame, reputation*  
**famēs, -is** (abl. **famē**), f. *hunger*  
**familia, -ae**, f. *servants, slaves; household, family*  
**fascēs, -ium** (plur. of **fascis**), f. *fascēs* (p. 225)  
**fastigium, fasti'gī**, n. *top; slope, descent*  
**fātum, -i**, n. *fate, destiny*  
**faucēs, -ium**, f. plur. *jaws, throat*  
**faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautūrus, be favorable to, favor, with dat.** (§ 501.14)  
**fēlix, -icis**, adj. *happy, lucky*  
**fēmina, -ae**, f. *woman.* Cf. **mulier**  
**fera, -ae**, f. [**ferus, wild**], *wild beast*  
**ferāx, -ācis**, adj. *fertile*  
**ferē, adv. about, nearly, almost**  
**ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear.**  
**graviter or molestē ferre, be annoyed** (§ 498)  
**ferreus, -a, -um**, adj. [**ferrum, iron**], *made of iron*

**expeditus, -a, -um**, adj. *without baggage*  
**ex-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus** [**ex, out, + pellō, drive**], *drive out*  
**ex-piō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [**ex, intensive, + piō, atone for**], *make amends for, atone for*  
**explōrātor, -ōris**, m. [**explōrō, investigate**], *spy, scout*  
**explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, examine, explore**  
**ex-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [**ex, out, + pugnō, fight**], *take by storm, capture*  
**exsilium, exsi'li**, n. [**exsul, exile**], *banishment, exile*  
**ex-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [**ex, out, + spectō, look**], *expect, wait*  
**ex-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus** [**ex, out, + struō, build**], *build up, erect*  
**exterus, -a, -um**, adj., compared **exterior, extrēmus** or **extimus**, *outside, outer* (§ 312)  
**extrā**, prep, with acc. *beyond, outside of*  
**ex-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus** [**ex, out, + trahō, drag**], *drag out, pull forth*  
**extrēmus, -a, -um**, adj., superl. of **exterus**, *utmost, farthest* (§ 312)

## F

**fiō, fierī, factus sum**, used as passive of **faciō**. See **faciō** (§ 500)  
**flamma, -ae**, f. *fire, flame*  
**flōs, flōris**, m. *flower*  
**fluctus, -ūs**, m. [of. **fluō, flow**], *flood, wave, billow*  
**flūmen, -inis**, n. [cf. **fluō, flow**], *river* (§ 464. 2. b)  
**fluō, -ere, flūxī, fluxus, flow**  
**fluvius, fluvī**, m. [cf. **fluō, flow**], *river*  
**fodiō, -ere, fōdī, fossus, dig**  
**fōns, fontis**, m. *fountain* (§ 247. 2. a)  
**fōrma, -ae**, f. *form, shape, appearance; beauty*  
**Formiae, -ārum**, f. *Formiae*, a town of Latium on the Appian Way. See map  
**forte**, adv. [abl. of **fors, chance**], *by chance*  
**fortis, -e**, adj. *strong; fearless, brave*  
**fortiter**, adv. [**fortis, strong**], compared **fortius, fortissimē, strongly; bravely**  
**fortūna, -ae**, f. [**fors, chance**], *chance, fate, fortune*  
**forum, -ī**, n. *market place*, esp. the **Forum Rōmānum**, where the life of Rome centered  
**Forum Appī, Forum of Appius**, a town in Latium on the Appian Way  
**fossa, -ae**, f. [cf. **fodiō, dig**], *ditch*  
**fragor, -ōris**, m. [cf. **frangō, break**], *crash, noise*  
**frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus, break**  
**frāter, -tris**, m. *brother*  
**fremitus, -ūs**, m. *loud noise*  
**frequentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, attend**  
**frētus, -a, -um**, adj. *supported, trusting.* Usually with abl. of means  
**frōns, frontis**, f. *front, ā fronte, in front*  
**frūctus, -ūs**, m. *fruit*  
**frūmentārius, -a, -um**, adj. *pertaining to grain.*

**fidēlis, -e**, adj. [**fidēs**, *trust*], *faithful, true*  
**fidēs, fideī** or **fidē**, *trust, faith; promise, word; protection.*  
**in fidem venīre**, *come under the protection.*  
**in fidē manēre**, *remain loyal*  
**filia, -ae** (dat. and abl. plur. **filiabus**), f. *daughter* (§ 461. a)  
**filius, fili** (voc. sing. **fili**), m. *son*  
**finis, -is**, m. *boundary, limit, end*; in plur. *territory, country* (§ 243. 1)  
**finitimus, -a, -um**, adj. [**finis**, *boundary*], *adjoining, neighboring.*  
 Plur. **finitimī, -ōrum**, m. *neighbors*

**Gāius, Gāi**, m. *Gaius*, a Roman name, abbreviated **C.**, English form *Caius*  
**Galba, -ae**, m. *Galba*, a Roman name  
**galea, -ae**, f. *helmet*  
**Gallia, -ae**, f. *Gaul*, the country comprising what is now Holland, Belgium, Switzerland, and France  
**Gallicus, -a, -um**, adj. *Gallic*  
**gallīna, -ae**, f. *hen, chicken*  
**Gallus, -i**, m. *a Gaul*  
**gaudium, gaudi**, n. *joy*  
**Genāva, -ae**, f. *Geneva*, a city in Switzerland  
**gēns, gentis**, f. [cf. **gignō**, *beget*], *race, family; people, nation, tribe*  
**genus, -eris**, n. *kind, variety*  
**Germānia, -ae**, f. *Germany*  
**Germānus, -i**, m. *a German*  
**gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus**, *carry, wear; wage.*  
**bellum gerere**, *wage war.*  
**rēs gestae**, *exploits.*  
**bene gerere**, *carry on successfully*

**habēna, -ae**, f. *halter, rein.*  
**habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus**, *have, hold; regard, consider, deem*  
**habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [cf. **habeō**, *have*],  *dwell, abide, inhabit.* Cf. **incolō, vivō**  
**hāc-tenus**, adv. *thus far*  
**Helvētīi, -ōrum**, m. *the Helvetii*, a Gallic tribe  
**Herculēs, -is**, m. *Hercules*, son of Jupiter and Alcmena, and god of strength  
**Hesperidēs, -um**, f. *the Hesperides*, daughters of Hesperus, who kept the garden of the golden apples  
**hic, haec, hoc**, demonstrative adj. and pron. *this* (of mine); as pers. pron. *he, she, it* (§ 481)  
**hīc**, adv. *here*  
**hiems, -emis**, f. *winter*  
**hīnc**, adv. [**hīc**, *here*], *from here, hence*  
**Hippolytē, -ēs**, f. *Hippolyte*, queen of the Amazons

**iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus**, *throw, hurl*  
**iam**, adv. *now, already.*  
**nec iam**, *and no longer*  
**Iāniculum, -i**, n. *the Janiculum*, one of the hills of Rome  
**iānuā, -ae**, f. *door*

**rēs frūmentāria, grain supplies**  
**frūmentum, -i**, n. *grain*  
**frūstrā**, adv. *in vain, vainly*  
**fuga, -ae**, f. [cf. **fugiō**, *flee*], *flight.*  
**in fugam dare**, *put to flight*  
**fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus**, *flee, run; avoid, shun*  
**fūmō, -are, —, —, —**, *smoke*  
**fūnis, -is**, m. *rope*  
**furor, -ōris**, m. [**furō**, *rage*], *madness.*  
**in furōrem incidere**, *go mad*

## G

**gladiātōrius, -a, -um**, adj. *gladiatorial*  
**gladius, gladī**, m. *sword*  
**glōria, -ae**, f. *glory, fame*  
**Gracchus, -i**, m. *Gracchus*, name of a famous Roman family  
**gracilis, -e**, adj. *slender* (§ 307)  
**Graeca, -ōrum**, n. plur. *Greek writings, Greek literature*  
**Graecē**, adv. *in Greek*  
**Graecia, -ae**, f. *Greece*  
**grammaticus, -i**, m. *grammarian*  
**grātia, -ae**, f. *thanks, gratitude*  
**grātus, -a, -um**, adj. *acceptable, pleasing.* Often with dat. (§ 501.16)  
**gravis, -ē**, adj. *heavy; disagreeable; serious, dangerous; earnest, weighty*  
**graviter**, adv. [**gravis**, *heavy*], compared **gravius, gravissimē**, *heavily; greatly, seriously.*  
**graviter ferre**, *bear ill, take to heart*  
**gubernātor, -ōris**, m. [**gubernō**, *pilot*], *pilot*

## H

**ho-diē**, adv. [modified form of **hōc diē**, *on this day*], *to-day*  
**homō, -inis**, m. and f. (*human being*), *man, person*  
**honestus, -a, -um**, adv. [**honor, honor**], *respected, honorable*  
**honor, -ōris**, m. *honor*  
**hōra, -ae**, f. *hour*  
**Horātius, Horā'ti**, m. *Horatius*, a Roman name  
**horribilis, -e**, adj. *terrible, horrible*  
**hortor, -āri, -ātus sum**, dep. verb, *urge, incite, exhort, encourage* (§ 493)  
**hortus, -i**, m. *garden*  
**hospitium, hospī'ti**, n. [**hospes, host**], *hospitality*  
**hostis, -is**, m. and f. *enemy, foe* (§ 465. a)  
**humilis, -e**, adj. *low, humble* (§ 307)  
**Hydra, -ae**, f. *the Hydra*, a mythical water snake slain by Hercules

## I

**in-gredior, -gredi, -gressus sum** [**in, in, + gradior, walk**], *advance, enter*  
**inimicus, -a, -um**, adj. [**in-**, *not, + amicus, friendly*], *hostile.* As a noun, **inimicus, -i**, m. *enemy, foe.*

**ibi**, adv. *there, in that place*  
**Īcarus, -ī**, m. *Ic'arus, the son of Dædalus*  
**ictus, -ūs**, m. [cf. **icō**, *strike*], *blow*  
**idem, e'adem, idem**, demonstrative pron. [**is** + **dem**], *same* (§ 481)  
**idōneus, -a, -um**, adj. *suitable, fit*  
**igitur**, conj., seldom the first word, *therefore, then*. Cf. **itaque**  
**ignis, -is**, m. *fire* (§§ 243.1; 247.2.a; 465.1)  
**ignōtus, -a, -um**, adj. [**in-**, *not*, + (**g**)**notus, known**], *unknown, strange*  
**ille, illa, illud**, demonstrative adj. and pron. *that* (yonder); as pers. pron. *he, she, it* (§ 481)  
**illic**, adv. [cf. **ille**], *yonder, there*  
**im-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus** [**in**, *against*, + **mittō, send**], *send against; let in*  
**immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [**in**, *upon*, + **mola, meal**], *sprinkle with sacrificial meal; offer, sacrifice*  
**im-mortālis, -e**, adj. [**in-**, *not*, + **mortalis, mortal**], *immortal*  
**im-mortālitās, -ātis**, f. [**immortālis, immortal**], *immortality*  
**im-parātus, -a, -um**, adj. [**in-**, *not*, + **parātus, prepared**], *unprepared*  
**impedimentum, -ī**, n. [**impediō, hinder**], *hindrance*; in plur. *baggage*  
**impeditus, -a, -um**, adj. [part. of **impediō, hinder**], *hindered, burdened*  
**im-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus** [**in**, *against*, + **pellō, strike**], *strike against; impel, drive, propel*  
**imperātor, -ōris**, m. [**imperō, command**], *general*  
**imperium, impe'rī**, n. [**imperō, command**], *command, order; realm, empire; power, authority*  
**imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *command, order*. Usually with dat. and an object clause of purpose (§ 501.41). With acc. object, *levy, impose*  
**impetus, -ūs**, m. *attack, impetum facere in, make an attack upon*  
**im-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus** [**in**, *upon*, + **pōnō, place**], *place upon; impose, assign*  
**in**, prep. with acc. *into, to, against, at, upon, towards*; with abl. *in, on*.  
**in reliquum tempus, for the future**  
**in-**, inseparable prefix. With nouns and adjectives often with a negative force, like English *un-*, *in-*  
**in-cautus, -a, -um**, adj. [**in-**, *not*, + **cautus, careful**], *off one's guard*  
**incendium, incendi**, n. *flame, fire*. Cf. **ignis, flamma**  
**in-cendō, -ere, -dī, -cēnsus**, *set fire to, burn*  
**in-cidō, -ere, -cidī**, —, [**in, in, on**, + **cadō, fall**], *fall in, fall on; happen*.  
**in furōrem incidere, go mad**  
**in-cipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus** [**in, on**, + **capiō, take**], *begin*  
**in-cognitus, -a, -um**, adj. [**in-**, *not*, + **cognitus, known**], *unknown*  
**in-colō, -ere, -uī**, —, [**in, in**, + **colō, dwell**], *inhabit; live*  
**incolumis, -e**, adj. *sound, safe, uninjured, imharmed*  
**in-crēdibilis, -e**, adj. [**in-**, *not*, + **crēdibilis, to be believed**],

Cf. **hostis**  
**initium, ini'tī**, *entrance, beginning*  
**initus, -a, -um**, part. of **ineō**.  
**initā aestāte**, *at the beginning of summer*  
**iniūria, -ae**, f. [**in, against**, + **iūs, law**], *injustice, wrong, injury*.  
**alicui iniūriās inferre, inflict wrongs upon some one**  
**inopia, -ae**, f. [**inops, needy**], *want, need, lack*  
**in-opināns, -antis**, adj. [**in-**, *not*, + **opināns, thinking**], *not expecting, taken by surprise*  
**inquit, said he, said she**. Regularly inserted in a direct quotation  
**in-rigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *irrigate, water*  
**in-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus** [**in**, *into*, + **rumpō, break**], *burst in, break in*  
**in-ruō, -ere, -ruī**, — [**in, in**, + **ruō, rush**], *rush in*  
**in-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum**, dep. verb [**in, on**, + **sequor, follow**], *follow on, pursue*  
**in-signē, -is**, n. *badge, decoration* (§ 465. b)  
**insignis, -e**, adj. *remarkable, noted*  
**instāns, -antis**, adj. [part. of **insto, be at hand**], *present, immediate*  
**in-stō, -āre, -stitī, -statūrus** [**in**, *upon*, + **stō, stand**], *stand upon; be at hand; pursue, press on*  
**instrūmentum, -ī**, n. *instrument*  
**in-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus** [**in**, *on*, + **struō, build**], *draw up*  
**insula, -ae**, f. *island*  
**integer, -gra, -grum**, *untouched, whole; fresh, new*  
**intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus** [**inter, between**, + **legō, choose**], *perceive, understand* (§ 420. d)  
**intentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *aim; threaten*  
**inter**, prep. with acc. *between, among; during, while* (§ 340)  
**interfectus, -a, -um**, adj. [part. of **inter-ficiō, kill**], *slain, dead*  
**inter-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus** [**inter, between**, + **faciō, make**], *put out of the way, kill*. Cf. **necō, occidō, trucidō**  
**interim**, adv. *meanwhile*  
**interior, -ius**, adj. *interior, inner* (§ 315)  
**inter-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus**, *leave off, suspend*  
**interpres, -etis**, m. and f. *interpreter*  
**inter-rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *question*  
**inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus** [**inter, between**, + **sum, be**], *be present, take part in*, with dat. (§ 501.15)  
**inter-vāllum, -ī**, n. *interval, distance*  
**intrā**, adv. and prep. with acc. *within, in*  
**intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *go into, enter*  
**in-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus** [**in**, *upon*, + **veniō, come**], *find*  
**invīsus, -a, -um**, adj. [part. of **invideō, envy**], *hated, detested*  
**Iolāus, -ī**, m. *I-o-lā'us, a friend of Hercules*  
**ipse, -a, -um**, intensive pron. *that very, this very; self, himself, herself, itself*, (§ 481)  
**īra, -ae**, f. *wrath, anger*  
**īrātus, -a, -um**, adj. [part. of **īrāscor**,

*incredible*  
**inde**, *from that place, thence*  
**induō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus**, *put on*  
**indūtus, -a, -um**, adj. [part. of **induō**,  
*put on*], *clothed*  
**in-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus** [**in**, *into*, + **eō**,  
*go*], *go into; enter upon, begin*,  
with acc. (§ 413)  
**in-fāns, -fantis**, adj. [**in-**, *not*, +  
**\*fāns**, *speaking*], *not speaking*. As  
a noun, m. and f. *infant*  
**in-fēlix, -icis**, adj. [**in-**, *not*, + **fēlix**,  
*happy*], *unhappy, unlucky*  
**infēnsus, -a, -um**, adj. *hostile*  
**in-ferō, infer-re, in-tulī, inlā-tus**  
[**in**, *against*, + **ferō**, *bear*], *bring*  
*against or upon, inflict*, with acc.  
and dat. (§ 501.15).  
**bellum inferre**, with dat., *make war*  
*upon*  
**inferus, -a, -um**, adj. *low, below*  
 (§ 312).  
**in-finitus, -a, -um**, adj. [**in-**, *not*, +  
**finitus**, *bounded*], *boundless*,  
*endless*  
**in-firmus, -a, -um**, adj. [**in-**, *not*, +  
**firmus**, *strong*], *weak, infirm*  
**ingenium, inge-ni**, n. *talent, ability*  
**ingēns, -entis**, adj. *vast, huge*,  
*enormous, large*. Cf. **magnus**

**L.**, abbreviation for **Lūcius**  
**labefactus, -a, -um**, adj. [part. of  
**labefaciō**, *cause to shake*],  
*shaken, weakened, ready to fall*  
**Labiēnus, -ī**, m. *La-bi-e-nus*, one of  
Cæsar's lieutenants  
**labor, -ōris**, m. *labor, toil*  
**labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [**labor**,  
*labor*], *labor; suffer, be hard*  
*pressed*  
**lacrima, -ae**, f. *tear*  
**lacus, -ūs** (dat. and abl. plur.  
**lacubus**), m. *lake*  
**laetē**, adv. [**laetus**, *glad*], compared  
**laetius, laetissimē**, *gladly*  
**laetitia, -ae**, f. [**laetus**, *glad*], *joy*  
**laetus, -a, -um**, adj. *glad, joyful*  
**lapis, -idis**, m. *stone* (§§ 247.2.a;  
464.1)  
**Lār, Laris**, m.; plur. **Larēs, -um**  
(rarely **-ium**), *the Lares or*  
*household, gods*  
**lātē**, adv. [**lātus**, *wide*], compared  
**lātius, lātissimē**, *widely*  
**Latinē**, adv. *in Latin*.  
**Latīnē loquī**, *to speak Latin*  
**lātitudō, -inis**, f. [**lātus**, *wide*], *width*  
**Lātōna, -ae**, f. *Latona*, mother of  
Apollo and Diana  
**latus, -a, -um**, adj. *wide*  
**lātus, -eris**, n. *side, flank*.  
**ab utrōque latere**, *on each side*  
**laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [**laus**, *praise*],  
*praise*  
**laurea, -ae**, f. *laurel*  
**laureātus, -a, -um**, adj. *crowned with*  
*laurel*  
**laus, laudis**, f. *praise*  
**lectulus, -ī**, m. *couch, bed*  
**lēgātus, -ī**, m. *ambassador; lieutenant*  
**legiō, -ōnis**, f. [cf. **legō**, *gather*],  
*(body of soldiers), legion, about*

*be angry*, *angered, enraged*  
**is, ea, id**, demonstrative adj. and pron.  
*this, that; he, she, it* (§ 481)  
**iste, -a, -ud**, demonstrative adj. and  
pron. *that (of yours), he, she, it*  
 (§ 481)  
**ita**, adv. *so, thus*. Cf. **sīc** and **tam**  
**Italia, -ae**, f. *Italy*  
**ita-que**, conj. *and so, therefore*  
**item**, adv. *also*  
**iter, itineris**, n. *journey, march*,  
*route; way, passage* (§§ 247.1.a;  
468).  
**iter dare**, *give a right of way, allow*  
*to pass*.  
**iter facere**, *march* (see p. 159)  
**iubeō, -ēre, iussi, iussus**, *order*,  
*command*. Usually with the infin.  
and subj. acc. (§ 213)  
**iūdex, -icis**, m. and f. *judge* (§ 464. 1)  
**iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [**iūdex**,  
*judge*], *judge, decide* (§ 420. c)  
**Iūlia, -ae**, *Julia*, a Roman name  
**Iūlius, Iūli**, m. *Julius*, a Roman name  
**iungō, -ēre, iūnxī, iunctus**, *join*;  
*yoke, harness*  
**Iūnō, -ōnis**, f. *Juno*, the queen of the  
gods and wife of Jupiter  
**Iuppiter, Iovis**, m. *Jupiter*, the  
supreme god  
**iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *swear, take an*  
*oath*  
**iussus, -a, -um**, part. of **iubeō**,  
*ordered*

## L

**Lentulus, -i**, m. *Lentulus*, a Roman  
family name  
**leō, -ōnis**, m. *lion*  
**Lernaeus, -a, -um**, adj. *Lernæean*, of  
Lerna, in southern Greece  
**Lesbia, -ae**, f. *Lesbia*, a girl's name  
**levis, -e**, adj. *light*  
**lēx, lēgis**, f. *measure, law*  
**libenter**, adv. [**libēns**, *willing*],  
compared **libentius**,  
**libentissimē**, *willingly, gladly*  
**liber, -era, -erum**, adj. *free* (§ 469. b)  
**liberī, -ōrum**, m. [**liber**, *free*],  
*children*  
**liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [**liber**, *free*],  
*set free, release, liberate*  
**libertās, -ātis**, f. [**liber**, *free*],  
*freedom, liberty*  
**lictor, -ōris**, m. *lictor* (p. 225)  
**limus, -ī**, m. *mud*  
**littera, -ae**, f. *a letter of the alphabet*;  
in plur. *a letter, epistle*  
**lītus, -oris**, n. *seashore, beach*  
**locus, -ī**, m. (plur. **locī** and **loca**, m.  
and n.), *place, spot*  
**longē**, adv. [**longus**, *long*], comp.  
**longius, longissimē**, *a long way*  
*off; by far*  
**longinquus, -a, -um**, adj. [**longus**,  
*long*], *distant, remote*  
**longitūdō, -inis**, f. [**longus**, *long*],  
*length*  
**longus, -a, -um**, adj. *long*  
**loquor, loqui, locūtus sum**, dep.  
verb, *talk, speak*  
**lōrica, -ae**, f. [**lōrum**, *thong*], *coat of*  
*mail, corselet*  
**lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsus**, *play*  
**lūdus, -ī**, m. *play; school*, the  
elementary grades. Cf. **schola**  
**lūna, -ae**, f. *moon*  
**lūx, lūcis**, f. (no gen. plur.), *light*.

3600 men (§ 464. 2. a)  
**legiōnārius, -a, -um**, adj. *legionary*.  
Plur. **legiōnariī, -ōrum**, m. *the soldiers of the legion*  
**legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus**, read  
**lēnis, -e**, adj. *gentle, smooth, mild*  
**lēniter**, adv. [**lēnis**, *gentle*], compared  
**lēnius, lēnissimē**, *gently*

**prīma lūx**, *daybreak*  
**Lýdia, -ae**, f. *Lydia*, a girl's name

## M

**M.**, abbreviation for **Mārcus**  
**magicus, -a, -um**, adj. *magic*  
**magis**, adv. in comp. degree  
[**magnus**, *great*], *more, in a higher degree* (§ 323)  
**magister, -trī**, m. *master, commander; teacher*  
**magistrātus, -ūs**, m. [**magister**, *master*], *magistracy; magistrate*  
**magnitūdō, -inis**, f. [**magnus**, *great*], *greatness, size*  
**magnopere**, adv. [abl. of **magnum opus**], compared **magis, maximē**, *greatly, exceedingly* (§ 323)  
**magnus, -a, -um**, adj., compared  
**maior, maximus**, *great, large; strong, loud* (§ 311)  
**maior, maius, -ōris**, adj., comp. of **magnus**, *greater, larger* (§ 311)  
**maiōrēs, -um**, m. plur. of **maior**, *ancestors*  
**mālō, mälle, mālūi**, — [**magis**, *more*, + **volō**, *wish*], *wish more, prefer* (§ 497)  
**malus, -a, -um**, adj., compared **peior, pessimus**, *bad, evil* (§ 311)  
**mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [**manus**, *hand*, + **dō**, *put*], (*put in hand*), *intrust; order, command*  
**maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus**, *stay, remain, abide*  
**Mānlius, Mānlī**, m. *Manlius*, a Roman name  
**mānsuētus, -a, -um**, adj. [part. of **mānsuēscō**, *tame*], *tamed*  
**manus, -ūs**, f. *hand; force, band*  
**Mārcus, -ī**, m. *Marcus, Mark*, a Roman first name  
**mare, -is**, n. (no gen. plur.), *sea*  
**mare tenēre**, *be out to sea*  
**margō, -inis**, m. *edge, border*  
**marītus, -ī**, m. *husband*  
**Marius, Marī**, m. *Marius*, a Roman name, esp. *C. Marius*, the general  
**Mārtius, -a, -um**, adj. *of Mars*, esp. *the Campus Martius*  
**māter, -tris**, f. *mother*  
**mātrimōnium, mātrimō' nī**, n. *marriage*  
**in mātrimōnium dūcere**, *marry*  
**mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *hasten*. Cf. **contendō, properō**  
**mātūrus, -a, -um**, adj. *ripe, mature*  
**maximē**, adv. in superl. degree  
[**maximus**, *greatest*], compared **magnopere, magis, maximē**, *especially, very much* (§ 323)  
**maximus, -a, -um**, adj., superl. of **magnus**, *greatest, extreme* (§ 311)  
**medius, -a, -um**, adj. *middle part; middle, intervening*  
**melior, -ius, -ōris**, adj., comp. of **bonus**, *better* (§ 311)  
**melius**, adv. in comp. degree, compared **bene, melius, optimē**, *better* (§ 323)  
**memoria, -ae**, f. [**memor**, *mindful*], *memory*

**mīles, -itis**, m. *soldier* (§ 464. 1)  
**militāris, -e**, adj. [**mīles**, *soldier*], *military*.  
**rēs militāris**, *science of war*  
**militō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [**mīles**, *soldier*], *serve as a soldier*  
**mille**, plur. **mīlia, -ium**, numeral adj. and subst. *thousand* (§ 479)  
**minimē**, adv. in superl. degree, compared **parum, minus, minimē**, *least, very little; by no means* (§ 323)  
**minimus, -a, -um**, adj. in superl. degree, compared **parvus, minor, minimus**, *least, smallest* (§ 311)  
**minor, minus, -ōris**, adj. in comp. degree, compared **parvus, minor, minimus**, *smaller, less* (§ 311)  
**Mīnōs, -ōis**, m. *Minos*, a king of Crete  
**minus**, adv. in comp. degree, compared **parum, minus, minimē**, *less* (§ 323)  
**Mīnyae, -ārum**, m. *the Minyae*, a people of Greece  
**mīrābilis, -e**, adj. [**mīror**, *wonder at*], *wonderful, marvelous*  
**mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum**, dep. verb [**mīrus**, *wonderful*], *wonder, marvel, admire*  
**mīrus, -a, -um**, adj. *wonderful*  
**Mīsēnum, -ī**, *Mise'num*, a promontory and harbor on the coast of Campania. See map  
**miser, -era, -erum**, adj. *wretched, unhappy, miserable*  
**missus, -a, -um**, part. of **mittō**, *sent*  
**mittō, -ere, misī, missus**, *send*  
**modicus, -a, -um** [**modus**, *measure*], *modest, ordinary*  
**modo**, adv. [abl. of **modus**, *measure*, with shortened **o**], *only, merely, just now*.  
**modo ... modo**, *now ... now, sometimes ... sometimes*  
**modus, -ī**, m. *measure; manner, way; kind*  
**moenia, -ium**, n. plur. [cf. **mūniō**, *fortify*], *walls, ramparts*  
**molestē**, adv. [**molestus**, *troublesome*], compared **molestius, molestissimē**, *annoyingly*.  
**molestē ferre**, *to be annoyed*  
**molestus, -a, -um**, *troublesome, annoying, unpleasant* (§ 501.16)  
**moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus**, *remind, advise, warn* (§ 489)  
**mōns, montis**, m. *mountain* (§ 247. 2. a)  
**mōnstrum, -ī**, n. *monster*  
**mora, -ae**, f. *delay*  
**moror, -ārī, -ātus sum**, dep. verb [**mora**, *delay*], *delay, linger; impede*  
**mors, mortis**, f. [cf. **morior**, *die*], *death*  
**mōs, mōris**, m. *custom, habit*  
**mōtus, -ūs**, m. [cf. **moveō**, *move*],



**memoriā tenēre**, *remember*  
**mēns, mentis**, f. *mind*. Cf. **animus**  
**mēnsis, -is**, m. *month* (§ 247. 2. a)  
**mercātor, -ōris**, m. [**mercōr, trade**],  
*trader, merchant*  
**merīdiānus, -a, -um**, adj. [**merīdiēs**,  
*noon*], *of midday*  
**merīdiēs**, — (acc. **-em**, abl. **-ē**), m.  
[**medius, mid**, + **diēs, day**], *noon*  
**metus, -ūs**, m. *fear, dread*  
**meus, -a, -um**, possessive adj. and  
pron. *my, mine* (§ 98)

*motion, movement.*  
**terrae mōtus, earthquake**  
**moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus**, *move*  
**mox**, adv. *soon, presently*  
**mulier, -eris**, f. *woman*  
**multitūdō, -inis**, f. [**multus, much**],  
*multitude*  
**multum (multō)**, adv. [**multus,**  
*much*], compared **plūs,**  
**plūrimum, much** (§ 477)  
**multus, -a, -um**, adj., compared **plūs,**  
**plūrimus, much**; plur. *many*  
(§ 311)  
**mūniō, -ire, -ivī or -iī, -itus**, *fortify,*  
*defend*  
**mūnitiō, -ōnis**, f. [**mūniō, fortify**],  
*defense, fortification*  
**mūrus, -i**, m. *wall*. Cf. **moenia**  
**mūsica, -ae**, f. *music*

## N

**nam**, conj. *for*. Cf. **enim**  
**nam-que**, conj., a strengthened **nam**,  
introducing a reason or  
explanation, *for, and in fact;*  
*seeing that*  
**nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *tell, relate*  
**nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum**, dep. verb,  
*be born, spring from*  
**nātūra, -ae**, f. *nature*  
**nātus**, part. of **nāscor**  
**nauta, -ae**, m. [for **nāvita**, from **nāvis**,  
*ship*], *sailor*  
**nāvālis, -e**, adj. [**nāvis, ship**], *naval*  
**nāvigium, nāvī'gī**, n. *ship, boat*  
**nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [**nāvis, ship,**  
+ **agō, drive**], *sail, cruise*  
**nāvis, -is** (abl. **-ī** or **-e**), f. *ship*  
(§ 243. 1).  
**nāvem cōnscendere**, *embark, go on*  
*board.*  
**nāvem solvere**, *set sail.*  
**nāvis longa**, *man-of-war*  
**nē**, conj. and adv. *in order that not,*  
*that* (with verbs of fearing), *lest;*  
*not.*  
**nē ... quidem**, *not even*  
**-ne**, interrog. adv., enclitic (see §§ 16,  
210). Cf. **nōnne** and **num**  
**nec** or **neque**, conj. [**nē, not, + que,**  
*and*], *and not, nor.*  
**nec ... nec** or **neque ... neque**,  
*neither ... nor*  
**necessārius, -a, -um**, adj. *needful,*  
*necessary*  
**necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [cf. **nex,**  
*death*], *kill*. Cf. **interficiō, occidō,**  
**trucidō**  
**negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *deny, say not*  
(§ 420. a)  
**negōtium, negō'tī**, n. [**nec, not, +**  
**ōtium, ease**], *business, affair,*  
*matter.*  
**alicui negōtium dare**, *to employ*  
*some one*  
**Nemaesus, -a, -um**, adj. *Neme'an, of*  
*Neme'a*, in southern Greece  
**nēmō**, dat. **nēmīni** (gen. **nūllūs**, abl.  
**nūllō**, supplied from **nūllus**), m.  
and f. [**nē, not, + homō, man**],  
*(not a man), no one, nobody*  
**Neptūnus, -ī**, m. *Neptune, god of the*  
*sea, brother of Jupiter*  
**neque**, see **nec**  
**neuter, -tra, -trum** (gen. **-trīus**, dat. **-**  
**trī**), adj. *neither* (of two) (§ 108)  
**nē-ve**, conj. adv. *and not, and that not,*  
*and lest*

**Niobē, -ēs**, f. *Ni'obe*, the queen of  
Thebes whose children were  
destroyed by Apollo and Diana  
**nisi**, conj. [**nē, not, + sī, if**], *if not,*  
*unless, except*  
**nōbilis, -e**, adj. *well known; noble*  
**noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus** [cf. **necō,**  
*kill*], *hurt, injure*, with dat.  
(§ 501.14)  
**noctū**, abl. used as adv. [cf. **nox,**  
*night*], *at night, by night*  
**Nōla, -ae**, f. *Nola*, a town in central  
Campania. See map  
**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī**, — [**ne, not, +**  
**volō, wish**], *not to wish, be*  
*unwilling* (§ 497)  
**nōmen, -inis**, n. [cf. **nōscō, know**],  
*(means of knowing), name*  
**nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [**nōmen,**  
*name*], *name, call*. Cf. **appellō,**  
**vocō**  
**nōn**, adv. [**nē, not, + ūnum, one**], *not.*  
**nōn solum ... sed etiam**, *not only*  
*... but also*  
**nōn-dum**, adv. *not yet*  
**nōn-ne**, interrog. adv. suggesting an  
affirmative answer, *not?* (§ 210).  
Cf. **-ne** and **num**  
**nōs**, pers. pron. *we* (see **ego**) (§ 480)  
**noster, -tra, -trum**, possessive adj.  
and pron. *our, ours*. Plur. **nostrī,**  
**-ōrum**, m. *our men* (§ 98)  
**novem**, indecl. numeral adj. *nine*  
**novus, -a, -um**, adj. *new.*  
**novae rēs, a revolution**  
**nox, noctis**, f. *night, multā nocte,*  
*late at night*  
**nūllus, -a, -um** (gen. **-īus**, dat. **-ī**) adj.  
[**nē, not, + ūllus, any**], *not any,*  
*none, no* (§ 108)  
**num**, interrog. adv. suggesting a  
negative answer (§ 210). Cf. **-ne**  
and **nōnne**. In indir. questions,  
*whether*  
**numerus, -ī**, m. *number*  
**numquam**, adv. [**nē, not, + umquam,**  
*ever*], *never*  
**nunc**, adv. *now*. Cf. **iam**  
**nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [**nūntius,**  
*messenger*], *report, announce*  
(§ 420. a)  
**nūntius, nūntī**, m. *messenger*  
**nūper**, adv. *recently, lately, just now*  
**nympha, -ae**, f. *nymph*

**nihil**, n. indecl. [**nē**, *not*, + **hīlum**, a *whit*], *nothing*.

**nihil posse**, *to have no power*

**nihilum**, -ī, n., see **nihil**

## O

**ob**, prep. with acc. *on account of*. In compounds it often means *in front of*, *against*, or it is intensive.

**quam ob rem**, *for this reason*  
(§ 340)

**obses**, -īdis, m. and f. *hostage*

**ob-sideō**, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus [**ob**, *against*, + **sedeō**, *sit*], *besiege*

**obtimeō**, -ēre, -uī, -tentus [**ob**, *against*, + **teneō**, *hold*], *possess*, *occupy*, *hold*

**occāsiō**, -ōnis, f. *favorable*

*opportunity*, *favorable moment*

**occāsus**, -ūs, m. *going down*, *setting*

**occidō**, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus [**ob**, *down*, + **caedō**, *strike*], *strike down*; *cut down*, *kill*. Cf. **interficiō**, **necō**

**occupō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ob**, *completely*, + **capiō**, *take*], *seize*, *take possession of*, *occupy*. Cf.

**rapio**

**oc-currō**, -ere, -currī, -cursus [**ob**, *against* + **currō**, *run*], *run towards*; *meet*, with dat. (§ 426)

**ōceanus**, -ī, m. *the ocean*

**octō**, indecl. numeral adj. *eight*

**oculus**, -ī, m. *eye*

**officium**, **offi cī**, n. *duty*

**ōlim**, adv. *formerly*, *once upon a time*

**ōmen**, -īnis, n. *sign*, *token*, *omen*

**ō-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [**ob**, *over*, *past*, + **mittō**, *send*], *let go*, *omit*.

**consilium omittēre**, *give up a plan*

**omnīnō**, adv. [**omnis**, *all*], *altogether*, *wholly*, *entirely*

**omnis**, -e, adj. *all*, *every*. Cf. **tōtus**

**onerāria**, -ae, f. [**onus**, *load*], with **nāvis** expressed or understood, *merchant vessel*, *transport*

**onus**, -eris, n. *load*, *burden*

**opīniō**, -ōnis, f. [**opīnor**, *suppose*], *opinion*, *supposition*, *expectation*

**oppidānus**, -ī, m. [**oppidum**, *town*], *townsman*

**oppidum**, -ī, n. *town*, *stronghold*

**opportūnus**, -a, -um, adj. *suitable*, *opportune*, *favorable*

**op-primō**, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [**ob**, *against*, + **premō**, *press*], (*press against*), *crush*; *surprise*

**oppugnātiō**, -ōnis, f. *storming*, *assault*

**oppugnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ob**, *against*, + **pugnō** *fight*], *fight against*, *assault*, *storm*, *assail*

**optimē**, adv. in superl. degree, compared **bene**, **melius**, **optimē**, *very well*, *best of all* (§ 323)

**optimus**, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared **bonus**, **melior**, **optimus**, *best*, *most excellent* (§ 311)

**opus**, -eris, n. *work*, *labor*, *task*  
(§ 464. 2. b)

**ōrāculum**, -ī, n. [**ōrō**, *speak*], *oracle*

**ōrātor**, -ōris, m. [**ōrō**, *speak*], *orator*

**orbis**, -is, m. *ring*, *circle*.

**orbis terrārum**, *the earth*, *world*

**orbita**, -ae, f. [**orbis**, *wheel*], *rut*

**Orcus**, -ī, m. *Orcus*, *the lower world*

**ōrdō**, -īnis, m. *row*, *order*, *rank*

(§ 247. 2. a)

**orīgo**, -īnis, f. [**orior**, *rise*], *source*, *origin*

**orior**, -īrī, **ortus sum**, dep. verb, *arise*, *rise*, *begin*; *spring*, *be born*

**ōrnāmentum**, -ī, n. [**ōrnō**, *fit out*], *ornament*, *jewel*

**ōrnātus**, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **ōrnō**, *fit out*] *fitted out*; *adorned*

**ōrnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fit out*, *adorn*

## P

**P.**, abbreviation for **Pūblius**

**paene**, adv. *nearly*, *almost*

**palūdāmentum**, -ī, n. *military cloak*

**palūs**, -ūdis, f. *swamp*, *marsh*

**pānis**, -is, m. *bread*

**pār**, **paris**, adj. *equal* (§ 471. III)

**parātus**, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **parō**, *prepare*], *prepared*, *ready*

**parcō**, -ere, **peper' cī** (**parsī**),

**parsūrus**, *spare*, with dat.

(§ 501.14)

**pāreō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *obey*, with dat.  
(§ 501.14)

**parō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *prepare for*, *prepare*; *provide*, *procure*

**pars**, **partis**, f. *part*, *share*; *side*, *direction*

**parum**, adv., compared **minus**, **minimē**, *too little*, *not enough*  
(§ 323)

**parvus**, -a, -um, adj., compared **minor**, **minimus**, *small*, *little*  
(§ 311)

**passus**, -ūs, m. *step*, *pace*.

**mille passuum**, *thousand paces*, *mile* (§ 331. b)

**pateō**, -ēre, **patuī**, —, *lie open*, *be open*; *stretch*, *extend*

(**posterus**), -a, -um, adj., compared **posterior**, **postrēmus** or **postumus**, *following*, *next* (§ 312)

**postquam**, conj. *after*, *as soon as*  
**postrēmō**, adv. [abl. of **postrēmus**, *last*], *at last*, *finally*. Cf. **dēmum**, **dēnique** (§ 322)

**postrīdiē**, adv. [**posterō**, *next*, + **diē**, *day*], *on the next day*

**postulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask*, *demand*, *require*. Cf. **petō**, **quaerō**, **rogō**

**potentia**, -ae, f. [**potēns**, *able*], *might*, *power*, *force*

**prae-beō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus [**prae**, *forth*, + **habeō**, *hold*], *offer*, *give*

**praeda**, -ae, f. *booty*, *spoil*, *plunder*

**prae-dicō**, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus [**prae**, *before*, + **dīcō**, *tell*], *foretell*, *predict*

**prae-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [**prae**, *before*, + **faciō**, *make*], *place in command*, with acc. and dat.  
(§ 501.15)

**prae-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus [**prae**, *forward*, + **mittō**, *send*], *send forward*

**praemium**, **praemī**, n. *reward*, *prize*

**pater, -tris**, m. *father* (§ 464. 2. a)  
**patior, -ī, passus sum**, dep. verb,  
*bear, suffer, allow, permit*  
**patria, -ae**, f. [cf. **pater, father**],  
*fatherland, (one's) country*  
**paucus, -a, -um**, adj. (generally plur.),  
*few, only a few*  
**paulisper**, adv. *for a little while*  
**paulō**, adv. *by a little, little*  
**paulum** adv. *a little, somewhat*  
**pāx, pācis**, f. (no gen. plur.), *peace*  
**pecūnia, -ae**, f. [**pecus, cattle**], *money*  
**pedes, -itis**, m. [**pēs, foot**], *foot*  
*soldier*  
**pedester, -tris, -tre**, adj. [**pēs, foot**],  
*on foot; by land*  
**peior, peius, -ōris**, adj. in comp.  
degree, compared **malus, peior**,  
**pessimus, worse** (§ 311)  
**pellis, -is**, f. *skin, hide*  
**penna, -ae**, f. *feather*  
**per**, prep. with acc. *through, by means*  
*of, on account of*. In composition it  
often has the force of *thoroughly,*  
*completely, very* (§ 340)  
**percussus, -a, -um**, adj. [part. of  
**percutiō, strike through**], *pierced*  
**per-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus** [**per,**  
*through, + dūcō, lead*], *lead*  
*through.*  
**fossam perducere**, *to construct a*  
*ditch*  
**per-exiguus, -a, -um**, adj. [**per, very,**  
+ **exiguus, small**], *very small, very*  
*short*  
**perfidus, -a, -um**, adj. *faithless,*  
*treacherous, false*  
**per-fringō, -ere, -frēgī, -fractus**  
[**per, through, frangō, break**],  
*shatter*  
**pergō, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctus** [**per,**  
*through, + regō, conduct*], *go on,*  
*proceed, hasten*  
**periculum, -ī**, n. *trial, test; danger*  
**peristylum, -ī**, n. *peristyle*, an open  
court with columns around it  
**peritus, -a, -um**, adj. *skillful*  
**perpetuus, -a, -um**, adj. *perpetual*  
**Perseus, -eī**, *Perseus*, a Greek hero,  
son of Jupiter and Danaë  
**persōna, -ae**, f. *part, character,*  
*person*  
**per-suādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus**  
[**per, thoroughly, + suādeō,**  
*persuade*], *persuade, advise*, with  
dat. (§ 501.14), often with an  
object clause of purpose (§ 501.41)  
**per-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus** [**per,**  
*thoroughly, + terreō, frighten*],  
*thoroughly terrify, alarm*  
**per-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus** [**per,**  
*through, + veniō, come*], *arrive,*  
*reach, come to*  
**pēs, pedis**, m. *foot.*  
**pedem referre**, *retreat* (§ 247. 2. a)  
**pessimus, -a, -um**, adj. in superl.  
degree, compared **malus, peior**,  
**pessimus, worst** (§ 311)  
**petō, -ere, -ivī or -iī, -itus**, *strive for,*  
*seek, beg, ask, make for, travel to.*  
Cf. **postulō, quaerō, rogō**  
**Pharsālus, -ī**, f. *Pharsa'lus* or  
*Pharsa'lia*, a town in Thessaly, near  
which  
Cassar defeated Pompey, 48 B.C.  
**philosophia, -ae**, f. *philosophy*  
**philosophus, -ī**, m. *philosopher*  
**pictus, -a, -um**, adj. [part. of **pingō,**

**praeruptus, -a, -um** [part. of **prae-**  
**rumpō, break off**], *broken off,*  
*steep*  
**praesēns, -entis**, adj. *present,*  
*immediate*  
**praesertim**, adv. *especially, chiefly*  
**praesidium, praesi'di**, n. *guard,*  
*garrison, protection*  
**prae-stō, -āre, -stitī, -stitus** [**prae,**  
*before, + sto, stand*], (*stand*  
*before*), *excel, surpass*, with dat.  
(§ 501.15); *show, exhibit*  
**prae-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus**  
[**prae, before, + sum, be**], *be over,*  
*be in command of*, with dat.  
(§ 501.15)  
**praeter**, prep. with acc. *beyond,*  
*contrary to* (§ 340)  
**praetereā**, adv. [**praeter, besides, +**  
**eā, this**], *in addition, besides,*  
*moreover*  
**praetextus, -a, -um**, adj. *bordered,*  
*edged*  
**praetōrium, praetō'ri**, n. *praetorium*  
**prandium, prandī**, n. *luncheon*  
**premō, -ere, pressi, pressus, press**  
*hard, compress; crowd, drive,*  
*harass*  
**(prex, precis)**, f. *prayer*  
**primō**, adv. [**primus, first**], *at first, in*  
*the beginning* (§ 322)  
**primum**, adv. [**primus, first**], *first.*  
**quam primum**, *as soon as possible*  
**primus, -a, -um**, adj. in superl.  
degree, compared **prior, primus,**  
*first* (§ 315)  
**prīnceps, -cipis**, m. [**primus, first, +**  
**capiō, take**], (*taking the first*  
*place*), *chief, leader* (§ 464. 1)  
**prior, prius, -ōris**, adj. in comp.  
degree, superl., **primus, former**  
(§ 315)  
**prīstinus, -a, -um**, adj. *former,*  
*previous*  
**prō**, prep. with abl. *before; for, for the*  
*sake of, in behalf of; instead of, as*  
(§ 209). In composition, *forth,*  
*forward*  
**prō-cēdō, -ere, -cussī, -cessūrus**  
[**prō, forward, + cēdō, go**], *go*  
*forward, proceed*  
**procul**, adv. *far, afar off*  
**prō-currō, -ere, -currī (-cucurrī), -**  
**cur-sus** [**prō, forward, + currō,**  
*run*], *run forward*  
**proelium, proeli**, n. *battle, combat.*  
**proelium committere**, *join battle.*  
**proelium facere**, *fight a battle*  
**profectiō, -ōnis**, f. *departure*  
**proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum**, dep.  
verb, *set out, march*. Cf. **ēgredior,**  
**exeō**  
**prō-gredior, -ī, -gressus sum**, dep.  
verb [**prō, forth, + gradior, go**],  
*go forth, proceed, advance*. Cf.  
**pergō, prōcēdō**  
**prōgressus**, see **prōgredior**  
**prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus** [**prō, forth,**  
*away from, + habeō, hold*], *keep*  
*away from, hinder, prevent*  
**prō-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus**  
[**prō, forward, + moveō, move**],  
*move forward, advance*  
**prō-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [**prō,**  
*forth, + nūntiō, announce*],  
*proclaim, declare*  
**prope**, adv., compared **propius,**  
**proxi-mē, nearly**. Prep. with acc.  
*near*

*paint*], colored, variegated  
**pīlum**, -ī, n. spear, javelin (§ 462. b)  
**piscīna**, -ae, f. [piscis, fish], fish pond  
**piscis**, -is, m. fish  
**pīstor**, -ōris, m. baker  
**placeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus, please, be pleasing,  
with dat. (§ 501.14)  
**plānitēs**, -ēī, f. [plānus, level], plain  
**plānus**, -a, -um, adj. level, flat  
**plēnus**, -a, -um, full  
**plūrimum**, adv. in superl. degree,  
compared **multum**, **plūs**,  
**plūrimum**, very much.  
**plūrimum valēre**, be most influential (§ 322)  
**plūrimus**, -a, -um, adj. in superl.  
degree, compared **multus**, **plūs**,  
**plūrimus**, most, very many (§ 311)  
**plūs**, **plūris**, adj. in comp. degree,  
compared **multus**, **plūs**,  
**plūrimus**; sing. n. as substantive,  
more; plur. more, several (§ 311)  
**pluteus**, -ī, m. shield, parapet  
**poena**, -ae, f. punishment, penalty  
**poēta**, -ae, m. poet  
**pompa**, -ae, f. procession  
**Pompēiī**, -ōrum, m. Pompeii, a city of  
Campania. See map  
**Pompēius**, **Pompē ī**, m. Pompey, a  
Roman name  
**pōmum**, -ī, n. apple  
**pōnō**, -ere, **posuī**, **positus**, put,  
place.  
**castra pōnere**, pitch camp  
**pōns**, **pontis**, m. bridge (§ 247. 2. a)  
**popīna**, -ae, f. restaurant  
**populus**, -ī, m. people  
**Porsena**, -ae, m. Porsena, king of  
Etruria, a district of Italy. See map  
**porta**, -ae, f. gate, door  
**portō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, bear, carry  
**portus**, -ūs, m. [cf. porta, gate],  
harbor  
**possideō**, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, have,  
own, possess  
**possum**, **posse**, **potuī**, —, irreg.  
verb [potis, able, + sum, I am], be  
able, can (§ 495).  
**nihil posse**, have no power  
**post**, prep. with acc. after, behind  
(§ 340)  
**posteā**, adv. [post, after, + eā, this],  
afterwards

**quā dē causā**, for this reason,  
wherefore  
**quā rē**, therefore, for this reason  
**quaerō**, -ere, -sīvī, -situs, seek, ask,  
inquire. Cf. **petō**, **postulō**, **rogō**  
**quālis**, -e, interrog. pronom. adj. of  
what sort, what kind of.  
**talis ... qualis**, such ... as  
**quam**, adv. how; after a comparative,  
than; with a superlative,

**prō-pellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus [prō,  
forth, + pellō, drive], drive forth;  
move, impel  
**properō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [properus,  
quick], go quickly, hasten. Cf.  
**contendō**, **maturō**  
**propinquus**, -a, -um, adj. [prope,  
near], near, neighboring  
**propior**, -ius, -ōris, adj. in comp.  
degree, superl., **proximus**, nearer  
(§ 315)  
**propius**, adv. in comp. degree,  
compared **prope**, **propius**,  
**proximē**, nearer (§ 323)  
**propter**, prep. with acc. on account of,  
because of (§ 340)  
**prō-scribō**, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus  
[prō, forth, + scribō, write],  
proclaim, publish. Cf. **prōnūtiō**  
**prō-sequor**, -sequī, -secūtus sum,  
dep. verb [prō, forth, + sequor,  
follow], escort, attend  
**prō-sum**, **prōdesse**, **prōfuī**,  
**prōfutūrus** [prō, for, + sum, be],  
be useful, benefit, with dat.  
(§§ 496; 501.15)  
**prō-tegō**, -ere, -tēx=i], -tēctus [prō,  
in front, + tegō, cover], cover in  
front, protect  
**prōvincia**, -ae, f. territory, province  
**proximē**, adv. in superl. degree,  
compared **prope**, **propius**,  
**proximē**, nearest, next; last, most  
recently (§ 323)  
**proximus**, -a, -um, adj. in superl.  
degree, compared **propior**,  
**proximus**, nearest, next (§ 315)  
**pūblicus**, -a, -um, adj.  
[populus, people], of the people,  
public, **res pūblica**, the  
commonwealth  
**puella**, -ae, f. [diminutive of puer,  
boy], girl, maiden  
**puer**, -eri, m. boy; slave (§ 462. c)  
**pugna**, -ae, f. -fight, battle. Cf.  
**proelium**  
**pugnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pugna,  
battle], fight. Cf. **contendō**,  
**dīmīcō**  
**pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, adj.  
beautiful, pretty (§§ 469.b; 304)  
**Pullō**, -ōnis, m. Pullo, a centurion  
**pulsō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, strike, beat  
**puppis**, -is (acc. -im, abl. -ī), f. stern  
of a ship, deck  
**pūrē**, adv. [pūrus, pure], comp.  
**pūrius**, purely  
**pūrgō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, cleanse,  
clean  
**purpureus**, -a, -um, adj. purple, dark  
red  
**putō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, reckon, think  
(§ 420.c). Cf. **arbitror**, **existimō**  
**Pÿthia**, -ae, f. Pythia, the inspired  
priestess of Apollo at Delphi

## Q

**quīndecim**, indecl. numeral adj.  
fifteen  
**quīngentī**, -ae, -a, numeral adj. five  
hundred  
**quīnque**, indecl. numeral adj. five  
**quīntus**, -a, -um, numeral adj. fifth  
**quis (quī)**, **quae**, **quid (quod)**,  
interrog. pron. and adj. who?  
what? which? (§ 483).  
**quis (quī)**, **qua (quae)**, **quid (quod)**,

translated as ... as possible, **quam primum**, as soon as possible  
**quantus, -a, -um**, adj. [**quam**, how], how great, how much, **tantus** ...  
**quantus**, as great as  
**quārtus, -a, -um**, numeral adj. [**quattuor**, four], fourth  
**quattuor**, indecl. numeral adj. four  
**quattuor-decim**, indecl. numeral adj. fourteen  
**-que**, conj., enclitic, and (§ 16). Cf. **ac**, **atque, et**  
**quī, quae, quod**, rel. pron. and adj. who, which, what, that (§ 482)  
**quia**, conj. because. Cf. **quod**  
**quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam)**, indef. pron. and adj. a certain one, a certain, a (§ 485).  
**quidem**, adv. to be sure, certainly, indeed, **nē ... quidem**, not even  
**quiēs, -ētis**, f. rest, repose  
**quiētus, -a, -um**, adj. quiet, restful

**rādix, -icis**, f. root; foot  
**rapiō, -ere, -uī, -tus**, seize, snatch  
**rārō**, adv. [**rārus**, rare], rarely  
**rārus, -a, -um**, adj. rare  
**re-** or **red-**, an inseparable prefix, again, back, anew, in return  
**rebelliō, -ōnis**, f. renewal of war, rebellion  
**recēns, -entis**, adj. recent  
**re-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [re-, back, + capiō, take]**, take back, receive.  
**sē recipere**, withdraw, retreat  
**re-clinātus, -a, -um**, part. of **reclinō**, leaning back  
**re-creātus, -a, -um**, part. of **recreō**, refreshed  
**rēctus, -a, -um**, adj. [part. of **regō**, keep straight], straight, direct  
**re-cūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, refuse  
**red-āctus, -a, -um**, part. of **redigō**, reduced, subdued  
**red-eō, -ire, -iī, -itus [red-, back, + eō, go]**, go back, return (§ 413). Cf. **revertō**  
**reditus, -ūs**, m. [cf. **redeō**, return], return, going back  
**re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [re-, back, + dūcō, lead]**, lead back  
**re-ferō, -ferre, rettulī, -lātus [re-, back, + ferō, bear]**, bear back; report.  
**pedem referre**, withdraw, retreat  
**re-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [re-, again, + faciō, make]**, make again, repair.  
**sē reficere**, refresh one's self  
**rēgina, -ae**, f. [**rēx**, king], queen  
**regiō, -ōnis**, f. region, district  
**rēgnum, -ī**, n. sovereignty; kingdom  
**regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus** [cf. **rēx**, king], govern, rule (§ 490)  
**re-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [re-, back, + iaciō, hurl]**, hurl back; throw away  
**re-liquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictus [re-, behind, + linguō, leave]**, leave behind, leave, abandon  
**reliquus, -a, -um**, adj. [cf. **relinquō**, leave], left over, remaining. As a noun, plur. the rest  
**remōtus, -a, -um**, adj. [part. of **removeō**, remove], remote, distant  
**re-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -motus [re-**

indef. pron. and adj., used after **sī, nisi, nē, num**, any one, anything, some one, something, any, some (§ 484).

**quisquam, quicquam or quidquam** (no fem. or plur.), indef. pron. any one (at all), anything (at all) (§ 486).

**quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque)**, indef. pron. and adj. each, each one, every (§ 484).

**quō**, interrog. and rel. adv. whither, where

**quō**, conj. in order to, that, with comp. degree (§ 350).

**quod**, conj. because, in that. Cf. **quia quoque**, conj., following an emphatic word, also, too. Cf. **etiam**

**quot-annis**, adv. [**quot**, how many + **annus**, year], every year, yearly

**quotiēns**, interrog. and rel. adv. how often? as often as

## R

**re-periō, -īre, repperī, repertus**, find

**re-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-, back, + portō, carry]**, carry back, bring back, win, gain

**rēs, rei**, f. thing, business, matter, deed, event, circumstance (§ 467).

**quam ob rem**, for this reason.

**rēs adversae**, adversity.

**rēs frūmentāria**, grain supplies.

**rēs gestae**, exploits.

**rēs militāris**, science of war.

**rēs pūblica**, the commonwealth.

**rēs secundae**, prosperity

**re-scindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus [re-, back, + scindō, cut]**, cut off, cut down

**re-sistō, -ere, -stitī, — [re-, back, + sistō, cause to stand]**, oppose, resist, with dat. (§ 501.14)

**re-spondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus [re-, in return, + spondeō, promise]**, answer, reply (§ 420. a)

**re-vertō, -ere, -ī, —, or dep. verb re-vertor, -ī, -sus sum [re-, back, + vertō, turn]**, turn back, return.

Usually active in the perf. system

**re-vinciō, -īre, -vīnxī, -vīnctus [re-, back, + vincīō, bind]**, fasten

**rēx, rēgis**, m. [cf. **regō**, rule], king

**Rhēnus, -ī**, m. the Rhine, a river of Germany

**rīpa, -ae**, f. bank

**rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, ask. Cf. **petō, postulō, quaerō**

**Rōma, -ae**, f. Rome. See map

**Rōmānus, -a, -um**, adj. [**Rōma**, Rome], Roman, follows its noun. As a noun, m. and f. a Roman

**rosa, -ae**, f. rose

**rōstrum, -ī**, n. beak of a ship. In plur., the rostra, the speaker's stand in the Roman Forum

**rota, -ae**, f. wheel

**Rubicō, -ōnis**, m. the Rubicon, a river in northern Italy. See map

**rūmor, -ōris**, m. report, rumor

**rūrsus**, adv. [for **reversus**, turned back], again, in turn

**rūs, rūris** (locative abl. **rūrī**, no gen., dat., or abl. plur.), n. the country (§ 501.36.1). Cf. **ager, patria,**

**terra**

*back*, + *moveō*, *move*], *remove*  
**rēmus**, -ī, m. *oar*

## S

**Sabinus**, -a, -um, adj. *Sabine*. As a noun, m. and f. *a Sabine*. The Sabines were an ancient people of central Italy. See map  
**sacrum**, -ī, n. [**sacer**, *consecrated*], *something consecrated, sacrifice*; usually in plur., *religious rites*  
**saepe**, adv., compared **saepius**, **saepissimē**, *often, frequently*  
**saevus**, -a, -um, adj. *cruel, savage*  
**sagitta**, -ae, f. *arrow*  
**saliō**, -īre, -uī, **saltus**, *jump*  
**salūs**, -ūtis, f. *safety; health*  
**salūtem dicere**, *send greetings*  
**salūtō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**salūs**, *health*], *greet, salute*  
**salvē**, imv. of **salveō**, *hail, greetings*  
**sanguis**, -inis, m. *blood* (§ 247. 2. a)  
**sānitās**, -ātis, f. [**sānus**, *sound*], *health, sanity*  
**sapiēns**, -entis, adj. [part. of **sapiō**, *be wise*], *wise, sensible*  
**satis**, adv. and indecl. noun, *enough, sufficient, sufficiently*  
**saxum**, -ī, n. *rock, stone*  
**scelus**, -eris, n. *crime, sin*  
**scēptrum**, -ī, n. *scepter*  
**schola**, -ae, f. *school*, the higher grades. Cf. **lūdus**  
**scientia**, -ae, f. [**sciēns**, *knowing*], *skill, knowledge, science*  
**scindō**, -ere, **scidi**, **scissus**, *cut, tear*  
**sciō**, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, *know* (§ 420. b). Cf. **cognōscō**  
**scribō**, -ere, **scripsi**, **scriptus**, *write*  
**scūtum**, -ī, n. *shield, buckler*  
**sē**, see **suī**  
**sēcum** = **sē** + **cum**  
**secundus**, -a, -um, adj. [**sequor**, *follow*], *following, next, second; favorable, successful*  
**rēs secundae**, *prosperity*  
**sed**, conj. *but, on the contrary*  
**nōn solum ... sed etiam**, *not only ... but also*  
**sēdecim**, indecl. numeral adj. *sixteen*  
**sedeō**, -ēre, **sēdi**, **sessus**, *sit*  
**semper**, adv. *always, forever*  
**senātus**, -ūs, m. [cf. **senex**, *old*], *council of elders, senate*  
**sentiō**, -īre, **sēnsi**, **sēnsus**, *feel, know, perceive* (§ 420. d). Cf. **intellegō**, **videō**  
**septem**, indecl. numeral adj. *seven*  
**septimus**, -a, -um, numeral adj. *seventh*  
**sequor**, -ī, **secūtus sum**, dep. verb, *follow* (§ 493)  
**serpēns**, -entis, f. [**serpō**, *crawl*], *serpent, snake*  
**sertae**, -ārum, f. plur. *wreaths, garlands*  
**servitūs**, -ūtis, f. [**servus**, *slave*], *slavery, servitude*  
**servō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *save, rescue, keep*  
**servus**, -ī, m. *slave*  
**sēsē**, emphatic for **sē**  
**sex**, indecl. numeral adj. *six*  
**Sextus**, -ī, m. *Sextus*, a Roman first name  
**sī**, conj. *if*  
**sic**, adv. *thus, in this way*. Cf. **ita**, **tam**  
**Sicilia**, -ae, f. *Sicily*. See map

**somnus**, -ī, m. *sleep*  
**soror**, -ōris, f. *sister*  
**spatium**, **spati**, n. *space, distance; time; opportunity*  
**spectāculum**, -ī, n. [**spectō**, *look at*], *show, spectacle*  
**spectō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *look at, witness*  
**spērō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [spēs, *hope*], *hope, expect* (§ 420. c)  
**spēs**, **speī**, f. *hope* (§ 273. 2)  
**splendidē**, adv. [**splendidus**], compared **splendidus**, **splendidissimē**, *splendidly, handsomely*  
**splendidus**, -a, -um, adj. *brilliant, gorgeous, splendid*  
**Stabianus**, -a, -um, *Stabian*  
**stabulum**, -ī, n. [cf. **stō**, *stand*], *standing place, stable, stall*  
**statim**, adv. [cf. **stō**, *stand*], *on the spot, at once, instantly*  
**statua**, -ae, f. [**sistō**, *place, set*], *statue*  
**statuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [**status**, *station*], *decide, determine*  
**stilus**, -ī, m. *iron pencil, style* (p. 210)  
**stō**, -āre, **stetī**, **status**, *stand*  
**strātus**, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **sternō**, *spread*], *paved* (of streets)  
**strepitus**, -ūs, m. [**strepō**, *make a noise*], *noise, din*  
**stringō**, -ere, **strīnxī**, **strictus**, *bind tight; draw, unsheathe*  
**studeō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *give attention to, be eager*, with dat. (§ 501.14)  
**studium**, **studī**, n. [cf. **studeō**, *be eager for*], *eagerness, desire, zeal, devotion*  
**stultus**, -a, -um, adj. *foolish, stupid*  
**Stymphālis**, -idis, adj. f. *Stymphalian, of Stympha'lus*, a lake in southern Greece  
**Stymphālus**, -ī, m. *Stympha'lus*, a district of southern Greece with a town, mountain, and lake, all of the same name  
**suādeō**, -ēre, -sī, -sus, *advise, recommend*, with subjv. of purpose (§ 501.41)  
**sub**, prep, with acc. and abl. *under, below, up to; at or to the foot of*  
**sub-igō**, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus [**sub**, *under*, + **agō**, *drive*], *subdue, reduce*  
**subitō**, adv. [**subitus**, *sudden*], *suddenly*  
**sub-sequor**, -ī, -secūtus sum, dep. verb [**sub**, *below*, + **sequor**, *follow*], *follow close after, follow up*  
**suc-cēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessus [**sub**, *below*, + **cēdō**, *go*], *follow, succeed*  
**suī**, reflexive pron. *of himself (herself, itself, themselves)* (§ 480).  
**sēcum** = **sē** + **cum**.  
**sēsē**, emphatic form of **sē**  
**sum**, **esse**, **fuī**, **futūrus**, irreg. verb, *be; exist* (§ 494)  
**summus**, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared **superus**, **superior**, **suprēmus** or **summus** (§ 312), *supreme, highest; best*,

**sīc-ut**, *just as, as if*  
**signifer**, -erī, m. [**signum**, *standard*, + **ferō**, *bear*], *standard bearer* (§ 224)  
**signum**, -ī, n. *ensign, standard; signal*  
**silva**, -ae, f. *wood, forest*  
**similis**, -e, adj., compared **similior**, **simillimus**, *like, similar* (§ 307)  
**simul**, adv. *at the same time*  
**simul ac** or **simul atque**, conj. *as soon as*  
**sine**, prep. with abl. *without* (§ 209)  
**singulī**, -ae, -a, distributive numeral adj. *one at a time, single* (§ 334)  
**sinister**, -tra, -trum, adj. *left*  
**Sinuessa**, -ae, f. *Sinues 'sa*, a town in Campania. See map  
**sitis**, -is (acc. -im, abl. -ī, no plur.), f. *thirst*  
**situs**, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **sinō**, *set*], *situated, placed, lying*  
**socius**, sociī, m. *comrade, ally*  
**sōl**, sōlis (no gen. plur.), m. *sun*  
**soleō**, -ēre, **solitus sum**, semi-dep. verb, *be wont, be accustomed*  
**sollicitus**, -a, -um, adj. *disturbed, anxious*  
**sōlum**, adv. [**sōlus**, *alone*], *alone, only*  
**nōn solum ... sed etiam**, *not only ... but also*  
**sōlus**, -a, -um (gen. -īus, dat. -ī), adj. *alone, only* (§ 108)  
**solvō**, -ere, solvī, solūtus, *loosen, unbind*  
**nāvem solvere**, *set sail*

**T.**, abbreviation of **Titus**  
**taberna**, -ae, f. *shop, stall*  
**tabula**, -ae, f. *tablet for writing*  
**tālis**, -e, adj. *such*  
**tālis ... quālis**, *such ... as*  
**tam**, adv. *so, such*. Cf. **ita**, **sīc**  
**tamen**, adv. *yet, however, nevertheless*  
**tandem**, adv. *at length, finally*  
**tangō**, -ere, tetigi, tāctus, *touch*  
**tantum**, adv. [**tantus**], *only*  
**tantus**, -a, -um, adj. *so great, such*  
**tantus ... quantus**, *as large as*  
**tardus**, -a, -um, adj. *slow, late; lazy*  
**Tarpēia**, -ae, f. *Tarpeia* (pronounced *Tar-pē 'ya*), the maiden who opened the citadel to the Sabines  
**Tarquinus**, Tarqui' nī, *Tarquin*, a Roman king. With the surname **Superbus**, *Tarquin the Proud*  
**Tarracīna**, -ae, f. *Tarraci'na*, a town in Latium. See map  
**taurus**, -ī, m. *bull*  
**tēctus**, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **tegō**, *cover*], *covered, protected*  
**tēlum**, -ī, n. *weapon*  
**temerē**, adv. *rashly, heedlessly*  
**tempestās**, -ātis, f. [**tempus**, *time*] *storm, tempest*  
**templum**, -ī, n. *temple, shrine*  
**tempto**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *try, test; make trial of, attempt*  
**tempus**, -oris, n. *time* (§ 464. 2. b). **in reliquum tempus**, *for the future*  
**teneō**, -ēre, tenuī, —, *hold, keep*

*greatest.*  
**in summō colle**, *on the top of the hill*  
**sūmō**, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmptus, *take up; assume, put on*  
**sūmere supplicium dē**, *inflict punishment on*  
**super**, prep. with acc. and abl. *over, above*  
**superbia**, -ae, f. [**superbus**, *proud*], *pride, arrogance*  
**superbus**, -a, -um, adj. *proud, haughty*  
**superior**, comp. of **superus**  
**superō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**superus**, *above*], *go over; subdue, overcome; surpass, excel*  
**super-sum**, -esse, -fuī, —, *be over, survive, with dat.* (§ 501.15)  
**superus**, -a, -um, adj., compared **superior**, **suprēmus** or **summus**, *above, upper* (§ 312)  
**supplicium**, suppli' cī, n. [**supplex**, *kneeling in entreaty*], *punishment, torture*  
**supplicium sūmere dē**, *inflict punishment on*  
**supplicium dare**, *suffer punishment*  
**surgō**, -ere, surrēxi, — [**sub**, *from below*, + **regō**, *straighten*], *rise*  
**sus-cipiō**, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus [**sub**, *under*, + **capiō**, *take*], *undertake, assume, begin*  
**suspikor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. verb, *suspect, surmise, suppose*  
**sus-tineō**, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus [**sub**, *under*, + **teneō**, *hold*], *hold up, bear, sustain, withstand*  
**suus**, -a, -um, reflexive possessive adj. and pron., *his, her, hers, its, their, theirs* (§ 98)

## T

**timeō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *fear, be afraid of*. Cf. **vereor**  
**timor**, -ōris, m. [cf. **timeō**, *fear*], *fear, dread, alarm*. Cf. **metus**  
**Tiryns**, Tiryntis, f. *Ti'ryns*, an ancient town in southern Greece, where Hercules served Eurystheus  
**toga**, -ae, f. [cf. **tegō**, *cover*], *toga*  
**tormentum**, -ī, n. *engine of war*  
**totiēns**, adv. *so often, so many times*  
**tōtus**, -a, -um, (gen. -īus, dat. -ī), adj. *all, the whole, entire* (§ 108)  
**trā-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus [**trāns**, *across*, + **dō**, *deliver*], *give up, hand over, surrender, betray*  
**trā-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [**trāns**, *across*, + **dūcō**, *lead*], *lead across*  
**trahō**, -ere, trāxī, trāctus, *draw, pull, drag*  
**multum trahere**, *protract, prolong much*  
**trā-iciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [**trāns**, *across*, + **iaciō**, *hurl*], *throw across; transfix*  
**trā-nō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**trāns**, *across*, + **nō**, *swim*], *swim across*  
**trāns**, prep. with acc. *across, over* (§ 340)  
**trāns-eō**, -īre, -iī, -itus [**trāns**, *across*, + **eō**, *go*], *go across, cross* (§ 413)  
**trāns-figō**, -ere, -fixī, -fixus [**trāns**, *through*, + **figō**, *drive*], *transfix*  
**trānsitus**, — (acc. -um, abl. -ū), m.

**tergum**, -ī, n. *back*, **ā tergō**, *on the rear*; **tergum vertere**, *retreat, flee*  
**ternī**, -ae, -a, distributive numeral adj. *three each, by threes* (§ 334)  
**terra**, -ae, f. *earth, ground, land*.  
**orbis terrārum**, *the whole world*  
**terror**, -ōris, m. [cf. **terreō**, *frighten*], *dread, alarm, terror*  
**tertius**, -a, -um, numeral adj. *third*  
**Teutonēs**, -um, m. *the Teutons*  
**theātrum**, -ī, n. *theater*  
**Thēbae**, -ārum, f. *Thebes*, a city of Greece  
**Thēbānī**, -ōrum, m. *Thebans*, the people of Thebes  
**thermae**, -ārum, f. plur. *baths*  
**Thessalia**, -ae, f. *Thessaly*, a district of northern Greece  
**Thrācia**, -ae, f. *Thrace*, a district north of Greece  
**Tiberius**, **Tibe'ri**, m. *Tiberius*, a Roman first name  
**tibicen**, -inis, m. [cf. **tibia**, *pipe*], *piper, flute player*

[cf. **trānseō**, *cross over*], *passage across*  
**trēs**, **tria**, numeral adj. *three* (§ 479)  
**trīdūm**, **trīdūi**, n. [**trēs**, *three*, + **diēs**, *days*], *three days' time, three days*  
**trīgintā**, indecl. numeral adj. *thirty*  
**triplex**, -icis, adj. *threefold, triple*  
**trīstis**, -e, adj. *sad; severe, terrible*  
**trīstītia**, -ae, f. [**trīstis**, *sad*], *sadness, sorrow*  
**trīumphō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**trīumphus**, *triumph*], *celebrate a triumph*  
**trīumphus**, -ī, m. *triumphal procession, triumph*.  
**trīumphum agere**, *celebrate a triumph*  
**trūcīdō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cut to pieces, slaughter*. Cf. **interficiō**, **necō**, **occīdō**  
**tū**, **tuī** (plur. **vōs**), pers. pron. *thou, you* (§ 480)  
**tuba**, -ae, f. *trumpet*  
**Tullia**, -ae, f. *Tullia*, a Roman name  
**tum**, adv. *then, at that time*  
**turrīs**, -is, f. *tower* (§ 465. 2)  
**tūtus**, -a, -um, adj. *safe*  
**tuus**, -a, -um, possessive adj. and pron. *your, yours* (§ 98)

## U

**ubi**, rel. and interrog. adv. *where, when*  
**ūllus**, -a, -um (gen. -īus, dat. -ī), adj. *any* (§ 108)  
**ulterior**, -ius, -ōris, adj. in comp. degree, superl. **ultimus**, *farther, more remote* (§ 315)  
**ultimus**, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree (see **ulterior**), *farthest* (§ 315)  
**umbra**, -ae, f. *shade*  
**umerus**, -ī, m. *shoulder*  
**umquam**, adv. *ever, at any time*  
**ūnā**, adv. [**ūnus**, *one*], *in the same place, at the same time*  
**ūndecimū**, -a, -um, numeral adj. [**ūnus**, *one*, + **decimus**, *tenth*], *eleventh*  
**undique**, adv. *from every quarter, on all sides, everywhere*  
**ūnus**, -a, -um (gen. -īus, dat. -ī), numeral adj. *one; alone* (§ 108)

**urbs**, -is, f. *city* (§ 465. a)  
**urgeō**, -ēre, **ursi**, —, *press upon, crowd, hem in*  
**ūrus**, -ī, m. *wild ox, urus*  
**ūsq̄ue**, adv. *all the way, even*  
**ūsus**, -ūs, m. *use, advantage*  
**ut**, conj. with the subjv. *that, in order that, that not* (with verbs of fearing), *so that, to* (§ 350. 1)  
**uter**, -tra, -trum (gen. -īus, dat. -ī), interrog. pron. *which of two? which?* (§ 108)  
**uterque**, **utraque**, **utrumque**, indef. pron. *each of two, each, both*.  
**ab utrāque parte**, *on both sides*  
**ūtilis**, -e, adj. [**ūtor**, *use*], *useful*  
**utrimque**, adv. [**uterque**, *each of two*], *on each side, on either hand*  
**ūva**, -ae, f. *grape, bunch of grapes*  
**uxor**, -ōris, f. *wife*

## V

**vāgīna**, -ae, *sheath, scabbard*  
**vagor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. verb, *wander*  
**valeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *be powerful, be well*; in the imperative as a greeting, *farewell*.  
**plūrimū valēre**, *have the most power*  
**valētūdō**, -inis, f. [**valeō**, *be well*], *health*  
**validus**, -a, -um, adj. [cf. **valeō**, *be strong*], *strong, able, well*  
**vallēs**, -is, f. *valley*  
**vāllum**, -ī, n. *rampart, earthworks*  
**varius**, -a, -um, adj. *bright-colored*  
**vāstō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**vāstus**, *empty*], *(make empty), devastate, lay waste*  
**vectigal**, -ālis, n. *tax, tribute*  
**vehementer**, adv. [**vehemēns**, *eager*], compared **vehementius**,

**veterānus**, -a, -um, adj. *old, veteran*  
**vetō**, -āre, -uī, -itus, *forbid, prohibit*  
**vexō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trouble, annoy*  
**via**, -ae, f. *way, road, street; way, manner*. Cf. **iter**  
**viātor**, -ōris, m. [**via**], *traveler*  
**victor**, -ōris, m. [**vincō**, *conquer*], *conqueror, victor*. In apposition, with adj. force *victorious*  
**victōria**, -ae, f. [**victor**, *victor*], *victory*  
**vīcus**, -ī, m. *village*  
**videō**, -ēre, **vīdī**, **vīsus**, *see, perceive*.  
 Pass. *be seen; seem* (§ 420. d)  
**vigilia**, -ae, f. [**vigil awake**], *watch*.  
**dē tertia vigilia**, *about the third watch*  
**vīgintī**, indecl. numeral adj. *twenty*  
**vīlicus**, -ī, m. [**villa**, *farm*], *steward, overseer of a farm*  
**vīlla**, -ae, f. *farm, villa*  
**vīnciō**, -īre, **vīnxī**, **vīnctus**, *bind, tie*,



**vehementissimē**, *eagerly, vehemently*  
**vehō, -ere, vexī, vectus**, *convey, carry*. In the passive often in the sense of *ride, sail*  
**vel**, conj. *or*.  
**vel ... vel**, *either ... or*. Cf. **aut**  
**velōcitās, -ātis**, f. [**vēlōx**, *swift*], *swiftness*  
**vēlōx, -ōcis**, adj. *swift, fleet*  
**vēlum, -i**, n. *sail*  
**vēndō, -ere, vēndidī, vēnditus**, *sell*  
**veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus**, *come, go*  
**ventus, -i**, m. *wind*  
**verbum, -i**, n. *word*.  
**verba facere prō**, *speak in behalf of*  
**vereor, -ērī, -itus sum**, dep. verb, *fear; reverence, respect* (§ 493).  
 Cf. **timeō**  
**Vergilius, Vergi'li**, m. *Vergil, the poet*  
**vergō, -ere, —, —, —, —**, *turn, lie*  
**verō**, adv. [**vērus**, *true*], *in truth, surely*; conj. *but, however*.  
**tum vērō**, *then you may be sure, introducing the climax of a story*  
**vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus**, *turn, change*.  
**tergum vertere**, *retreat, flee*  
**vērus, -a, -um**, *true, actual*  
**vesper, -erī**, m. *evening*  
**vester, -tra, -trum**, possessive adj. and pron. *your, yours* (§ 98)  
**vestigium, vesti'gī**, n. [cf. **vestīgō**, *track*], *footstep, track, trace*  
**vestimentum, -i**, n. [**vestis**, *clothing*], *garment*  
**vestiō, -īre, -īvī, -itus** [**vestis**, *clothing*], *clothe, dress*  
**vestis, -is**, f. *clothing, attire, garment, robe*  
**vestītus, -a, -um**, adj. [part. of **vestiō**, *clothe*], *clothed*  
**Vesuvius, Vesu'vi**, m. *Vesuvius, the volcano near Pompeii*. See map

*fetter*  
**vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus**, *conquer, defeat, overcome*. Cf. **subīgō**, **superō**  
**vīnea, -ae**, f. *shed* (p. 219)  
**vīnum, -i**, n. *wine*  
**violenter**, adv. [**violentus**, *violent*], compared **violentius**, **violentissimē**, *violently, furiously*  
**vir, virī**, m. *man, husband; hero* (§ 462. c)  
**virilis, -e**, adj. [**vir, man**], *manly*  
**virtūs, -ūtis**, f. [**vir, man**], *manliness; courage, valor; virtue* (§ 464. 1)  
**vīs, (vīs)**, f. *strength, power, might, violence* (§ 468)  
**vīta, -ae**, f. [cf. **vīvō**, *live*], *life, vītam agere, spend or pass life*  
**vīto, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *shun, avoid*  
**vīvō, -ere, vīxī, —, —**, *live*. Cf. **habitō, incolō**  
**vīvus, -a, -um**, adj. [cf. **vīvō**, *live*], *alive, living*  
**vix**, adv. *scarcely, hardly*  
**vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *call, summon, invite*. Cf. **appellō, nōminō**  
**volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus**, *fly*  
**volō, velle, voluī, —, —**, irreg. verb, *will, be willing; wish* (§ 497). Cf. **cupio**  
**volūmen, -inis**, n. *roll, book*  
**Vorēnus, -ī**, m. *Vore'nus, a centurion*  
**vōs**, pers. pron.; *you* (see **tū**) (§ 480)  
**vōtum, -i**, n. [neut. part. of **voveō**, *vow*], *vow, pledge, prayer*  
**vōx, vōcis**, f. [cf. **vocō**, *call*], *voice, cry; word*  
**vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [**vulnus**, *wound*], *wound, hurt*  
**vulnus, -eris**, n. *wound, injury*  
**vulpēs, -is**, f. *fox*



EQUES ROMANUS

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

This vocabulary contains only the words used in the English-Latin exercises. For details not given here, reference may be made to the Latin-English vocabulary. The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, after verbs indicate the conjugation.

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W Y Z

### A

**a, an**, *commonly not translated*  
**able (be)**, *possum, posse, potuī, —* (§ 495)  
**abode**, *domicilium, domici'li, n.*  
**about (adv.)**, *circiter*  
**about (prep.)**, *dē, with abl.*  
**about to**, *expressed by fut. act. part.*  
**abundance**, *cōpia, -ae, f.*  
**across**, *trāns, with acc.*

**announce**, *nūntiō, 1*  
**annoying**, *molestus, -a, -um*  
**another**, *alius, -a, -ud* (§ 109)  
**any**, *ūllus, -a, -um* (§ 108)  
**any one, anything**, *quisquam, quicquam or quidquam* (§ 486)  
**appearance**, *fōrma, -ae, f.*  
**appoint**, *creō, 1*  
**approach**, *adpropinquō, 1, with dat.*

**active**, ācer, ācris, ācre  
**advance**, prōgredior, 3  
**advantage**, ūsus, -ūs, *m.*  
**advise**, moneō, 2  
**after** (*conj.*), postquam; *often expressed by the perf. part.*  
**after** (*prep.*), post, *with acc.*  
**against**, in, contrā, *with acc.*  
**aid**, auxilium, auxili'ī, *n.*  
**all**, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um (§ 108)  
**allow**, patior, 3  
**ally**, socius, soci, *m.*  
**almost**, paene; ferē  
**alone**, ūnus, -a, -um; sōlus, -a, -um (§ 108)  
**already**, iam  
**also**, quoque  
**always**, semper  
**ambassador**, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*  
**among**, apud, *with acc.*  
**ancient**, antiqūus, -a, -um  
**and**, et; atque (ac); -que  
**and so**, itaque  
**Andromeda**, Andromeda, -ae, *f.*  
**angry**, irātus, -a, um  
**animal**, animal, -ālis, *n.*

**bad**, malus, -a, -um  
**baggage**, impedīmenta, -ōrum, *n. plur.*  
**bank**, rīpa, -ae, *f.*  
**barbarians**, barbarī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*  
**battle**, proelium, proelī, *n.*; pugna, -ae, *f.*  
**be**, sum (§ 494)  
**be absent, be far**, absum (§ 494)  
**be afraid**, timeō, 2; vereor, 2  
**be away**, absum (§ 494)  
**be in command of**, praesum, *with dat.* (§§ 494, 426)  
**be informed**, certior fiō  
**be off, be distant**, absum (§ 494)  
**be without**, egeō, *with abl.* (§ 180)  
**beast (wild)**, fera, -ae, *f.*  
**beautiful**, pulcher, -chra, -chrum  
**because**, quia; quod  
**because of**, propter, *with acc.; or abl. of cause*  
**before, heretofore** (*adv.*), antea  
**before** (*prep.*), ante, *with acc.*; prō, *with abl.*  
**begin**, incipiō, 3  
**believe**, crēdō, 3, *with dat.* (§ 153)  
**belong to**, *predicate genitive* (§ 409)  
**best**, optimus, *superl. of bonus*  
**betray**, trādō, 3  
**better**, melior, *comp. of bonus*  
**between**, inter, *with acc.*

**Cæsar**, Caesar, -aris, *m.*  
**calamity**, calamitās, -ātis, *f.*  
**call**, vocō, 1; appellō, 1; nōminō, 1  
**call together**, convocō, 1  
**camp**, castra, -ōrum, *n. plur.*  
**can, could**, possum, posse, potuī, — (§ 495)  
**capture**, capiō, 3; occupō, 1  
**care**, cūra, -ae, *f.*  
**care for**, cūrō, 1  
**careful**, attentus, -a, -um  
**carefulness**, diligentia, -ae, *f.*  
**carry**, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (§ 498); portō, 1  
**carry on**, gerō, 3  
**cart**, carrus, -ī, *m.*  
**cause**, causa, -ae, *f.*

**are**, *used as auxiliary, not translated; as a copula*, sum (§ 494)  
**arise**, orior, 4  
**arm**, braccium, braccī, *n.*  
**armed**, armātus, -a, -um  
**arms**, arma, -ōrum, *n. plur.*  
**army**, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*  
**around**, circum, *with acc.*  
**arrival**, adventus, -us, *m.*  
**arrow**, sagitta, -ae, *f.*  
**art of war**, rēs militāris  
**as possible**, *expressed by quam and superl.*  
**ask**, petō, 3; quaerō, 3; rogō, 1  
**assail**, oppugnō, 1  
**at**, in, *with acc. or abl.; with names of towns, locative case or abl. without a preposition* (§ 268); *time when, abl.*  
**at once**, statim  
**at the beginning of summer**, initā aestāte  
**Athens**, Athēnae, -ārum, *f.*  
**attack**, impetus, -us, *m.*  
**attempt**, cōnor, 1; temptō, 1  
**away from**, ā or ab, *with abl.*

## B

**billow**, fluctus, -us, *m.*  
**bird**, avis, -is, *f.* (§ 243. 1)  
**blood**, sanguis, -inis, *m.*  
**body**, corpus, -oris, *n.*  
**bold**, audāx, -ācis; fortis, -e  
**boldly**, audācter; fortiter  
**boldness**, audācia, -ae, *f.*  
**booty**, praeda, -ae, *f.*  
**both, each** (*of two*), uterque, utraque, utrumque  
**both ... and**, et ... et  
**boy**, puer, -erī, *m.*  
**brave**, fortis, -e  
**bravely**, fortiter  
**bridge**, pōns, pontis, *m.*  
**bright**, clārus, -a, -um  
**bring back**, reportō, 1  
**bring upon**, īferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *with acc. and dat.* (§ 426)  
**brother**, frāter, -tris, *m.*  
**building**, aedificium, aedifi'cī, *n.*  
**burn**, cremō, 1; incendō, 3  
**business**, negōtium, negō'tī, *n.*  
**but, however**, autem, sed  
**by**, ā, ab, *with abl.; denoting means, abl. alone; sometimes implied in a participle*  
**by night**, noctū

## C

**citizen**, cīvis, -is, *m. and f.* (§ 243. 1)  
**city**, urbs, urbis, *f.*  
**clear**, clārus, -a, -um  
**cohort**, cohors, -rtis, *f.*  
**come**, veniō, 4  
**command**, imperō, 1, *with dat.* (§ 45); iubeō, 2; praesum, *with dat.* (§ 426)  
**commit**, committō, 3  
**commonwealth**, rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae  
**concerning**, dē, *with abl.*  
**conquer**, superō, 1; vincō, 3  
**construct** (*a ditch*), perdūcō, 3  
**consul**, cōsul, -ulis, *m.*  
**contrary to**, contrā, *with acc.*  
**Corinth**, Corinthus, -ī, *f.*

**cavalry**, equitātus, -ūs, *m.*  
**cease**, cessō, 1  
**Cepheus**, Cēpheus, -ī, *m.*  
**certain (a)**, quīdam, quaedam,  
quoddam (quiddam) (§ 485)  
**chicken**, gallīna, -ae, *f.*  
**chief**, prīnceps, -cipis, *m.*  
**children**, liberī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*  
**choose**, dēligō, 3  
**choose, elect**, creō, 1

**daily**, cotīdiē  
**danger**, perīculum, -ī, *n.*  
**daughter**, filia, -ae, *f.* (§ 67)  
**day**, diēs, -ēī, *m.*  
**daybreak**, prīma lūx  
**dear**, cārus, -a, -um  
**death**, mors, mortis, *f.*  
**deed**, rēs, reī, *f.*  
**deep**, altus, -a, -um  
**defeat**, calamitās, -ātis, *f.*  
**defend**, dēfendō, 3  
**delay (Noun)**, mora, -ae, *f.*  
**delay (verb)**, moror, 1  
**demand**, postulō, 1  
**dense**, dēnsus, -a, -um  
**depart**, discēdō, 3; exeō, 4;  
proficīscor, 3  
**dependent**, cliēns, -entis, *m.*  
**design**, cōnsilium, consi'li *n.*  
**desire**, cupiō, 3  
**destroy**, dēleō, 2

**each**, quisque, quaeque, quidque  
(quodque) (§ 484)  
**each of two**, uterque, utraque,  
utrumque  
**each other**, inter *with acc. of a*  
*reflexive*  
**eager**, ācer, ācris, ācre; alacer,  
alacris, alacre  
**eager (be)**, studeō, 2  
**eagerness**, studium, studī, *n.*  
**eagle**, aquila, -ae, *f.*  
**easily**, facile  
**easy**, facilis, -e

**faithless**, perfidus, -a, -um  
**famous**, clārus, -a, -um  
**far**, longē  
**farmer**, agricola, -ae, *m.*  
**farther**, ulterior, -ius  
**father**, pater, patris, *m.*  
**fatherland**, patria, -ae, *f.*  
**favor**, faveō, 2  
**favorable**, idōneus, -a, -um; secundus, -  
a, -um  
**fear**, metus, -ūs, *m.*; timor, -ōris, *m.*  
**fear, be afraid**, timeō, 2  
**few**, paucī, -ae, -a  
**field**, ager, agrī, *m.*  
**fifteen**, quīndecim  
**fight**, contendō, 3; pugnō, 1  
**find**, reperiō, 4  
**finish**, cōficiō, 3  
**fire**, ignis, -is, *m.* (§ 243. 1)  
**firmness**, cōstantia, -ae, *f.*  
**first**, primus, -a, -um  
**flee**, fugiō, 3  
**flight**, fuga, -ae, *f.*  
**fly**, volō, 1  
**foe**, see **enemy**

**Cornelia**, Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*  
**Cornelius**, Cornēlius, Cornē'li, *m.*  
**corselet**, lōrica, -ae, *f.*  
**cottage**, casa, -ae, *f.*  
**country**, *as distinguished from the*  
*city*, rūs, rūris, *n.*; *as territory*,  
fīnēs, -ium, *m., plur. of finis*  
**courage**, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*  
**crime**, scelus, -eris, *n.*  
**cross**, trānseō, 4 (§ 499)  
**crown**, corōna, -ae, *f.*

## D

**Diana**, Diāna, -ae, *f.*  
**differ**, differō, differre, distulī, dilātus  
(§ 498)  
**different**, dissimilis, -e  
**difficult**, difficilis, -e  
**difficulty**, difficultās, -ātis, *f.*  
**diligence**, dīligentia, -ae, *f.*  
**dinner**, cēna, -ae, *f.*  
**disaster**, calamitās, -ātis, *f.*  
**distant (be)**, absūm, -esse, āfuī,  
āfutūrus (§ 494)  
**ditch**, fossa, -ae, *f.*  
**do**, agō, 3; faciō, 3; *when used as*  
*auxiliary, not translated*  
**down from**, dē, *with abl.*  
**drag**, trahō, 3  
**drive**, agō, 3  
**dwell**, habitō, 1; incolō, 3; vīvō, 3  
**dwelling**, aedificium, aedifi'ci, *n.*

## E

**either ... or**, aut ... aut  
**empire**, imperium, impe'rī, *n.*  
**employ**, negōtium dō  
**encourage**, hortor, 1  
**enemy**, hostis, -is, *m. and f.*; inimīcus,  
-ī, *m.*  
**enough**, satis  
**entire**, tōtus, -a, -um (§ 108)  
**expectation**, opīniō, -ōnis, *f.*  
**eye**, oculus, -ī, *m.*

## F

**foot-soldier**, pedes, -itis, *m.*  
**for (conj.)**, enim, nam  
**for (prep.)**, sign of *dat.*; dē, prō, *with*  
*abl.*; *to express purpose*, ad, *with*  
*gerundive*; *implied in acc. of time*  
*and of extent of space*  
**for a long time**, diū  
**forbid**, vetō, 1  
**forces**, cōpiae, -ārum, *f., plur. of cōpia*  
**forest**, silva, -ae, *f.*  
**fort**, castellum, -ī, *n.*; castrum, -ī, *n.*  
**fortification**, mūnitiō, -ōnis, *f.*  
**fortify**, mūniō, 4  
**fortune**, fortūna, -ae, *f.*  
**fourth**, quārtus, -a, -um  
**free**, liber, -era, -erum  
**free, liberate**, liberō, 1  
**frequent**, crēber, -bra, -brum  
**friend**, amīcus, -ī, *m.*  
**friendly (adj.)**, amīcus, -a, -um  
**friendly (adv.)**, amīcē  
**friendship**, amīcītia, -ae, *f.*  
**frighten**, perterreō, 2  
**from**, ā or ab, dē, ē, ex, *with abl. Often*  
*expressed by the separative*

**follow close after**, subsequor, 3  
**food**, cibus, -ī, *m.*  
**foot**, pēs, pedis, *m.*

**Galba**, Galba, -ae, *m.*  
**garland**, corōna, -ae, *f.*  
**garrison**, praesidium, praesi'dī, *n.*  
**gate**, porta, -ae, *f.*  
**Gaul**, Gallia, -ae, *f.*  
**Gaul (a)**, Gallus, -ī, *m.*  
**general**, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*  
**Geneva**, Genāva, -ae, *f.*  
**gentle**, lēnis, -e  
**German**, Germānus, -a, -um  
**Germans (the)**, Germānī, -ōrum, *m.*  
*plur.*  
**Germany**, Germānia, -ae, *f.*  
**get (dinner)**, parō, 1  
**girl**, puella, -ae, *f.*

**hand**, manus, -ūs, *f.*  
**happy**, laetus, -a, -um  
**harbor**, portus, -ūs, *m.*  
**hasten**, contendō, 3; mātūrō, 1;  
properō, 1  
**hateful**, invīsus, -a, -um  
**haughty**, superbus, -a, -um  
**have**, habēō, 2  
**have no power**, nihil possum  
**he**, is; hic; iste; ille; *or not expressed*  
**head**, caput, -itis, *n.*  
**hear**, audiō  
**heart**, animus, -ī, *m.*  
**heavy**, gravis, -e  
**Helvetii (the)**, Helvētīi, -ōrum, *m.*  
*plur.*  
**hem in**, contineō, 2  
**hen**, gallīna, -ae, *f.*  
**her**, eius; huius; istīus; illīus; *reflexive*,  
suus, -a, -um (§ 116)  
**hide**, abdō, 3

**I**, ego (§ 280); *or not expressed*  
**if**, sī. **if not**, nisi  
**ill**, aeger, -gra, -grum  
**immediately**, statim  
**in (of place)**, in, *with abl.*; (of time or  
of specification) *abl. without prep.*  
**in order that**, ut, *with subjv.*;  
**in order that not, lest**, nē, *with*  
*subjv.*  
**in vain**, frūstrā  
**industry**, dīligentia, -ae, *f.*  
**inflict injuries upon**, iniūriās īferō  
*with dat.* (§ 426)  
**inflict punishment on**, supplicium  
sūmō de  
**inform some one**, aliquem certīorem  
faciō

**join battle**, proelium committō  
**journey**, iter, itineris, *n.* (§ 468)  
**judge (Noun)**, iūdex, -icis, *m.*

**keep**, contineō, 2; prohibeo, 2; teneō,  
2  
**keep on doing something**, *expressed*  
*by the impf. indic.*

*ablative without a prep.*  
**from each other**, inter, *with acc. of a*  
*reflexive pron.*  
**full**, plēnus, -a, -um

## G

**give**, dō, dare, dedī, datus  
**give over, surrender**, dēdō, 3; trādō,  
3  
**give up**, omittō, 3  
**go**, eō, 4 (§ 499)  
**go forth**, prōgredior, 3  
**god**, deus, -ī, *m.* (§ 468)  
**goddess**, dea, -ae, *f.* (§ 67)  
**gold**, aurum, -ī, *n.*  
**good**, bonus, -a, -um  
**grain**, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*  
**grain supply**, rēs frūmentāria  
**great**, ingēns, -entis; magnus, -a, -um  
**greatest**, maximus, -a, -um; summus, -  
a, -um  
**guard**, praesidium, praesi'dī, *n.*

## H

**high**, altus, -a, -um  
**highest**, summus, -a, -um  
**hill**, collis, -is, *m.*  
**himself**, suī. See **self**  
**hindrance**, impedimentum, -ī, *n.*  
**his**, eius; huius; istīus; illīus; *reflexive*,  
suus, -a, -um (§ 116)  
**hither**, citerior, -ius (§ 315)  
**hold**, teneō, 2  
**home**, domus, -ūs, *f.* (§ 468).  
**at home**, domī (§ 267)  
**hope (Noun)**, spēs, speī, *f.*  
**hope (verb)**, spērō, 1  
**horse**, equus, -ī, *m.*  
**horseman**, eques, -itis, *m.*  
**hostage**, obses, -idis, *m. and f.*  
**hostile**, inimīcus, -a, -um  
**hour**, hōra, -ae, *f.*  
**house**, domicilium, domici'li, *n.*;  
domus, -ūs, *f.* (§ 468)  
**hurl**, iaciō, 3

## I

**injure**, noceō, 2, *with dat.* (§ 153)  
**injury**, iniūria, -ae, *f.*  
**into**, in, *with acc.*  
**intrust**, committō, 3; mandō, 1  
**invite**, vocō, 1  
**is**, *used as auxiliary, not translated; as*  
*a copula*, sum (§ 494)  
**island**, īnsula, -ae, *f.*  
**it**, is; hie; iste; ille; *or not expressed*  
**Italy**, Italia, -ae, *f.*  
**its**, eius; huius; istīus; illīus; *reflexive*,  
suus, -a, -um (§ 116)  
**itself**, suī. See **self**

## J

**judge (verb)**, iūdicō, 1  
**Julia**, Iūlia, -ae, *f.*  
**just now**, nūper

## K

**king**, rēx, rēgis, *m.*  
**kingdom**, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*  
**know**, cognōscō, 3, *in perf.*; sciō, 4

**kill**, interficiō, 3; necō, 1 ; occidō, 3

**labor** (*Noun*), labor, -ōris, *m.*  
**labor** (*verb*), labōrō, 1  
**lack** (*Noun*), inopia, -ae, *f.*  
**lack** (*verb*), egeō, 2, *with abl.* (§ 180)  
**lady**, domina, -ae, *f.*  
**lake**, lacus, -ūs, *m.* (§ 260. 2)  
**land**, terra, -ae, *f.*  
**language**, lingua, -ae, *f.*  
**large**, ingēns, -entis ; magnus, -a, -um  
**larger**, maior, maius  
**lately**, nūper  
**Latona**, Lātōna, -ae, *f.*  
**law**, lēx, lēgis, *f.*  
**lay waste**, vāstō, 1  
**lead**, dūco, 3  
**leader**, dux, ducis, *m. and f.*  
**learn, know**, cognōscō, 3  
**leave, depart from**, discēdō, 3  
**leave behind, abandon**, relinquo, 3

**maid, maid servant**, ancilla, -ae, *f.*  
**make**, faciō, 3  
**make war upon**, bellum īferō *with dat.* (§ 426)  
**man**, homō, -inis, *m. and f.*; vir, virī, *m.*  
**man-of-war**, nāvis longa  
**many**, multī, -ae, -a, *plur. of multus*  
**march**, iter, itineris, *n.* (§ 468)  
**Mark**, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*  
**marriage**, mātīmōnium, mātīmō' nī, *n.*  
**master**, dominus, -ī, *m.*; magīster, -trī, *m.*  
**matter**, negōtium, negō' tī, *n.*; rēs, reī, *f.*  
**means, by means of**, *the abl.*  
**messenger**, nūntius, nūntī, *m.*  
**midnight**, media nox  
**mile**, mille passuum (§ 331. b)  
**miles**, mīlia passuum  
**mind**, animus, -ī, *m.*; mēns, mentis, *f.*

**name**, nōmen, -inis, *n.*  
**nation**, gēns, gentis, *f.*  
**near**, propinquus, -a, -um  
**nearest**, proximus, -a, -um  
**nearly**, ferē  
**neighbor**, finitimus, -ī, *in.*  
**neighboring**, finitimus, -a, -um  
**neither**, neque *or* nec;  
**neither ... nor**, neque (nec) ... neque (nec)  
**never**, numquam  
**nevertheless**, tamen  
**new**, novus, -a, -um  
**next day**, postrīdiē eius diēi  
**next to**, proximus, -a, -um

**obey**, pāreō, 2, *with dat.* (§ 153)  
**of**, *sign of gen.*;  
dē, *with abl.*;  
**out of**, ē *or* ex, *with abl.*  
**often**, saepe  
**on** (*of place*), in, *with abl.*;  
(*of time*) *abl. without prep.*  
**on account of**, propter, *with acc.*; *or abl. of cause.*  
**on all sides**, undique  
**once** (*upon a time*), ōlim

## L

**left**, sinister, -tra, -trum  
**legion**, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*  
**legionaries**, legiōnārīi, -ōrum, *m. plur.*  
**length**, longitūdō, -inis, *f.*  
**lest**, nē, *with subjv.*  
**letter** (*of the alphabet*), littera, -ae, *f.*  
(*an epistle*) litterae, -ārum, *f. plur.*  
**lieutenant**, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*  
**light**, lūx, lūcis, *f.*  
**like** (*adj.*), similis, -e  
**like, love**, amō, 1  
**line of battle**, aciēs, aciēi, *f.*  
**little**, parvus, -a, -um  
**live**, habitō, 1; incolō, 3; vīvō, 3  
**long**, longus, -a, -um  
**long, for a long time**, diū  
**long for**, dēsiderō, 1  
**look after**, cūrō, 1  
**love**, amō, 1

## M

**mine**, meus, -a, -um  
**mistress**, domina, -ae, *f.*  
**money**, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*  
**monster**, mōnstrum, -ī, *n.*  
**month**, mēnsis, -is, *m.*  
**moon**, lūna, -ae, *f.*  
**more** (*adj.*), plūs, plūris (§ 313); *or a comparative. Adverb, magis*  
**most** (*adj.*), plūrimus, -a, -um; *superl. degree. Adverb, maximē;*  
plūrimum  
**mother**, māter, mātris, *f.*  
**mountain**, mōns, montis, *m.*  
**move**, moveō, 2  
**moved**, commōtus, -a, -um  
**much (by)**, multō  
**multitude**, multitūdō, -inis, *f.*  
**my**, meus, -a, -um  
**myself**, mē, *reflexive. See self*

## N

**night**, nox, noctis, *f.*  
**nine**, novem  
**no**, minimē; *or repeat verb with a negative* (§ 210)  
**no, none**, nūllus, -a, -um (§ 109)  
**no one**, nēmō, nūllius  
**nor**, neque *or* nec  
**not**, nōn  
**not even**, nē ... quidem  
**not only ... but also**, nōn sōlum ... sed etiam  
**nothing**, nihil *or* nihilum, -ī, *n.*  
**now**, nunc  
**number**, numerus, -ī, *m.*

## O

**opportune**, opportunus, -a, -um  
**opposite**, adversus, -a, -um  
**oracle**, ōrāculum, -ī, *n.*  
**orator**, ōrātor, -ōris, *m.*  
**order**, imperō, 1; iubeō, 2  
**ornament**, ōrnāmentum, -ī, *n.*  
**other**, alius, -a, -ud (§ 109)  
**others (the)**, reliquī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*  
**ought**, dēbeō, 2  
**our**, noster, -tra, -trum  
**ourselves**, nōs, *as reflexive object.*

**one**, ūnus, -a, -um (§ 108)  
**one ... another**, alius ... alius (§ 110)  
**only** (*adv.*), sōlum; tantum

**part**, pars, partis, *f.*  
**peace**, pāx, pācis, *f.*  
**people**, populus, -ī, *m.*  
**Perseus**, Perseus, -ī, *m.*  
**persuade**, persuādeō, 2, *with dat.*  
(§ 153)  
**pitch camp**, castra pōnō  
**place** (*Noun*), locus, -ī, *m.*  
**place, arrange**, conlocō, 1  
**place, put**, pōnō, 3  
**place in command**, praeficiō, 3, *with acc. and dat.* (§ 426)  
**plan (a)**, cōnsilium, cōnsilī, *n.*  
**please**, placeō, 2, *with dat.* (§ 154)  
**pleasing**, grātus, -a, -um  
**plow**, arō, 1  
**Pompeii**, Pompēiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*

**queen**, rēgīna, -ae, *f.*  
**quickly**, celeriter

**rampart**, vāllum, -ī, *n.*  
**rear**, novissimum agmen  
**reason**, causa, -ae, *f.*  
**receive**, accipiō, 3; excipiō, 3  
**recent**, recēns, -entis  
**recently**, nūper  
**redoubt**, castellum, -ī, *n.*  
**refuse**, recūsō, 1  
**remain**, manēō, 2  
**remaining**, reliquus, -a, -um  
**reply**, respondeō, 2  
**report** (*Noun*), fama, -ae, *f.*; rūmor, -ōris, *m.*  
**report** (*verb*), adferō; dēferō; referō (§ 498)  
**republic**, rēs pūblica  
**require**, postulō, 1  
**resist**, resistō, 3, *with dat.* (§ 154)

**sacrifice**, sacrum, -ī, *n.*  
**safety**, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*  
**sail**, nāvigō, 1  
**sailor**, nauta, -ae, *m.*  
**sake, for the sake of**, causā, *following a gen.*  
**same**, idem, eadem, idem (§ 287)  
**savages**, barbarī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*  
**save**, servō, 1  
**say**, dīcō, 3  
**school**, lūdus, -ī, *m.*; schola, -ae, *f.*  
**scout**, explōrator, -ōris, *m.*  
**sea**, mare, -is, *n.*  
**second**, secundus, -a, -um  
**see**, videō, 2  
**seek**, petō, 3  
**seem**, videor, 2, *passive of videō*  
**seize**, occupō, 1; rapiō, 3  
**self**, ipse, -a, -um (§ 286); suī (§ 281)  
**send**, mittō, 3  
**set fire to**, incendō, 3  
**set out**, proficiscor, 3  
**seven**, septem  
**Sextus**, Sextus, -ī, *m.*  
**she**, ea; haec; ista; illa (§ 115); *or not*

See **self**

**overcome**, superō, 1; vincō, 3  
**own (his, her, its, their)**, suus, -a, -um

## P

**possible (as)**, *expressed by quam and superl.*  
**powerful (be)**, valeō, 2  
**praise**, laudō, 1  
**prefer**, mālō, mālle, mālūī, — (§ 497)  
**prepare for**, parō, 1, *with acc.*  
**press hard**, premō, 3  
**protection**, fidēs, fideī, *f.*  
**province**, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*  
**public**, pūblicus, -a, -um  
**Publius**, Pūblius, Pūblī, *m.*  
**punishment**, poena, -ae, *f.*; supplicium, supplīcī, *n.*  
**purpose, for the purpose of**, ut, quī, *or quō, with subjv.*; ad, *with gerund or gerundive*; causā, *following the genitive of a gerund or gerundive*  
**pursue**, īnsequor, 3

## Q

**quite**, *expressed by the comp. degree*

## R

**rest (the)**, reliquī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*  
**restrain**, contineō, 2  
**retainer**, cliēns, -entis, *m.*  
**retreat**, pedem referō; terga vertō  
**return**, redeō, 4; revertor, 3  
**revolution**, rēs novae  
**Rhine**, Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*  
**right**, dexter, -tra, -trum  
**river**, flūmen, -inis, *n.*; fluvius, fluvī, *m.*  
**road**, via, -ae, *f.*  
**Roman**, Rōmānus, -a, -um  
**Rome**, Rōma, -ae, *f.*  
**row**, ōrdō, -inis, *m.*  
**rule**, regō, 3  
**rumor**, fāma, -ae, *f.*; rūmor, -ōris, *m.*  
**run**, currō, 3

## S

**small**, parvus, -a, -um  
**snatch**, rapiō, 3  
**so**, ita; sic; tam  
**so great**, tantus, -a, -um  
**so that**, ut; **so that not**, ut nōn  
**soldier**, miles, -itis, *m.*  
**some**, *often not expressed*; quis (quī), qua (quae), quid (quod); aliquī, aliqua, aliquod  
**some one**, quis; aliquis (§ 487)  
**some ... others**, aliī ... aliī (§ 110)  
**something**, quid; aliquid (§ 487)  
**son**, filius, fili, *m.*  
**soon**, mox  
**space**, spatium, spatī, *n.*  
**spear**, pīlum, -ī, *n.*  
**spirited**, ācer, ācris, ācre; alacer, alacris, alacre  
**spring**, fōns, fontis, *m.*  
**spur**, calcar, -āris, *n.*  
**stand**, stō, 1  
**state**, civitās, -ātis, *f.*  
**station**, conlocō, 1  
**steadiness**, cōnstantia, -ae, *f.*  
**stone**, lapis, -idis, *m.*

*expressed*  
**ship**, nāvis, -is, *f.* (§ 243. 1)  
**short**, brevis, -e  
**shout**, clāmor, -ōris, *m.*  
**show**, dēmōnstrō, 1  
**Sicily**, Sicilia, -ae, *f.*  
**sick**, aeger, -gra, -grum  
**side**, latus, -eris, *n.*  
**siege**, obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.*  
**since**, cum, *with subjv.* (§ 396); *the abl. abs.* (§ 381)  
**sing**, canō, 3; cantō, 1  
**sister**, soror, -ōris, *f.*  
**sit**, sedeō, 2  
**size**, magnitūdō, -inis, *f.*  
**skillful**, perītus, -a, -um  
**slave**, servus, -ī, *m.*  
**slavery**, servitiūs, -ūtis, *f.*  
**slow**, tardus, -a, -um

**take, capture**, capiō, 3  
**take part in**, intersum, -esse, -fui, -  
futūrus, *with dat.* (§ 426)  
**take possession of**, occupō, 1  
**tall**, altus, -a, -um  
**task**, opus, operis, *n.*  
**teach**, doceō, 2  
**teacher**, magister, -trī, *m.*  
**tear** (*Noun*), lacrima, -ae, *f.*  
**tell**, dīcō, 3; nārrō, 1  
**ten**, decem  
**terrified**, perterritus, -a, -um  
**terrify**, perterreō, 2  
**than**, quam  
**that** (*conj. after verbs of saying and the like*), *not expressed*  
**that** (*pron.*), is; iste; ille  
**that, in order that**, *in purpose clauses*, ut; *after verbs of fearing*, nē (§§ 349, 366, 372)  
**that not, lest**, *in purpose clauses*, nē; *after verbs of fearing*, ut (§§ 349, 366, 372)  
**the**, *not expressed*  
**their**, *gen. plur. of is; reflexive*, suus, -a, -um (§ 116)  
**their own**, suus, -a, -um (§ 116)  
**then, at that time**, tum  
**then, in the next place**, deinde, tum  
**there**, *as expletive, not expressed*  
**there, in that place**, ibi  
**therefore**, itaque  
**they**, iī; hī; istī; illī; *or not expressed*

**under**, sub, *with acc. or abl.*  
**undertake**, suscipiō, 3  
**unharméd**, incolumis, -e  
**unless**, nisi

**very**, *superl. degree*; maximē; ipse, -a, -um (§ 285)  
**victor**, victor, -ōris, *m.*  
**victory**, victōria, -ae, *f.*  
**village**, vīcus, -ī, *m.*

**wage**, gerō, 3  
**wagon**, carrus, -ī, *m.*  
**wall**, mūrus, -ī, *m.*  
**want**, inopia, -ae, *f.*  
**war**, bellum, -ī, *n.*  
**watch**, vigilia, -ae, *f.*

**storm**, oppugnō, 1  
**story**, fābula, -ae, *f.*  
**street**, via, -ae, *f.*  
**strength**, vīs, (vīs), *f.*  
**strong**, fortis, -e; validus, -a, -um  
**sturdy**, validus, -a, -um  
**such**, tālis, -e  
**suddenly**, subitō  
**suffer punishment**, supplicium dō  
**sufficiently**, satis  
**suitable**, idōneus, -a, -um  
**summer**, aestās, -ātis, *f.*  
**sun**, sōl, sōlis, *m.*  
**supplies**, commeātus, -ūs, *m.*  
**surrender**, trādō, 3  
**suspect**, suspicor, 1  
**swift**, celer, -eris, -ere; vēlōx, -ōcis  
**sword**, gladius, gladī, *m.*

## T

**think**, arbitror, 1; exīstimō, 1; putō, 1  
**third**, tertius, -a, -um  
**this**, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id  
**though**, cum, *with subjv.* (§ 396)  
**thousand**, mille (§ 479)  
**three**, trēs, tria (§ 479)  
**through**, per, *with acc.*  
**thy**, tuus, -a, -um  
**time**, tempus, -oris, *n.*  
**to**, *sign of dat.*; ad, in, *with acc.*; *expressing purpose*, ut, quī, *with subjv.*; ad, *with gerund or gerundive*  
**to each other**, inter, *with acc. of a reflexive pron.*  
**to-day**, hodiē  
**tooth**, dēns, dentis, *m.*  
**top of**, summus, -a, -um  
**tower**, turris, -is, *f.* (§ 243. 2)  
**town**, oppidum, -ī, *n.*  
**townsman**, oppidānus, -ī, *m.*  
**trace**, vestīgium, vestī' gī, *n.*  
**trader**, mercātor, -ōris, *m.*  
**train**, exerceō, 2  
**tree**, arbor, -oris, *f.*  
**tribe**, gēns, gentis, *f.*  
**troops**, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*  
**true**, vērus, -a, -um  
**trumpet**, tuba, -ae, *f.*  
**try**, cōnor, 1; temptō, 1  
**twelve**, duodecim  
**two**, duo, duae, duo (§ 479)

## U

**unlike**, dissimilis, -e  
**unwilling (be)**, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — (§ 497)  
**up to**, sub, *with acc.*  
**us**, nōs, *acc. plur. of ego*

## V

**violence**, vīs, (vīs), *f.*  
**violently**, vehementer  
**voice**, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

## W

**wicked**, malus, -a, -um  
**wide**, lātus, -a, -um  
**width**, lātitudō, -inis, *f.*  
**wild beast**, fera, -ae, *f.*  
**willing (be)**, volō, velle, voluī, — (§ 497)

**water**, aqua, -ae, *f.*  
**wave**, fluctus, -ūs, *m.*  
**way**, iter, itineris, *n.* (§ 468); via, -ae, *f.*  
**way, manner**, modus, -ī, *m.*  
**we**, nōs, *plur. of ego; or not expressed*  
**weak**, infirmus, -a, -um  
**weapons**, arma, -ōrum, *n. plur.*; tēla, -ōrum, *n. plur.*  
**wear**, gerō, 3  
**weary**, defessus, -a, -um  
**what**, quis (quī), quae, quid (quod) (§ 483)  
**when**, ubi; cum (§ 396); *often expressed by a participle*  
**where**, ubi  
**which**, quī, quae, quod (§ 482); **which of two**, uter, utra, utrum (§ 108)  
**while**, *expressed by a participle*  
**whither**, quō  
**who** (*rel.*), quī, quae (§ 482); (*interrog.*) quis (§ 483)  
**whole**, tōtus, -a, -um (§ 108)  
**whose**, cuius; quōrum, quārum, quōrum, *gen. of quī, quae, quod, rel.; or of quis, quid, interrog.*  
**why**, cūr

**year**, annus, -ī, *m.*  
**yes**, certē; ita; vērō; *or, more usually, repeat the verb* (§ 210)  
**yonder (that)**, ille, -a, -ud

**zeal**, studium, studī, *n.*

**win** (*a victory*), reportō, 1  
**wind**, ventus, -ī, *m.*  
**wine**, vīnum, -ī, *n.*  
**wing**, cornū, -ūs, *n.*  
**winter**, hiems, -emis, *f.*  
**wisdom**, cōsiliū, consi'li, *n.*  
**wish**, cupiō, 3; volō, velle, voluī, — (§ 497);  
**wish not**, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — (§ 497)  
**with**, cum, *with abl.; sometimes abl. alone*  
**withdraw**, sē recipere  
**without**, sine, *with abl.*  
**woman**, fēmina, -ae, *f.*; mulier, -eris, *f.*  
**wonderful**, mīrus, -a, -um  
**word**, verbum, -ī, *n.*  
**work**, labor, -ōris, *m.*; opus, -eris, *n.*  
**worse**, peior, peius, *comp. of malus*  
**worst**, pessimus, -a, -um, *superl. of malus*  
**wound** (*Noun*), vulnus, -eris, *n.*  
**wound** (*verb*), vulnerō, 1  
**wreath**, corōna, -ae, *f.*  
**wretched**, miser, -era, -erum  
**wrong**, iniūria, -ae, *f.*

## Y

**you**, *sing. tū; plur. vōs* (§ 480); *or not expressed*  
**your**, *sing. tuus, -a, -um; plur. vester, -tra, -trum* (§ 98. b)

## Z

## INDEX

The numbers in all cases refer to sections.

**ā**-declension of nouns, 57, 461  
**ā**-verbs, conjugation of, 488  
**ablative** case, 48, 50  
 absolute, 381  
 after a comparative, 309  
 of accompaniment, 104  
 of agent, 181  
 of cause, 102  
 of description, 444, 445  
 of manner, 105  
 of means or instrument, 103  
 of measure of difference, 317  
 of place from which, 179  
 of place where, 265  
 of separation, 180  
 of specification, 398  
 of time, 275  
**accent**, 14-16  
**accompaniment**  
 abl. of, 104  
**accusative** case, 33  
 as subject of the infinitive, 214  
 object, 37  
 of duration and extent, 336  
 of place to which, 263, 266  
 predicate, 392  
 with prepositions, 340

**adjectives**, 54, 55  
 agreement, 65  
 comparison  
 regular, 301  
 by adverbs, 302  
 irregular, 307, 311, 312, 315  
 declension of comparatives, 303  
 of first and second declensions, 83, 93, 469  
 of third declension, 250-257, 471  
 with the dative, 143  
**adverbs**, 319  
 comparison, 320, 323  
 formation  
 regular, 320, 321  
 irregular, 322, 323  
**agent**  
 expressed by the abl. with *ā* or *ab*, 181  
**agreement**  
 of adjectives, 65, 215. a  
 of appositives, 81  
 of predicate nouns, 76  
 of relative pronouns, 224  
 of verbs, 28  
**aliquis**, 487  
**alius**, 108, 110, 470  
**alphabet**, 1-3  
**alter**, 108, 110  
**antepenult.**, 9. 3  
 accent of, 15  
**apposition**, 80, 81  
**article**



**base**, 58

**cardinal numerals**, 327-329, 478  
**case**, 32. 2  
**causal clauses** with *cum*, 395, 396  
**cause**,  
 expressed by the abl., 102  
**characteristic**  
 subjv. of, 389, 390  
**comparative**  
 declension of, 303  
**comparison**  
 abl. of, 309  
 degrees of, 300  
 of adjectives, 300-315  
 irregular, 311-315, 473, 475  
 of adverbs  
 regular, 320-476  
 irregular, 323, 477  
 positive wanting, 315  
 six adjectives in *-lis*, 307

**dative case**, 43  
 of indirect object, 44, 45  
 of purpose, or end for which, 437  
 with adjectives, 143  
 with compound verbs, 426  
 with special verbs, 153

**dea**

declension of, 67

**declension**, 23, 32

**degree of difference**

expressed by the abl., 317

**demonstrative adjectives and pronouns**, 112-115, 290-292, 481

**deponent verbs**, 338, 339, 493

**descriptive ablative and genitive**, 441-445

**ē**-declension of nouns, 272, 273, 467

**ē**-verbs, conjugation of, 489

**ē**-verbs, conjugation of, 490

**ego**

declension of, 280, 480

**fearing**

subjv. after verbs of, 370-372

**ferō**

conjugation of, 498

**fifth or ē**-declension, 272, 273, 467

**filia**

declension of, 67

**filius**

declension of, 87-89

**finite verb**

defined, 173

**fiō**

conjugation of, 500

**gender**

in English and in Latin, 60

in the first declension, 61

in the second declension, 72

in the third declension, 247

in the fourth declension, 260

in the fifth declension, 272

**general observations on declension**, 74

**complementary infinitive**, 215

**compound verbs**

with the dative, 425, 426

**concessive clauses** with *cum*, 395, 396

**conjugation stems**, 184

**conjugations**

the four regular, 126, 488-491

irregular, 494-500

**consonants**, 2

**copula**, 21

**cum**

conjunction, 395

**cum**

preposition, 209

**descriptive relative clause**

with the subjv., 389, 390

**deus**

declension of, 468

**difference, measure of**, 316, 317

**diphthongs**, 6

**direct statements**, 414

**distributive numerals**, 327. 3, 334

**domī**

locative, 267

**domus**

declension of, 468

**duo**

declension of, 479

**duration** of time, expressed by the acc., 336

**enclitics**, 16

**eō**

conjugation of, 499

**extent** of space

expressed by the acc., 336

**first conjugation**, 488

**first or ā**-declension, 57, 461

**fourth conjugation**, 491

**fourth or u**-declension, 259, 260, 466

**from**

how expressed, 178-181

**future participle**

formation of, 374. *c*

**future perfect**

formation of

active, 187. 3

passive, 202

**future tense**

formation of, 137, 156

**genitive case**

English equivalents of, 33

of description, 443, 445

of nouns in *-ius* and *-ium*, 87

partitive, 331

possessive, 38, 409

**gerund**

a verbal noun, 402, 403

**gerundive**

a verbal adjective, 404

with *ad* to express purpose, 407

**hic**  
declension and use of, 290, 291

**i**  
consonant, 3  
i-stems of nouns, 231, 241-244  
ī-verbs  
conjugation of, 491  
**īdem**  
declension of, 287, 481  
**iēns**  
declension of, 472  
**ille**  
declension and use of, 290-293, 481  
**imperative**  
formation of, 161, 175  
irregular, 161. 2  
in commands, 161  
**imperfect indicative**, formation and  
use of, 133, 134, 165. 1  
**imperfect subjunctive**, 354  
**indefinite pronouns and adjectives**,  
296, 297, 484-487  
**independent clauses**, 219  
**indirect object**, 44, 45  
**indirect questions**, 430-432  
**indirect statements**, 414-419  
**infinitive**  
as object, 213  
as subject, 216  
complementary, 215  
definition of, 173  
does not express purpose, 352  
formation of, 126, 174, 205, 206  
in indirect statements, 415-419  
used as in English, 213-216

**Latin word order**, 68

**magis and maximē**  
comparison by, 302  
**mālō**  
conjugation of, 4.97  
**manner**  
abl. of, 105  
**means**  
abl. of, 103

**-ne**, enclitic  
in questions, 210  
**nē**, conj., *that not, lest*  
with negative clauses of purpose,  
350.II  
with verbs of fearing, 370  
**nine irregular adjectives**, 108-110  
**nōlō**  
conjugation of, 497  
**nominative** case, 35, 36  
**nōnne**  
in questions, 210

**o**-declension of nouns, 71-74, 87-92,  
462

**object**, 20  
direct, 37  
indirect, 44, 45

**participial stem**, 201. 2  
**participles**, defined, 203  
agreement of, 204  
formation,  
of present, 374. b  
of perfect, 201

**how to read Latin**, 17

**inflection**  
defined, 23  
**instrument**  
abl. of, 100. b, 103  
**intensive pronoun**  
*ipse*, declension and use of, 285,  
286, 481  
**interrogative pronouns and  
adjectives**, 225-227, 483  
**intransitive verbs**,  
defined, 20. a  
with the dative, 153  
**iō-verbs of the third conj.**, 492  
**ipse**  
declension and use of, 285, 481  
**irregular adjectives**, 108  
**irregular comparison**  
of adjectives, 307 311, 312  
of adverbs, 323  
**irregular nouns**, 67, 246, 468  
**irregular verbs**, 494-500  
**is**  
declension and use of, 113-116  
**iste**  
declension and use of, 290, 292, 481  
**iter**  
declension of, 468

**locative** case, 267

**measure of difference**  
abl. of, 316, 317  
**mille**,  
declension of, 479  
construction with, 331. a,b  
**moods**, defined, 121

**nōs**  
declension of, 280, 480  
**Nouns**, 19. 2  
first declension, 57, 461  
second declension, 71-74, 87-92, 462  
third declension, 230-247, 463-465  
fourth declension, 259, 260, 466  
fifth declension, 272, 273, 467  
**num**, in questions, 210  
**number**, 24  
**numerals**, 327-334, 478, 479

**order of words**, 68  
**ordinal numerals**, 327. 2, 478

**pluperfect subjunctive**  
active, 361  
passive, 363  
**plūs**  
declension of, 313  
**possessive pronouns**, 97, 98

of future, 374. *c, d*  
of deponent verbs, 375  
tenses of, 376  
translated by a clause, 377  
**partitive genitive**, 330, 331  
**passive voice**  
defined, 163  
formation of, 164, 202  
**penult**, 9. 3  
accent of, 15  
**perfect indicative**  
formation,  
in the active, 185, 186  
in the passive, 202  
meaning of, 190  
definite, 190  
indefinite, 190  
distinguished from the imperfect,  
190  
**perfect infinitive**  
active, 195  
passive, 205  
**perfect passive participle**, 201  
**perfect stem**, 185  
**perfect subjunctive**  
active, 361  
passive, 362  
**person**, 122  
**personal endings**  
active, 122  
passive, 164  
**personal pronouns**, 280, 480  
**place**  
where, whither, whence, 263-265  
names of towns and *domus* and *rūs*,  
266-268  
**pluperfect indicative**  
active, 187. 2  
passive, 202

**quality**  
gen. or abl. of, 441-445  
**quam**  
with a comparative, 308  
**quantity**, 11-13  
**questions**  
direct, 210  
indirect, 430-432  
**quī**  
declension and use of, 220, 221, 482

**reflexive pronouns**, 281  
**relative clauses of characteristic or description**, 389, 390  
**relative clauses of purpose**, 348, 349  
**relative pronouns**, 220, 221

**sē**  
distinguished from *ipse*, 285. *a*  
**second conjugation**, 489  
**second or o-declension**, 71-93, 462  
**sentences**  
simple, complex, compound, 219  
**separation**  
abl. of, 180  
**separative ablative**, 178-181  
**sequence of tenses**, 356-358  
**space**  
extent of, expressed by the acc., 336  
**specification**  
abl. of, 398  
**stems**  
of nouns, 230  
of verbs, 184  
**subject**  
defined, 19. 2

**possum**  
conjugation of, 495  
**predicate**  
defined, 19  
**predicate adjective**  
defined, 55  
**predicate noun**, 75, 76  
**prepositions**  
with the abl., 209  
with the acc., 340  
**present indicative**, 128, 130, 147  
**present stem**, 126. *a*  
**present subjunctive**, 344  
**primary tenses**, 356  
**principal parts**, 183  
**pronouns**  
classification of, 278  
defined, 19. 2. *a*  
demonstrative, 481  
indefinite, 297, 484-487  
intensive, 285, 286, 481  
interrogative, 483  
personal, 480  
possessive, 97, 98  
reflexive, 281  
relative, 220, 221  
**pronunciation**, 4-7  
**prōsum**  
conjugation of, 496  
**purpose**  
dative of, 436, 437  
expressed by the gerund or gerundive with *ad*, 407  
not expressed by the infinitive, 352  
subjunctive of, 348-350, 365-367

**quīdam**  
declension of, 485  
**quis**  
declension and use of, 225-227, 483  
**quisquam**  
declension of, 486  
**quisque**  
declension of, 484

**result clauses**, 384-387  
**reviews**, 502-528  
**rūs**  
constructions of, 266

**subjunctive constructions**  
characteristic or description, 389, 390  
indirect questions, 430-432  
purpose, 349, 366, 372  
result, 385, 386  
time, cause, or concession, with *cum*, 395, 396  
**subjunctive ideas**, 346  
**subjunctive tenses**, 342, 343  
**subordinate clauses**, 219  
**sui**  
declension of, 281, 480  
**sum**  
conjugation of, 494  
**suus**  
use of, 98. *c*, 116  
**syllables**, 8  
division of, 9



Updated editions will replace the previous one—the old editions will be renamed.

Creating the works from print editions not protected by U.S. copyright law means that no one owns a United States copyright in these works, so the Foundation (and you!) can copy and distribute it in the United States without permission and without paying copyright royalties. Special rules, set forth in the General Terms of Use part of this license, apply to copying and distributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works to protect the PROJECT GUTENBERG™ concept and trademark. Project Gutenberg is a registered trademark, and may not be used if you charge for an eBook, except by following the terms of the trademark license, including paying royalties for use of the Project Gutenberg trademark. If you do not charge anything for copies of this eBook, complying with the trademark license is very easy. You may use this eBook for nearly any purpose such as creation of derivative works, reports, performances and research. Project Gutenberg eBooks may be modified and printed and given away—you may do practically ANYTHING in the United States with eBooks not protected by U.S. copyright law. Redistribution is subject to the trademark license, especially commercial redistribution.

**START: FULL LICENSE**  
**THE FULL PROJECT GUTENBERG LICENSE**  
PLEASE READ THIS BEFORE YOU DISTRIBUTE OR USE THIS WORK

To protect the Project Gutenberg™ mission of promoting the free distribution of electronic works, by using or distributing this work (or any other work associated in any way with the phrase “Project Gutenberg”), you agree to comply with all the terms of the Full Project Gutenberg™ License available with this file or online at [www.gutenberg.org/license](http://www.gutenberg.org/license).

**Section 1. General Terms of Use and Redistributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works**

1.A. By reading or using any part of this Project Gutenberg™ electronic work, you indicate that you have read, understand, agree to and accept all the terms of this license and intellectual property (trademark/copyright) agreement. If you do not agree to abide by all the terms of this agreement, you must cease using and return or destroy all copies of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works in your possession. If you paid a fee for obtaining a copy of or access to a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work and you do not agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement, you may obtain a refund from the person or entity to whom you paid the fee as set forth in paragraph 1.E.8.

1.B. “Project Gutenberg” is a registered trademark. It may only be used on or associated in any way with an electronic work by people who agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. There are a few things that you can do with most Project Gutenberg™ electronic works even without complying with the full terms of this agreement. See paragraph 1.C below. There are a lot of things you can do with Project Gutenberg™ electronic works if you follow the terms of this agreement and help preserve free future access to Project Gutenberg™ electronic works. See paragraph 1.E below.

1.C. The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation (“the Foundation” or PGLAF), owns a compilation copyright in the collection of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works. Nearly all the individual works in the collection are in the public domain in the United States. If an individual work is unprotected by copyright law in the United States and you are located in the United States, we do not claim a right to prevent you from copying, distributing, performing, displaying or creating derivative works based on the work as long as all references to Project Gutenberg are removed. Of course, we hope that you will support the Project Gutenberg™ mission of promoting free access to electronic works by freely sharing Project Gutenberg™ works in compliance with the terms of this agreement for keeping the Project Gutenberg™ name associated with the work. You can easily comply with the terms of this agreement by keeping this work in the same format with its attached full Project Gutenberg™ License when you share it without charge with others.

1.D. The copyright laws of the place where you are located also govern what you can do with this work. Copyright laws in most countries are in a constant state of change. If you are outside the United States, check the laws of your country in addition to the terms of this agreement before downloading, copying, displaying, performing, distributing or creating derivative works based on this work or any other Project Gutenberg™ work. The Foundation makes no representations concerning the copyright status of any work in any country other than the United States.

1.E. Unless you have removed all references to Project Gutenberg:

1.E.1. The following sentence, with active links to, or other immediate access to, the full Project Gutenberg™ License must appear prominently whenever any copy of a Project Gutenberg™ work (any work on which the phrase “Project Gutenberg” appears, or with which the phrase “Project Gutenberg” is associated) is accessed, displayed, performed, viewed, copied or distributed:

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may

copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this eBook or online at [www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org). If you are not located in the United States, you will have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

1.E.2. If an individual Project Gutenberg™ electronic work is derived from texts not protected by U.S. copyright law (does not contain a notice indicating that it is posted with permission of the copyright holder), the work can be copied and distributed to anyone in the United States without paying any fees or charges. If you are redistributing or providing access to a work with the phrase “Project Gutenberg” associated with or appearing on the work, you must comply either with the requirements of paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 or obtain permission for the use of the work and the Project Gutenberg™ trademark as set forth in paragraphs 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.3. If an individual Project Gutenberg™ electronic work is posted with the permission of the copyright holder, your use and distribution must comply with both paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 and any additional terms imposed by the copyright holder. Additional terms will be linked to the Project Gutenberg™ License for all works posted with the permission of the copyright holder found at the beginning of this work.

1.E.4. Do not unlink or detach or remove the full Project Gutenberg™ License terms from this work, or any files containing a part of this work or any other work associated with Project Gutenberg™.

1.E.5. Do not copy, display, perform, distribute or redistribute this electronic work, or any part of this electronic work, without prominently displaying the sentence set forth in paragraph 1.E.1 with active links or immediate access to the full terms of the Project Gutenberg™ License.

1.E.6. You may convert to and distribute this work in any binary, compressed, marked up, nonproprietary or proprietary form, including any word processing or hypertext form. However, if you provide access to or distribute copies of a Project Gutenberg™ work in a format other than “Plain Vanilla ASCII” or other format used in the official version posted on the official Project Gutenberg™ website ([www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org)), you must, at no additional cost, fee or expense to the user, provide a copy, a means of exporting a copy, or a means of obtaining a copy upon request, of the work in its original “Plain Vanilla ASCII” or other form. Any alternate format must include the full Project Gutenberg™ License as specified in paragraph 1.E.1.

1.E.7. Do not charge a fee for access to, viewing, displaying, performing, copying or distributing any Project Gutenberg™ works unless you comply with paragraph 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.8. You may charge a reasonable fee for copies of or providing access to or distributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works provided that:

- You pay a royalty fee of 20% of the gross profits you derive from the use of Project Gutenberg™ works calculated using the method you already use to calculate your applicable taxes. The fee is owed to the owner of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark, but he has agreed to donate royalties under this paragraph to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation. Royalty payments must be paid within 60 days following each date on which you prepare (or are legally required to prepare) your periodic tax returns. Royalty payments should be clearly marked as such and sent to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation at the address specified in Section 4, “Information about donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation.”
- You provide a full refund of any money paid by a user who notifies you in writing (or by e-mail) within 30 days of receipt that s/he does not agree to the terms of the full Project Gutenberg™ License. You must require such a user to return or destroy all copies of the works possessed in a physical medium and discontinue all use of and all access to other copies of Project Gutenberg™ works.
- You provide, in accordance with paragraph 1.F.3, a full refund of any money paid for a work or a replacement copy, if a defect in the electronic work is discovered and reported to you within 90 days of receipt of the work.
- You comply with all other terms of this agreement for free distribution of Project Gutenberg™ works.

1.E.9. If you wish to charge a fee or distribute a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work or group of works on different terms than are set forth in this agreement, you must obtain permission in writing from the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the manager of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark. Contact the Foundation as set forth in Section 3 below.

1.F.

1.F.1. Project Gutenberg volunteers and employees expend considerable effort to identify, do

copyright research on, transcribe and proofread works not protected by U.S. copyright law in creating the Project Gutenberg™ collection. Despite these efforts, Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, and the medium on which they may be stored, may contain “Defects,” such as, but not limited to, incomplete, inaccurate or corrupt data, transcription errors, a copyright or other intellectual property infringement, a defective or damaged disk or other medium, a computer virus, or computer codes that damage or cannot be read by your equipment.

1.F.2. LIMITED WARRANTY, DISCLAIMER OF DAMAGES - Except for the “Right of Replacement or Refund” described in paragraph 1.F.3, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the owner of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark, and any other party distributing a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work under this agreement, disclaim all liability to you for damages, costs and expenses, including legal fees. YOU AGREE THAT YOU HAVE NO REMEDIES FOR NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY, BREACH OF WARRANTY OR BREACH OF CONTRACT EXCEPT THOSE PROVIDED IN PARAGRAPH 1.F.3. YOU AGREE THAT THE FOUNDATION, THE TRADEMARK OWNER, AND ANY DISTRIBUTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT WILL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ACTUAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES EVEN IF YOU GIVE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

1.F.3. LIMITED RIGHT OF REPLACEMENT OR REFUND - If you discover a defect in this electronic work within 90 days of receiving it, you can receive a refund of the money (if any) you paid for it by sending a written explanation to the person you received the work from. If you received the work on a physical medium, you must return the medium with your written explanation. The person or entity that provided you with the defective work may elect to provide a replacement copy in lieu of a refund. If you received the work electronically, the person or entity providing it to you may choose to give you a second opportunity to receive the work electronically in lieu of a refund. If the second copy is also defective, you may demand a refund in writing without further opportunities to fix the problem.

1.F.4. Except for the limited right of replacement or refund set forth in paragraph 1.F.3, this work is provided to you ‘AS-IS’, WITH NO OTHER WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE.

1.F.5. Some states do not allow disclaimers of certain implied warranties or the exclusion or limitation of certain types of damages. If any disclaimer or limitation set forth in this agreement violates the law of the state applicable to this agreement, the agreement shall be interpreted to make the maximum disclaimer or limitation permitted by the applicable state law. The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision of this agreement shall not void the remaining provisions.

1.F.6. INDEMNITY - You agree to indemnify and hold the Foundation, the trademark owner, any agent or employee of the Foundation, anyone providing copies of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works in accordance with this agreement, and any volunteers associated with the production, promotion and distribution of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, harmless from all liability, costs and expenses, including legal fees, that arise directly or indirectly from any of the following which you do or cause to occur: (a) distribution of this or any Project Gutenberg™ work, (b) alteration, modification, or additions or deletions to any Project Gutenberg™ work, and (c) any Defect you cause.

## **Section 2. Information about the Mission of Project Gutenberg™**

Project Gutenberg™ is synonymous with the free distribution of electronic works in formats readable by the widest variety of computers including obsolete, old, middle-aged and new computers. It exists because of the efforts of hundreds of volunteers and donations from people in all walks of life.

Volunteers and financial support to provide volunteers with the assistance they need are critical to reaching Project Gutenberg™’s goals and ensuring that the Project Gutenberg™ collection will remain freely available for generations to come. In 2001, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation was created to provide a secure and permanent future for Project Gutenberg™ and future generations. To learn more about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and how your efforts and donations can help, see Sections 3 and 4 and the Foundation information page at [www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org).

## **Section 3. Information about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation**

The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation is a non-profit 501(c)(3) educational corporation organized under the laws of the state of Mississippi and granted tax exempt status by the Internal Revenue Service. The Foundation’s EIN or federal tax identification number is 64-6221541. Contributions to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation are tax deductible to the full extent permitted by U.S. federal laws and your state’s laws.

The Foundation's business office is located at 809 North 1500 West, Salt Lake City, UT 84116, (801) 596-1887. Email contact links and up to date contact information can be found at the Foundation's website and official page at [www.gutenberg.org/contact](http://www.gutenberg.org/contact)

#### **Section 4. Information about Donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation**

Project Gutenberg™ depends upon and cannot survive without widespread public support and donations to carry out its mission of increasing the number of public domain and licensed works that can be freely distributed in machine-readable form accessible by the widest array of equipment including outdated equipment. Many small donations (\$1 to \$5,000) are particularly important to maintaining tax exempt status with the IRS.

The Foundation is committed to complying with the laws regulating charities and charitable donations in all 50 states of the United States. Compliance requirements are not uniform and it takes a considerable effort, much paperwork and many fees to meet and keep up with these requirements. We do not solicit donations in locations where we have not received written confirmation of compliance. To SEND DONATIONS or determine the status of compliance for any particular state visit [www.gutenberg.org/donate](http://www.gutenberg.org/donate).

While we cannot and do not solicit contributions from states where we have not met the solicitation requirements, we know of no prohibition against accepting unsolicited donations from donors in such states who approach us with offers to donate.

International donations are gratefully accepted, but we cannot make any statements concerning tax treatment of donations received from outside the United States. U.S. laws alone swamp our small staff.

Please check the Project Gutenberg web pages for current donation methods and addresses. Donations are accepted in a number of other ways including checks, online payments and credit card donations. To donate, please visit: [www.gutenberg.org/donate](http://www.gutenberg.org/donate)

#### **Section 5. General Information About Project Gutenberg™ electronic works**

Professor Michael S. Hart was the originator of the Project Gutenberg™ concept of a library of electronic works that could be freely shared with anyone. For forty years, he produced and distributed Project Gutenberg™ eBooks with only a loose network of volunteer support.

Project Gutenberg™ eBooks are often created from several printed editions, all of which are confirmed as not protected by copyright in the U.S. unless a copyright notice is included. Thus, we do not necessarily keep eBooks in compliance with any particular paper edition.

Most people start at our website which has the main PG search facility: [www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org).

This website includes information about Project Gutenberg™, including how to make donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, how to help produce our new eBooks, and how to subscribe to our email newsletter to hear about new eBooks.